

MISSION TRAINING PLAN
FOR THE

HEAVY HELICOPTER BATTALION



DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

HEADQUARTERS, DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY

MISSION TRAINING PLAN FOR THE HEAVY LIFT HELICOPTER BATTALION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
PREFACE	iv
CHAPTER 1. UNIT TRAINING	
1-1 General	1-1
1-2 Supporting Material	1-1
1-3 Contents	1-3
1-4 Missions and Tasks	1-4
1-5 Principles of Training	1-5
1-6 Training Strategy	1-7
1-7 Conducting Training	1-11
1-8 Force Protection (Safety)	1-13
1-9 Environmental Protection	1-14
1-10 Evaluation	1-15
1-11 Feedback	1-15
CHAPTER 2. TRAINING MATRIXES	
2-1 General	2-1
2-2 Mission to Collective Task Listing	2-1
2-3 Supporting References to Collective Tasks Listing	2-5
CHAPTER 3. TRAINING PLANS	
3-1 General	3-1
3-2 Long-Range Planning	3-2
3-3 Short-Range Planning	3-8
3-4 Near-Term Planning	3-10
3-5 Training the Headquarters	3-14
3-6 Developing Training Exercises	3-19
3-7 Mission Outlines	3-20
CHAPTER 4. TRAINING EXERCISES	
Section I. Introduction	4-1
4-1 General	4-1
4-2 Field Training Exercise	4-1
4-3 Situational Training Exercise	4-1
4-4 Other Training Exercises	4-1

DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

* This publication supersedes ARTEP 1-245-MTP, 17 September 1996

	Page
Section II. FTX: Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations	4-3
Section III. STX 1: Conduct Air Assault Operations	4-10
Section IV. STX 2: Conduct Air Movement Operations	4-18
CHAPTER 5. TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES	
5-1 Introduction	5-1
5-2 Structure.....	5-1
5-3 Format.....	5-1
5-4 Use.....	5-2
.....	
CHAPTER 6. EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS	
6-1 General	6-1
6-2 Preparing the Evaluation.....	6-1
6-3 Resource Requirements and Planning Considerations.....	6-6
6-4 Selecting and Training Observers-Controllers.....	6-7
6-5 Selecting and Training Opposing Forces.....	6-9
6-6 Conducting the Evaluation.....	6-10
6-7 Recording External Evaluation Information	6-11
6-8 Conducting the After-Action Review	6-12
APPENDIX A. COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY	A-1
APPENDIX B. EXERCISE OPERATION ORDERS	B-1
APPENDIX C. RISK MANAGEMENT	C-1
APPENDIX D. AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY	D-1
APPENDIX E. TRAINING AIDS, DEVICES, SIMULATORS, AND SIMULATIONS	E-1
GLOSSARY	Glossary-1
REFERENCES	References-1
USER FEEDBACK	Feedback-1

PREFACE

Army operations require worldwide strategic and tactical mobility. As a fully integrated member of the combined arms team, aviation forces conduct combat, CS, and CSS operations to support combined arms and joint operations. Aviation, as a maneuver force, provides a third dimensional capability to the mobility of the land force. Heavy helicopter battalions enable the force commander to rapidly concentrate combat power at the decisive time and place on the battlefield. They give the force commander a highly mobile and rapid means of moving priority combat systems and personnel and supplies throughout his AO. In addition, the heavy helicopter battalions—supported by attack helicopters, appropriate fire and CAS, and required air defense support—give the force commander a robust air assault force. This air assault force is capable of moving large numbers of combat soldiers great distances. They operate throughout the battlefield framework. They are capable of conducting operations day and night.

MTPs are a basic source document for collective training. They are developed to be used by all leaders who have training responsibilities. They are descriptive training documents that give leaders an inventory of collective tasks that describe *what* to train. They also give leaders a suggested method of *how* to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency for each unit echelon. The MTPs are based on the training principles listed in FMs 7-0(FM 25-100) and 7-19(FM 25-101).

This MTP complements the Army's collective training doctrine from an aviation heavy helicopter battalion commander's perspective. It is intended for all heavy helicopter battalions with the common mission to provide aerial movement and air assault of troops, supplies, and equipment for support of maneuver, CS, and CSS operations. These battalions include—

- TOE 01245A000 Heavy Helicopter Battalion, Division Aviation Brigade, Air Assault Division.
- TOE 01445A000 Heavy Helicopter Battalion, Corp Aviation Brigade, Corp Aviation Group.
- TOE 01645A000 Heavy Helicopter Battalion, Echelons Above Corps.

The proponent of this publication is HQ TRADOC. Send comments and recommendations on DA Form 2028 (Recommended Changes to Publications and Black Forms) to Commander, US Army Aviation Center, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362-5000.

Unless this publication states otherwise, masculine nouns and pronouns do not refer exclusively to men.

This publication has been reviewed for operations security considerations.

CHAPTER 1

UNIT TRAINING

1-1. GENERAL

This MTP gives the commander and leaders guidance on how to train the key missions of the unit. The specific details of the unit's training program depend on the following factors:

- a. Unit's METL.
- b. Chain of command training directives and guidance.
- c. Training priorities of the unit.
- d. Availability of training resources and areas.

1-2. SUPPORTING MATERIAL

Aviation forces routinely conduct combat, CS, and CSS missions as members of combined arms or joint task forces. These missions require aviation commanders and their subordinate leadership to be well versed in battle tasks across the BOS. Heavy helicopter battalion soldiers must be prepared to support operations at all levels of command. Often this support is conducted with minimal guidance, prior planning, and under some of the most severe adverse environmental conditions. The battalion's training program is oriented toward its critical wartime missions. In addition to this MTP, the training program is based on the publications listed below. Figure 1-1 shows the relationship of these publications.

- a. SMs for the appropriate MOS and skill level. This includes manuals for MOS 67U and the low-density MOSs held by company and battalion personnel.
- b. STP 1-15II-MQS for aviation company grade officers and commissioned grade warrant officers and STP 21-II-MQS for common tasks for lieutenants and captains.

NOTE: MQS manuals will be phased out when replaced by Officer Foundation Standards products.

- c. ARTEP 1-111-MTP.
- d. FM 3-100.15(FM 100-15).
- e. FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100).
- f. FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14).
- g. FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100).
- h. FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111).
- i. FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113).
- j. FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120).
- k. FM 3-04.140(FM 1-140).

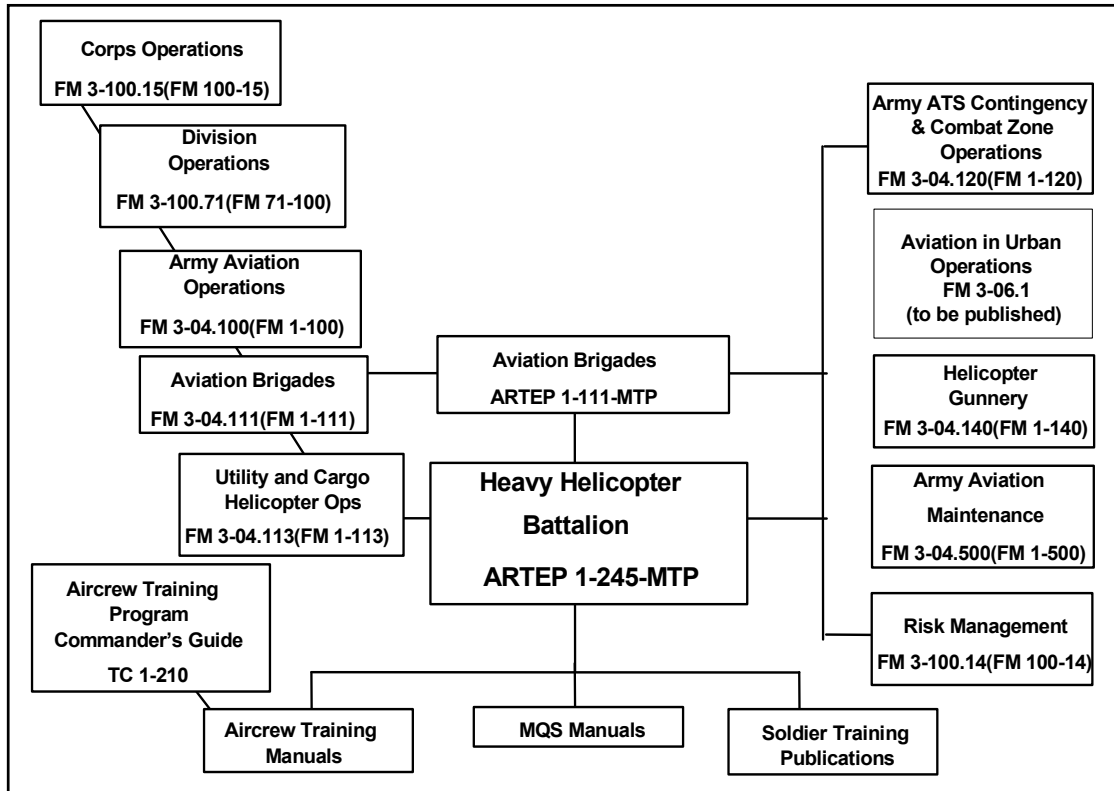


Figure 1-1. MTP echelon relationship.

- l. FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300).
- m. FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500).
- n. FM 3-06.1 (to be published).
- o. TC 1-210. (**Note:** TC 1-200 (to be published) will supersede TC 1-210.)
- p. TC 1-216. (**Note:** TC 1-240 (to be published) will supersede TC 1-216.)

NOTE: The Army is fielding a fully integrated training system through the use of CD-ROM and the Internet. The SATS is a unit-level training development tool that ties into the TRADOC training database ASAT, (<http://www.asat.army.mil>). Through SATS, units are able to download current doctrine from the Reimer Digital Library Data Repository (<http://155.217.58.100/dr/>) for their use in training and training development. The General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library (<http://155.217.58.58/atdls.htm>) is the official DA web site that contains Army FMs, TCs, ARTEPs (MTPs), and STPs. These training products are *built* from the RDL DR. Contact the RDL at 1-800-ASK-ATSC for more information. Information on how to obtain SATS software and a user's guide for the database is available through the project manager at the ATSC, Ft Eustis, VA (<http://www.satsbbs.com>). The telephone numbers are DSN: 927-7001, extension 6504, and commercial 757-878-7001 extension 6504. The e-mail address is duganj@ATSC.army.mil.

1-3. CONTENTS

This MTP has six chapters and five appendixes.

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training, provides a variety of information regarding the training program. Aspects of training unique to aviation units are stressed. It serves as a foundation for other chapters and appendixes and explains their use. It explains how to use the MTP to establish an effective training program.
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes, provides a list that shows the relationship between battalion missions and supporting collective tasks. It also gives references for each collective task sorted by BOS.
- c. Chapter 3, Training Plans, describes the use of the MTP to develop battalion-level training plans and provides mission outlines. It is designed to help commanders prepare training plans for critical wartime missions.
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises, provides guidance on planning, preparing, and executing battalion training exercises. These exercises may be modified to suit the training needs of each individual unit.
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines, provides training criteria for all collective tasks that the battalion and its subordinate elements—staff, HHT, and CSS sections—must master for the unit to perform its critical wartime missions. Each T&EO constitutes a part of one or more critical missions. In various combinations, T&EOs compose larger training vehicles, such as STXs and FTXs described in Chapter 4.
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations, is a guide for planning, preparing, and executing evaluations of battalion training exercises. Evaluation involves determining proficiency based on the training objectives of the exercises and this MTP. This chapter explains how to conduct an AAR.
- g. Appendix A, Combined Arms Training Strategy, addresses the overarching strategy of training in the combined arms realm as it applies to aviation. CATS is the U.S. Army's training strategy that captures training event frequency, critical gates, and supporting resources. The strategy describes the mix of training in the institution and unit and for the individual, both now and in the future. In addition, it prescribes the mix of training resources Army aviation requires for present and long-range training.
- h. Appendix B, Exercise Operation Orders, is a sample OPORD that gives the trainer the process to develop an order to coordinate the execution of an exercise. The sample OPORD is a combat order; that is, it pertains to strategic, operational, or tactical operations and their service support.
- i. Appendix C, Risk Management, helps the trainer or commander assess tactical, operational, and fratricide hazards associated with a mission. A thorough informed risk assessment, which includes mitigated factors to reduce the overall risk, can be an effective combat multiplier in applying assets to a task with emphasis on protecting the force.
- j. Appendix D, Aircraft Survivability, centers on the fundamentals of aircraft survivability. It covers how survivability equipment will reduce the vulnerability of Army aircraft. This allows the aircrew to accomplish its immediate mission and to survive to fight another day. It includes the functions of EA, EP, and ES. It also includes a five-fold approach to ensure that Army aircrews are able to accomplish their mission. It provides examples of threat considerations and threat weapon sensors, as well as the categories of ASE systems. This appendix plays an important role by giving the TOO guidelines for mission planning, risk assessment, and mission execution.
- k. Appendix E, Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations, presents the USAAVNC simulation strategy to use as a management and planning tool for the Army aviation simulation community. This strategy addresses current and future systems requirements. It supports Army aviation

modernization and the process of continuous transformation to Force XXI. It gives recommended training, exercises, and military operations for all echelons. These range from individual trainers through collective, combined arms, and combined and joint exercises. It includes example rehearsals for plans and operations and evaluations of completed missions.

1-4. MISSIONS AND TASKS

a. The battalion's TOE wartime mission is to provide aerial movement of troops, supplies, and equipment to support combat, CS, and CSS operations. Critical missions for the heavy helicopter battalion, as found in its CATS, include—

- Air assault.
- Air movement.
- Stability and support operations.
- Casualty evacuation.

b. The key to training and sustaining proficiency of these wartime tasks is to understand *how we train to fight* at every echelon. Training programs must result in demonstrated tactical and technical competence, confidence, and initiative in soldiers and their leaders. FM 7-0(FM 25-100) establishes the Army's training doctrine. FM 7-10 (FM 25-101) contains techniques and procedures to plan, execute, and assess training. TC 1-210 contains unique guidance for aviation commanders. Every commander is expected to know, understand, and apply the concepts found in these manuals.

(1) Battle-focused training. Battle focus is a concept used to derive peacetime training requirements from wartime missions. Battle focus guides the planning, execution, and assessment of each organization's training program. This ensures its members train as they are going to fight. Battle focus is critical throughout the training process. Commanders use battle focus to allocate resources for training based on the unit's METL. Its implementation helps commanders structure a training program that copes with nonmission-related requirements while focusing on mission-essential training activities. Battle focus is a recognition that a unit cannot attain proficiency to standard on every task that it is capable of performing whether because of time or other resource constraints. However, commanders can achieve a successful training program by narrowing the focus to a reduced number of mission-essential tasks.

(2) Mission training plans. Collective training builds combat teams. It develops critical teamwork needed by units. It also provides a challenging environment where units at various echelons can train to progressively tougher and more realistic conditions. It prepares soldiers to perform collective tasks that are essential for success in combat through training events. This MTP is the basic source document for the collective training required by a heavy helicopter battalion. It is a descriptive training document that gives leaders an inventory of critical tasks that describe *what* to train. It also gives a suggested method on *how* to train to achieve critical wartime mission proficiency. The CATS complements MTPs by describing *who will be trained* and *when, where, and how* collective tasks will be trained.

(3) Combined arms training strategy. CATS is the *Army's over-arching training architecture*. It contains approved training and doctrinal strategy. It provides the framework for total Army structured training for both units and institutions. CATS functionally groups tasks to guide the integration of tasks into combined arms oriented training strategies. Current CATS provides doctrine-based training strategies. It includes events, gates, and training resource options for the institution or unit trainer. It integrates training horizontally among levels of a type unit and vertically across the combined arms and services team. Aviation CATS includes a crosswalk of individual, crew, and collective METL tasks that requires flying hours. As such, it provides a basis for the preparation of a unit's flying-hour program.

(a) The training program developed and executed by the heavy helicopter battalion is a component of the Army's CATS. The purpose of CATS is to provide direction and guidance on how the total Army will train. It identifies the resources required to support that training. CATS provides the tools

that enable the Army to focus and manage training in an integrated manner. Central to CATS is a series of proponent-generated unit and institutional strategies that describe the training and resources required to train to standard. CATS gives the commander a descriptive menu for training.

(b) The heavy helicopter battalion CATS is a descriptive training strategy that provides a means for training the battalion to standard. It lists required training events, critical training gates, training event frequencies, and training resources. The commander selects from this MTP those tasks required to train his METL. He then uses the strategies in the CATS to develop a battle-focused training plan; he integrates and links METL-driven MTP tasks with CATS training events.

(c) The building blocks of the training program for each critical operation are individual tasks, which are found in appropriate SMs and MQS manuals and the ATM; crew tasks found in the ATM; and the collective unit tasks covered by the T&EOs in Chapter 5 of this MTP. These tasks may be trained individually or combined with others to form more complex exercises, such as STXs and FTXs described in Chapter 4. FM 7-0(FM 25-100) and Chapter 3 of this MTP outline the process to select tasks for training.

(d) The aviation CATS is built on the premise that approximately 75 to 80 percent of individual and crew aviator training can be done while performing collective tasks. Individual, crew, and collective tasks requiring flying hours have been crosswalked to determine the OPTEMPO required to maintain individual, crew, and collective proficiency. In addition, the CATS provides guidance for using simulators to train specific tasks. It also provides information on task requirements for readiness reporting along with TC 1-210. CATS is available via the SATS.

(4) Integration of soldier, leader, and collective training. A critical aspect of the battle-focus concept is to understand the responsibility for, and the linkage between, the collective mission-essential tasks and the individual and crew tasks that support them. A unique aspect of Army Aviation is that commanders must satisfy individual and aircrew training requirements as individual aviators; however, they also must provide the training guidance, resources, and focus to ensure that aviators are effectively and efficiently trained to standard. Fortunately, commanders have aviation NCOs and senior warrant officers with the technical and tactical expertise to train, evaluate, and provide management assistance. As a team, the commander, CSM, and senior standardization officer must jointly coordinate the collective mission-essential tasks and the individual and crew training tasks. The unit will concentrate its efforts on these tasks during a given period. NCO's primary role is to train and develop individual soldier skills. The standardization officer's primary role is to train and develop individual aviator skills. Officers at every level train to established standards during individual and collective training.

1-5. PRINCIPLES OF TRAINING

This MTP is based on the training principles outlined in FM 7-0(FM 25-100). These principles are based on the premise that training is the process that melds human and material resources into the required capabilities for the Army to accomplish assigned strategic roles. Aviation units are expected to fight and train as members of combined arms and joint teams. A utility battalion commander must prepare his staff to plan for operations across the BOS, focusing on operations of the division or corps commander.

a. Train as Combined Arms and Services Team. Army doctrine places a premium on teamwork. When committed to battle, each unit must be prepared to execute combined arms, joint, and coalition operations. They must do so without additional training or lengthy adjustment periods. Combined arms proficiency develops when battalions train together. Leaders must regularly practice METL tasks across the full wartime spectrum of combat, CS, and CSS units. Heavy helicopter battalions, other than in the air assault division, are not normally integrated into a *brigade slice*; however, commanders must actively seek opportunities to train across the BOS. Such training is critical for the aviation leaders and staffs to prepare to fight aviation task forces as members of a larger combined or joint operation task force or to act as the command and staff for the combined arms task force.

Participation in, and the coordination of, training strategies with other commanders—formally and informally—is critical to the process. QTBs, preparation of long-range training calendars, and development of annual flying-hour programs offer opportunities to plan combined training exercises.

b. Train as You Fight. The goal of combat-level training is to achieve METL task proficiency. Units fight as they have been trained. To ensure success in combat, soldiers and units must perform to established standards that are rigidly enforced by leaders. Because it is impossible to predict the type of weather and terrain a unit will face when executing a combat mission, training should be conducted under varying conditions that are realistic and challenging. Night operations, using night vision devices, are especially critical to the success of aviation forces. Aviation units must learn to live in and operate—to include doing maintenance—in the field. They must do realistic gunnery, operate against credible OPFOR, exercise their ASE, and instinctively employ self-protection measures. It is not unrealistic to expect aviation companies to go to the field monthly and battalions quarterly.

c. Use Appropriate Doctrine. Training must conform to Army doctrine. Operational and supporting doctrinal manuals describe common procedures and uniform methods that permit commanders and organizations to adjust rapidly to changing situations. Aviation leaders and staffs must understand a supported unit's doctrine. Aviation commanders ensure that supported units understand aviation doctrine across the spectrum of aviation missions. Aviation LNOs must be well versed in all aviation doctrine. Aviation commanders must consider themselves to be the primary LNO in their unit. They must be prepared to train supported units, to provide liaison officers as necessary, and to coordinate training opportunities. Units must train by performing tasks to the standards specified in MTPs, ATMs, drills, SMS, regulations, and other training and doctrinal publications.

d. Use Performance-Oriented Training. Aviators are aware of the need to build experience and expertise by frequently performing critical tasks and missions. The underlying premise of the task-based aviation CATS is to sustain a proficient level of expertise at critical individual, crew, and collective tasks. Optimizing training resources to practice accepted tasks, conditions, and standards on a continuing basis sustains this level of expertise. Aviation commanders must use structured training, including available TADSS, to optimize the expenditure of limited flying hours. In addition, leaders should become familiar with the insertion of high technology training techniques and other Army Training XXI initiatives, such as distance learning and the RDL.

e. Train to Challenge. Tough, realistic, and intellectually and physically challenging training excites and motivates soldiers and leaders. It builds competence and confidence by developing and honing skills. Aviators must operate their assigned aircraft proficiently and be able to lead tactical missions. They must be confident, proficient aviators rather than merely current pilots. Individuals and crews must be prepared to fight the combined arms fight, often at night using night vision devices in adverse environmental conditions. Individual, crew, and collective training must be conducted to standard on a continuing basis. Aviation maintenance and rearming and refueling personnel, leaders, staffs, commissioned officers, warrant officers, and enlisted personnel must all be challenged to use the capabilities of their unique weapon systems to the optimum.

f. Train to Sustain Proficiency. Major changes have been made to the ATP. Historically, aviation units focused on currency at the individual level vice collective proficiency. The aviation CATS reflects sustained individual, crew, and collective proficiency. TC 1-210, individual aircraft ATMs, and this MTP outline the process. The CATS has been crosswalked with the BLTM to ensure adequate OPTEMPO (live, virtual, or constructive) and with AR 220-1 to reflect readiness requirements. Commanders develop and execute a training program that builds collective proficiency based on sustained individual and crew training.

g. Train Using Multiechelon Techniques. Aviation requires technically and tactically proficient soldiers. Commanders must use all available resources to maximum efficiency. The aviation CATS reflects multiechelon training to optimize training opportunities at all levels. As such, individual and crew sustainment training must be an integral part of a unit's ongoing collective training. However, not all individual and crew training can be done while units are engaged in training a collective task. Some

training resources must be allocated to individual and crew training as outlined in appropriate ATMs. CATS takes this training into consideration and reflects the OPTEMPO required to support these tasks.

h. Train to Maintain. Maintenance training is a vital part of every training program. Readiness, as a function of training, personnel, and equipment availability, directly reflects the number of missions a unit can accomplish. Balancing the often-competing demands of a high mission OPTEMPO with maintenance training proficiency is the challenge of leaders at all levels. During surges of high aviation training—such as FTXs, ARTEPs, and CTC rotations—aircraft readiness often decreases. An increase follows as the training intensity slows. Commanders are challenged to balance maintenance and training to remain in the training band of excellence.

i. Make Commanders the Primary Trainers. One of the keys to success is proficient leadership at each level of command. Leaders must understand the training process and their unique responsibilities. Leaders must be given the resources and guidance to train to warfighting standards. Commanders set the standards, personally and professionally, in and out of the cockpit. They plan, integrate, and provide guidance and resources for battalion training. The toughest training challenge for most commanders is to train a competent warfighting staff that has mastered the numerous tasks included in this MTP. Commanders are responsible for safety and standardization programs and the ATP. All aviation commanders have subordinate leaders (officers and NCOs), staff officers, IPs, and standardization officers that are specifically trained to support aviation training. Aviation battalion commanders normally fight and lead from their designated aircraft. As such, they are expected to maintain the highest level of proficiency in the aircraft. They train COs and evaluate platoons. As such, the battalion commander focuses company training and integrates the company into combined arms training. The company commander integrates his company into the combined arms fight. Like the battalion commander, the CO is expected to become a PC, a highly proficient crew member, and leader in the aircraft. He integrates the platoons and executes company training. He trains platoon leaders and evaluates individuals and crews. The platoon leaders and unit IPs help the CO ensure that crews are properly trained.

1-6. TRAINING STRATEGY

This MTP's role is to facilitate planning, preparation, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. The commander plans, prepares, and conducts unit training. However, he requires significant help from numerous agencies within the chain of command to ensure that the battalion's training be maximized within available resourcing. The commander must understand Army training doctrine (FMs 7-0[FM 25-100] and 7-10[FM 25-101]) as it relates to his specific warfighting requirements. He also must understand the resourcing and training development processes that are designed to facilitate his success.

a. Training Development Process. Figure 1-2 shows the Army's process to develop training for soldiers. The process for a heavy helicopter battalion is initiated at the USAAVNC. Aviation doctrine—FMs, TTPs—and training publications—CATS, MTPs, ATMs, STPs, TSPs—are developed and continually updated with feedback from commanders. These manuals are published and placed into a digital database for access by commanders and staffs and resourcing personnel. As such, commanders and staffs must become familiar with the RDL process to enable them to access digital publications.

b. Standard Army Training System. SATS is central to training planning. SATS is the commander's interface with the Army's information database. This database is the source of training and doctrinal publications—such as this MTP, ATMs, resourcing information, and tools that support training development. The SATS database provides computer-based access to CATS, the T&EOs in this MTP, and the supporting collective and individual tasks. SATS users obtain the CATS and T&EOs via the World Wide Web through the TRADOC RDL DR. They can then tailor task content to specific unit training needs and print the revised T&EOs for use in training exercises. The SATS database also gives users other management tools—such as a training schedule generator and resourcing information—to determine required OPTEMPO. Paragraph 1-2 above contains SATS information.

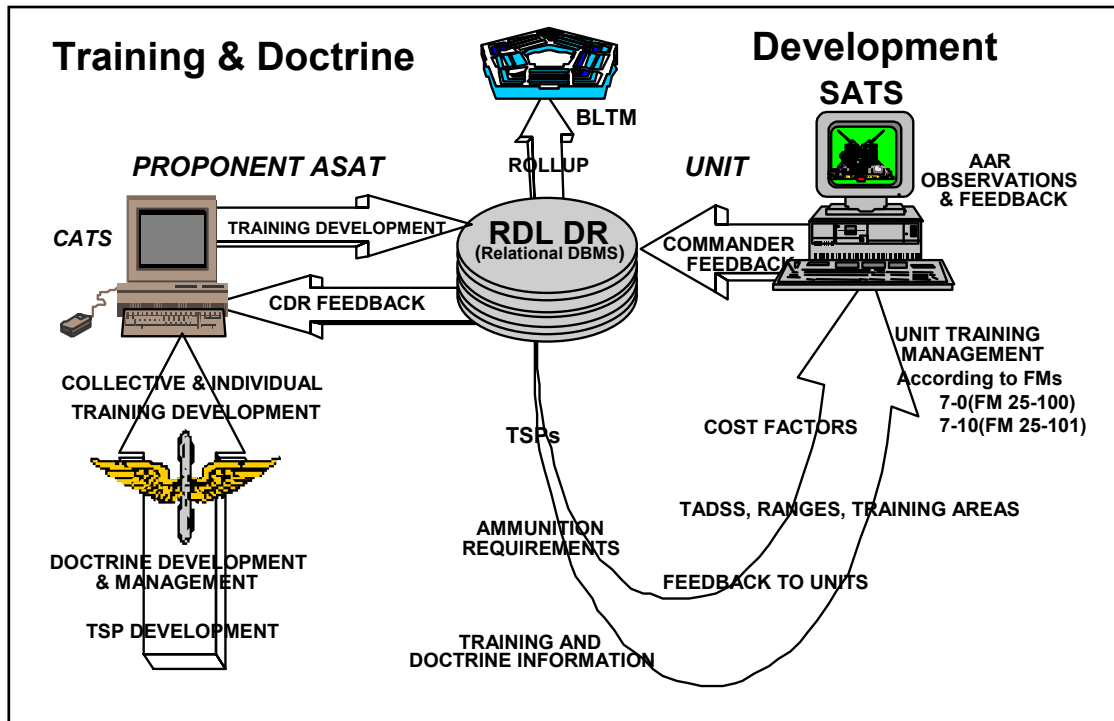


Figure 1-2. Training development process.

c. Aviation Training Vision. The Aviation Branch's training vision is to develop a realistic and executable Army aviation training strategy. The strategy will continue to provide the force with highly motivated aviation soldiers. It also will give the force leaders that are equipped with modern systems, trained to world class proficiency. The leaders will operate in organizations that are inherently versatile with maneuver advantage and warfighting effectiveness that will influence all dimensions of the current and future battlespace. Aviation commanders are expected to be proficient task force commanders, capable of planning and leading forces across the BOS. Aviation commanders are expected to develop training strategies that—

- Develop battle-focused training based on current training doctrine.
- Conduct task-based training based on unit CATS and METL.
- Train leaders at every level.
- Train combined arms staffs.
- Focus on proficiency rather than currency.
- Focus on warfighting needs and readiness.
- Maximize individual, crew, and collective simulation to allow units to enter live training at a higher level.

d. Battalion Commander's Training Strategy. A battalion commander's training strategy is to provide structured training. The training prepares his soldiers to deploy, fight, and win in combat at any intensity level, anywhere in the world. His strategy provides task-based, structured training. It incorporates the three training environments—constructive, virtual, and live. His strategy focuses on his target audience—soldiers, leaders, staffs, and subordinate units. It allows training progress in a crawl-walk-run fashion through the training environments. This training progress ensures that proficiency is gained at the lower level before moving to the next level. The strategy reflects a thorough analysis and understanding of his unit's METL, CATS, ATM, and this MTP. It synchronizes with his specific set of resource constraints and training emphasis.

(1) The battalion's METL forms the basis for the organization's training plans. It is stabilized, when approved, and is normally modified only if changes occur in wartime missions. No attempt should be made to prioritize tasks within the METL. By definition, all tasks that have been placed on the METL are equally essential to ensure mission accomplishment. METL and available resources will form the framework of the battalion training strategy. The METL will establish the width, and the available resources will set the depth.

(2) The training planning process, outlined in FM 7-10(FM 25-101), links unit METL and individual soldier and aircrew training with the execution of battle-focused training. Commanders initiate the process using subordinates, key staff members, warrant officers, and NCO leaders to assess the training level on mission-essential tasks. The process is two phased—long- and short-range planning. The aircrew training is an integral part of these plans and must be reflected on long- and short-range calendars. Most importantly, it must be specifically addressed in the commander's quarterly training guidance. It also must be an integral part of QTBs at all levels of command. Aviation commanders must become familiar with FMs 7-0(FM 25-100 and 7-10(FM 25-101). They are used to format training plans, QTBs, and resourcing documents within divisions and corps.

(3) Because FMs 7-0(FM 25-100 and 7-10(FM 25-101) do not consider some unique aspects of aviation training, additional guidance for aviation commanders is included in TC 1-210. Aviation commanders use it as a guide to develop and execute an ATP that focuses on individual, crew, and collective proficiency. TC 1-210 provides guidance on the integration of the CATS, MTP, ATMs, and appropriate resourcing and readiness regulations.

(4) Maintenance capabilities and training plans must be synchronized. Army training doctrine challenges commanders to *train to sustain proficiency*, or in other words, sustain proficiency within the *band of excellence*. The aviator's challenge comes with often competing demands to keep aviation maintenance within the band and sustain training excellence. Aviation commanders must include the maintenance factor in planning to sustain their band of excellence. Individual, collective, and leader proficiency increases during training surges—such as FTXs, ARTEPs, and CTC rotations. However, during these same periods of high training intensity, aircraft maintenance excellence, as measured by aircraft operational readiness rates and bank time, will gradually decrease. As training intensity slows, the status of aircraft maintenance will increase. These effects are manageable.

(5) A key element in any unit training strategy is to identify critical training gates. These are defined as training events that must be executed to standard before the soldier or unit moves on to a more difficult or costly training event or task.

(a) Training gates follow the crawl-walk-run method. For instance, if the training strategy requires the unit to conduct an FTX and an STX has been identified as a critical training gate for the FTX, the unit must execute the training tasks contained in the STX to standard before conducting the FTX.

(b) Standards for all tasks must be clearly defined so that the trainer can assess whether his soldiers or units are ready to move to more complex training events. The provision for critical training gates recognizes that the task force METL and the task force commander's assessment of his unit's training status will determine the selection and timing of the collective training exercises in the company team's training strategy.

e. Gunnery. The CH-47D is configured and mission-profiled to be equipped with door gunners. FM 3-04.140(FM 1-140), states, in part, "to make helicopter crews and units work together as a team, the commander must execute a well-planned, realistic, and consistent training program . . . the unit commander's training assessment and planning are essential to the success of unit level gunnery training program . . . the goal of this training is to maximize combat ready crews." Door gunners are an essential element in maintaining the defensive posture for heavy helicopters and must be able to acquire and engage a variety of targets from varied flight profiles. DA PAM 350-38 mandates that 90 percent of the assigned M60D gunners must have completed qualification according to FM 3-04.140(FM 1-140) and Table X within the past 12 months. DA PAM 350-38 also establishes the resource requirement for two

door gunners per aircraft as assigned. An effective door gunnery training program is progressive and consists of 10 training tables that progress in numerical order from individual marksmanship training to multiship live-fire.

f. Standardization Program. The aviation commander is responsible for his unit's standardization program. According to AR 34-4, the objectives of standardization are to improve and sustain proficiency and readiness among soldiers and units throughout the Army. Universal application of approved practices and procedures and a reduction of the adverse effects of personnel turbulence—such as retraining—following reassignment will accomplish this goal. The commander's primary standardization staff members include subordinate commanders, unit standardization officers, and NCOs.

g. Aviation Training Balance. The status of aviation unit training depends on the proficiency level of individuals, crews, and unit collective training. Developing individual and crew skills through readiness-level progression initially sets the foundation for collective proficiency. There are battalion level requirements; however, collective proficiency is assessed at the company level and is the basis of the aviation battle-focused training program. The key to success in training is balance and consistent flying as opposed to peaks and valleys. Commanders should ensure that collective training is conducted whenever possible with an uncooperative OPFOR, ASET-IV or TRTG, and OCs. In addition, MILES/AGES should be used whenever possible. It helps show the crews what correct collective training looks like. Balance means that collective training is not resourced at the expense of individual/crew training. However, commanders can conduct individual/crew training as part of collective training events. A major opportunity will be to integrate the AVCATT into the unit's collective training strategy as a mission planning, rehearsal, execution, and AAR tool.

h. Resourcing. Resourcing is a major challenge for all commanders. Appendix A of this MTP discusses CATS. It helps commanders identify, quantify, and acquire training resources. Aviation commanders must understand and work the resourcing processes. Unfortunately, funding for flying hours and the allocation of flying hours do not flow from HQDA together. It is not unusual to receive flying hours without adequate dollars to support the expenditure of these hours. To be successful, dollars and hours must be tracked concurrently. Often it is a matter of educating higher level commanders and staffs. This can be done very effectively during a division commander's QTB.

i. Readiness. A heavy helicopter battalion commander submits a recurring USR according to guidance contained in AR 220-1 and TC 1-210. The report determines a unit's status by comparing selected personnel, equipment, and training factors to wartime requirements and by using the commander's overall assessment of the unit. The unit training level indicates the unit's ability to perform assigned wartime missions based on the demonstrated proficiency of subordinate units, leaders, and soldiers and the availability of critical resources required to support METL training. Proficiency is measured in terms of the unit's demonstrated ability to perform the tasks as stated in the approved unit METL. Commanders use results from recent external evaluation of MTP standards, training densities at the CTCs, emergency deployment readiness exercises, FTXs, CPXs, combined arms live-fire exercises, operational readiness exercises, and other training events described in the unit's CATS. TC 1-210 provides crew readiness guidelines. It emphasizes collective proficiency, rather than currency as the standard for individual aviators, crews, and units. Most aviation units are resourced to a C² level of readiness.

j. Sustainment Training. Once individuals and units have trained to a required level of proficiency, leaders must structure collective and individual training plans to repeat critical task training at the minimum frequency necessary for sustained proficiency. Army units prepare to accomplish wartime missions by frequent sustainment training on critical tasks rather than by infrequent *peaking* to the appropriate level of wartime proficiency. Sustainment training enables crews and individuals to operate in the *band of excellence* described in FM 7-0(FM 25-100) by appropriate repetitions of critical task training. MTPs, ATMs, and the ITEP are tools to help achieve and sustain collective, crew, and individual proficiency. The aviation task-based CATS crosswalks these tools to support the development of unit training plans.

k. Training Management. The ATP historically reflects the requirements necessary to train individual aviators to some level of proficiency as outlined in appropriate ATMs and to maintain currency as outlined in AR 95-1. With the advent of aviation forces capable of conducting maneuver operations, the concept of an ATP has grown to include training of those individual, crew, and collective training tasks needed to accomplish successful joint and combined arms operations. To ensure proficiency at all levels, the commander's collective challenges include developing a battle-focused ATP in concert with the battle-focused plans of the other combined arms team members. It also includes synchronizing individual crew and collective training and managing scarce resources—flying hours, time, maintenance support. Training and resourcing an aviation battalion are the same as training and resourcing other battalions with one exception. The exception is the division. The division three-cycle time-management system to plan and conduct training does not usually apply. The resulting challenge is to ensure that aviation battalions have the same opportunities and time as other battalions to adequately prepare for their METL.

l. Training Aids, Devices, Simulators, and Simulations. It is difficult to train and maintain a modern aviation battalion at a T-level of proficiency without the use of TADSS. Resources, environmental restrictions, PERSTEMPO, and safety put serious limitations on the principle to *train as we fight*. ATPs must reflect structured training programs that use available TADSS for individual, crew, and collective training. Structured training programs with supervision and after-action-reviews are necessary for individual, crew, and collective simulation training periods. Commanders must ensure that TADSS are included in long-range planning. Commanders are encouraged to become familiar with the Army's training modernization process, Army Training XXI, to ensure that they can capitalize on high-technology training concepts, such as distance learning via Classroom XXI.

m. Protecting the Force (Safety). The protection of aviation soldiers and their weapon systems is a way of life in the aviation business. An effective training program that is well thought out and planned along with appropriate regulations and guidance is arguably the most important factor in any unit's safety program when it is embraced by every soldier in the unit. Flying *by the book* does not hinder a unit's battle focus but will actually enhance it. Risk management, crew coordination training, crew endurance programs, and all of the other facets of an ATP set the tasks, conditions, and standards for training, as we will fight. Appendix C of this MTP addresses risk management.

1-7. CONDUCTING TRAINING

The role of this MTP is to facilitate planning, preparation, coordination, and execution of unit training in a logical and efficient manner. Coordination is not discussed as a separate step; however, it must take place throughout the entire eight-step process. Continuous coordination reduces the likelihood of unforeseen training distracters. It helps ensure that sufficient resources will be on hand for training. It gives the commander a proactive means to identify and address issues before they become serious challenges. Coordination is the thread that binds the eight steps of the training process together. It should be encouraged at each level of command. Coordination between infantry and aviation company commanders, as an example, can often lead to valuable, mutually supporting training opportunities for both units. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of the battalion's training plan. It is an expression of the commander's vision based on an understanding of the unit's mission, doctrine, capabilities, supporting and supported units' doctrine and capabilities, enemy capabilities, training philosophy, and the training environment. The following discussion covers several aspects of the planning process:

a. Planning for the training program involves leaders at all levels of the unit organization. Each subordinate must understand the higher commander's intent. In turn, he must develop his own intent and synchronize his training with his commander's plan.

(1) The aviation brigade commander is the primary trainer of all the battalions within the brigade. He develops a comprehensive, long-term training strategy encompassing a variety of training events, such as FTXs and STXs. Based on the unit's METL, the commander makes an initial assessment of the entire brigade, including the utility battalion and its companies, to identify systemic weaknesses. He can develop a training focus and specify the individual, crew, and collective tasks he

wants to train and evaluate. An aviation brigade and all of its battalions must synchronize its training plan with the division/corps commanders and supported units to maximize aviation training while flying in support of supported commanders. This is critical to the planning process.

(2) The battalion commander will use the brigade commander's plan to define his responsibilities and to develop and execute his own training strategy. He helps the company commanders plan and execute training for their unit. He will usually focus on individual leader training, crew training, and collective tasks and battle drills, primarily through the use of STXs. Again, it is important for the battalion commander to coordinate and synchronize his training program with supported units to maximize training opportunities.

(3) Company leaders then focus on individual, crew, and collective training, primarily at the crew level. Companies should be able to perform all collective tasks and battle drills according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate FMs, MTPs, ATMs, and unit SOPs. To accomplish this, companies should plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in battalion-level training. These exercises can increase the confidence level of individual crewman and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the company commander can use the AVCATT, sand table exercises, rock drills, and OPORD drills to ensure his aircrews have a basic understanding of the tasks they must execute.

(4) TC 1-210 provides critical guidance to commanders at all levels on how to integrate individual, crew, and collective training in their aviation training strategy. Aviation commanders use a crawl-walk-run strategy for individual and crew training, and then integrate individual and crew sustainment training into their collective training strategy.

b. In developing the battalion training plan, leaders at all levels should follow the principles outlined in FM 7-0(FM 25-100) and FM 7-10(FM 25-101). In addition, they should use this MTP, the ATM, and TC 1-210 as guides. They should employ the following development *tools* from this MTP:

(1) The lists in Chapter 2 and the heavy battalion CATS identify the battalion collective tasks and leader tasks used during training exercises.

(2) The mission outlines in Chapter 3 show the hierarchy of related missions that also must be trained to meet the commander's goals. The outlines are adjustable, allowing leaders to tailor STXs to their needs.

(3) Chapter 4 provides guidance for planning and conducting exercises used to train designated missions (FTXs) or single tasks or groups of related tasks (STXs). TC 1-210 and the CATS support the integration of individual and crew training into these FTXs and STXs.

(4) Chapter 5 contains T&EOs for the battalion collective tasks that support the critical wartime operations.

(5) Chapter 6 provides guidance for planning, conducting, and evaluating company exercises.

c. There is never enough time to train everything. In developing their training plans, leaders must prioritize the tasks that require training. They must focus on their units' biggest operational challenges and on their most difficult sustainment skills. Before training begins, commanders must conduct a training meeting with all leaders in their units—including company commanders, company first sergeants, company standardization, and company safety officers—according to TC 25-30, to analyze training requirements and prioritize tasks. This kind of session also can help identify weak areas that require the attention of trainers and leaders.

d. Once the unit leaders have identified the tasks to be trained, they must integrate them into a training schedule. The company commander may submit a list of the tasks and related training events he has selected to the battalion commander. The commander in turn develops his own list, but he must review the company commander's recommendations. Once the commander has approved the list of

tasks and related training events, he includes them on the battalion training schedule. The battalion commander can use the following procedures:

- (1) List the tasks according to their priority and the frequency with which they need to be trained.
- (2) Determine the amount of time required and decide how multiechelon training will be used.
- (3) Determine the site for the training.
- (4) Determine who will be responsible for what. The leader of the element being trained must always be involved.
- (5) Organize training needs into blocks of time and required training resources—such as ammunition, MILES equipment, and suitable training areas.

e. Aviation OPTEMPO is a major resourcing challenge for the Army; it receives significant attention. Most aviation units are resourced at a C² level of readiness as defined by the CATS. Commanders must be aware of the funds allocated to fund the flying-hour program. They must ensure that they are programmed to fund the maintenance necessary to execute the training strategy. Maintenance cannot be separated from training. As such, it must be included in any training plan.

f. The importance of a QTB—ATB for RC units—to the battalion commander cannot be over emphasized. It is the forum in which commanders identify their training resource needs and get resource commitments from the higher commander. It provides an opportunity for the battalion's leadership to discuss warfighting and training challenges with their senior commander. The focus should be on the unit's proficiency level at the individual, crew, and collective levels. QTBs are considered to be short-range briefings conducted by senior commanders to review and approve the training plans of subordinate units. It is an opportunity for a senior commander to teach subordinates the fine points of his philosophy and strategies in all aspects of warfighting. It also is an excellent opportunity for a subordinate commander and his key leaders to gain a better understanding of how their METL relates to the battle-focused training programs of their senior commanders and peers.

g. Army NG aviation units continue to face multiple challenges. These challenges include equipment modernization, declining resources, and ever increasing operational requirements. Tactically, the most challenging issue for the commander is to accomplish collective training. Commanders may become more innovative in their approach to training opportunities. They do this by managing and allocating resources based on a tier concept to meet readiness requirements. IDT and AFTPs are used mainly for individual and crew training. Annual training periods are focused toward collective training. These training periods include rotational deployments in support of JCS exercises, NTC/JRTC support, and worldwide partial selective reserve call-ups. In addition, Army NG aviation units remain a valuable asset in state and local emergencies. This dual mission capability, unique to the NG, meets this need. At the same time, this capability strengthens ties to the local community.

1-8. FORCE PROTECTION (SAFETY)

a. Military history clearly reveals risk as a principle of operations and the severe consequences of not effectively managing it. Military operations are inherently risky and dangerous whether in training or in actual operations. The element of risk, along with the combined effects of terrain, time, and the environment—and the designed efforts of the enemy to induce failure—can combine to produce disastrous results. The outcome cannot be left to play out according to chance or in the hope that things will work out well. As an institution, the Army demands responsible action, which includes protecting soldiers as they accomplish their mission. As such, complacency or a cavalier acceptance of risk is not acceptable. Articulating risk—collecting data, quantifying risk, and making a decision—is a command responsibility.

b. The purpose of risk management is to identify operational risks and to take reasonable measures to reduce or eliminate hazards. Risk management allows units to operate successfully in high-risk environments. Leaders at every level have the responsibility to identify hazards, to take measures to reduce or eliminate hazards, and then to accept risk only to the point that the benefits outweigh the potential losses. The Army's doctrinal manuals articulate the risk-management process as the principal risk-reduction tool. Risk management is not an add-on feature to the decision-making process, but a fully integrated element of planning and executing operations. The goal is to make risk management a routine part of planning and executing operational missions. As such, it is fully integrated into this MTP. In addition, Appendix C gives commanders specific risk management principles.

1-9. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Protection of natural resources is an ever-increasing concern to the Army. It is the responsibility of all unit leaders to decrease, and if possible, eliminate damage to the environment when conducting training. The commander's challenge is to conduct tough, realistic training while complying with environmental restrictions.

a. **Environmental Awareness.** The three general areas most commonly applied to environmental awareness are maneuver, logistics and maintenance, and gunnery.

(1) **Maneuver.** All defensive and offensive tactical operations require an element to maneuver. Most training areas have environmental restrictions a unit must follow when conducting tactical operations. Some examples of these are where to cross a stream, what area to drive over, where to place a FARP, or where to dig a battle position. Unique to aviation units is the flight route parameters resulting from environmental and noise complaint restrictions. These restrictions must be considered while planning aviation missions and during mission briefs. Training must be conducted to accommodate the environmental restrictions.

(2) **Maintenance and logistics support.** Aviation units use large amounts of hazardous materials while conducting routine maintenance. Commanders will be held responsible for the proper disposal of oils, lubricants, and rags. The operation of FARPs is especially challenging because of the potential for major environmental catastrophes. Most training areas have specific environmental SOPs for operations in that area. The SOPs will specify the proper disposal of oils and lubricants, using drip pans, and washing grease and oil off vehicles.

(3) **Gunnery.** All gunnery ranges will have environmental SOPs. These restrictions will include normal environmental guidance. They also will include specific instructions for the disposal of casings and ammunition boxes and maneuvering of weapon systems.

NOTE: Each U.S. installation is subject to local and state environmental regulations in addition to federal legislation. For information pertaining to a specific location, contact the installation environmental office. When overseas or on deployment, contact a higher S3/G3.

b. **Environmental Risk Management.** Environmental risk management parallels safety risk management and is based on the same philosophy and principles. It consists of the following steps:

(1) **Identify hazards.** Potential sources of environmental degradation will be identified during analysis of the factors of METT-TC. Environmental hazards are conditions with the potential for polluting air, soil, or water and/or destroying cultural or historical artifacts.

(2) **Assess hazards.** Using the environmental risk assessment matrix (see Figure 1-3), the potential severity of environmental degradation for each training activity will be analyzed. The matrix allows trainers to quantify the risk to the environment. The risk impact value is an indicator of the level of severity.

(3) Make environmental risk decisions. Leaders make risk management decisions based on the results of the assessment. Other than the overall risk rating, the risk assessment matrix also can be used to help make environmental risk decisions. For example, the unit operations that are most likely to cause damage (see Step 2) can be the focus of risk controls. The environmental areas that are most at risk also can be determined (see Step 3).

(4) Brief the chain of command. All responsible individuals and agencies will be briefed on proposed plans and pertinent high-risk environmental factors. This will include the installation environmental office, if applicable. Risk decisions are made at the level of command that corresponds to the degree of risk.

(5) Implement controls. Environmental protection measures will be implemented by integrating them into plans, orders, SOPs, training standards, and rehearsals.

(6) Supervise. Environmental protection standards will be enforced during supervision of all training activities.

1-10. EVALUATION

The T&EOs in Chapter 5 describe standards that must be met for each task.

a. All training must be evaluated. Evaluations can be internal or external. Internal evaluations are conducted at all levels; they must be inherent in all training. External evaluations are usually more formal and normally are conducted by a headquarters two levels above the unit being evaluated. (See Chapter 6 of this MTP.)

b. The ARTEP concept is based on simultaneous training and evaluation. Too often, leaders do not practice continuous evaluation. Often soldiers or small units are trained to perform a task to standard. Then later, when they execute that task as part of a training exercise, they execute it poorly or incorrectly and are not corrected. For this program to work, trainers and leaders must continually evaluate training as it is being executed.

c. Leaders should emphasize direct, on-the-spot evaluations. Correcting poor performance during individual or small group training is easy to do. In higher level exercises, it is usually not feasible to do this with outside evaluators; however, on-the-spot evaluations should not be totally eliminated. Plan AARs at frequent logical intervals during the exercises, usually after the completion of a major subordinate task. This is a proven technique that allows leaders to correct performance shortcomings while they are still fresh in everyone's mind. This prevents reinforcement of bad habits.

d. FM 7-10(FM 25-101) provides detailed instructions for conducting an AAR and detailed guidance on coaching and critiquing during training.

1-11. FEEDBACK

Recommendations for improving this MTP are requested. Feedback will help ensure that appropriate changes are included in future training publications in addition to this MTP. A questionnaire is included at the end of this MTP to facilitate the submission of recommendations and comments. The mailing address is Commander, U.S. Army Aviation Center, Directorate of Training Doctrine and Simulation, Doctrine Division, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362. Points of contact may be reached by telephone at (DSN) 558-9212/9343 or (Comm) 334-255-9212/9343.

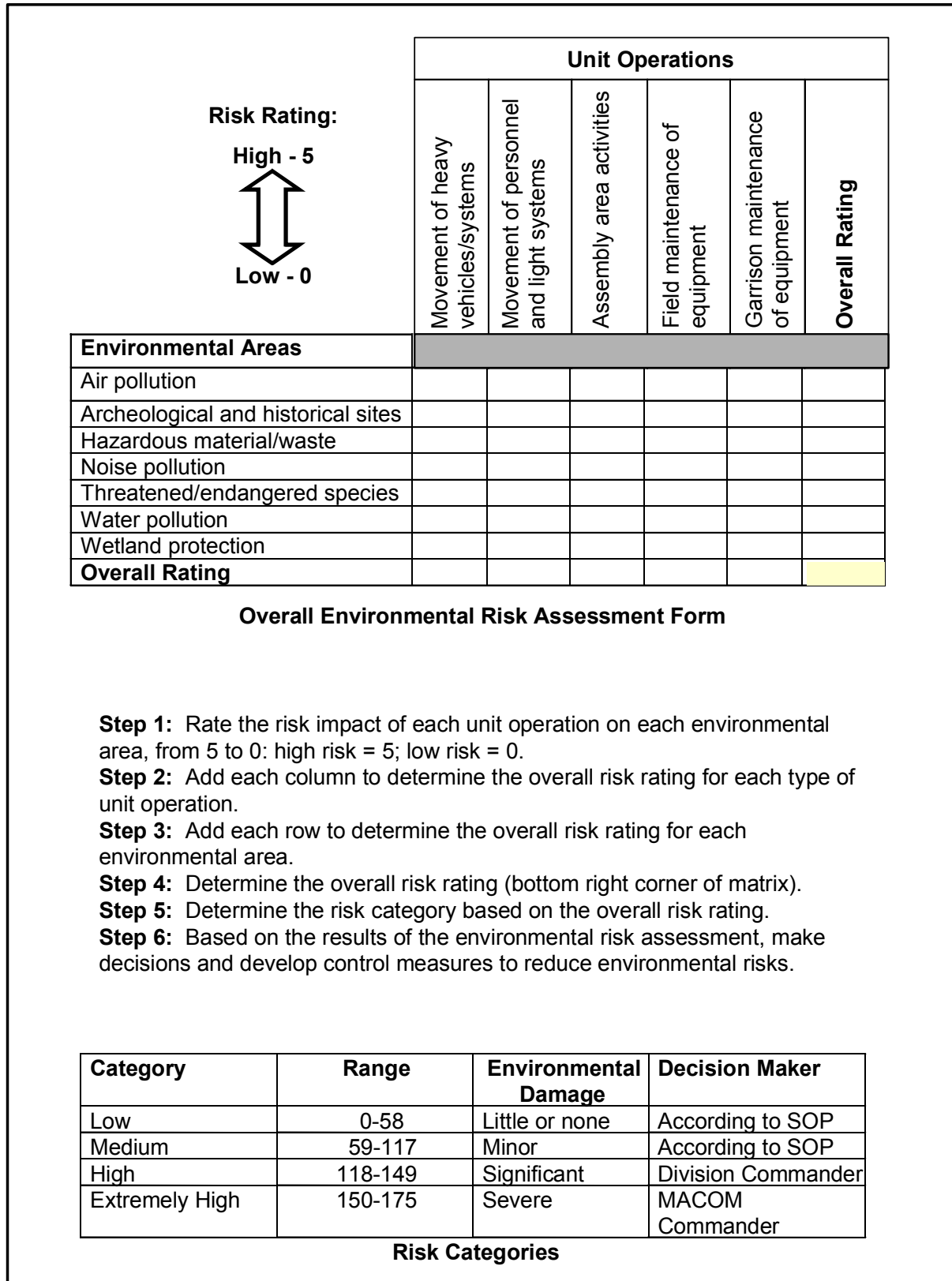


Figure 1-3. Environmental risk management matrix.

CHAPTER 2

TRAINING MATRIXES

2-1. GENERAL

The training listing assists the commander in planning the training of his unit's personnel. Figure 2-1 provides mission identification for the unit.

MISSION TITLE
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS • CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OPERATIONS • CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS • PROVIDE CASEVAC • PROVIDE COMBAT SEARCH AND RESCUE • PROVIDE COMBAT SUPPORT AND COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT • CONDUCT MISSION SUPPORT

Figure 2-1. Mission identification table.

2-2. MISSION TO COLLECTIVE TASKS LISTING

Figure 2-2 identifies missions and their supporting collective tasks.

MISSION: CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS		
Collective Task	(01-2-5105.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS
MISSION: CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OPERATIONS		
Collective Tasks	(01-2-1336.01-0NRC)	PERFORM AERIAL MOVEMENT OF HAZARDOUS CARGO
	(01-2-5103.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OPERATIONS
	(01-2-5106.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS
MISSION: CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS		
Collective Tasks	(01-1-1014.01-0NRC)	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
	(01-1-1017.01-0NRC)	PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)
	(01-1-1342.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT A CIVIL MILITARY OPERATION
	(01-1-1344.01-0NRC)	LIMIT LOCAL POPULATION INTERFERENCE WITH U.S. MILITARY

Figure 2-2. Missions to collective task.

	(01-1-1345.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSISTANCE
	(01-1-1346.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE HUMANITARIAN SUPPORT
	(01-1-1347.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1348.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH BASE OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1349.01-0NRC)	CONTROL A CIVIL DISTURBANCE
	(01-1-1350.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT A SHOW OF FORCE DEMONSTRATION
	(01-1-1351.01-0NRC)	DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN
	(01-1-1354.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT MEDIATION AND NEGOTIATION
	(01-1-1358.01-0NRC)	ENFORCE PEACE AGREEMENTS
	(01-1-1359.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY A QUICK REACTION FORCE
MISSION: PROVIDE CASEVAC		
Collective Task	(01-2-1360.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATION (CASEVAC)
MISSION: PROVIDE COMBAT SEARCH AND RESCUE		
Collective Tasks	(01-1-1020.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS
	(01-2-0108.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS
MISSION: PROVIDE COMBAT SUPPORT AND COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT		
Collective Task	(01-2-1335.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT CH-47 FORWARD AREA REFUELING EQUIPMENT (CFARE) OPERATIONS
MISSION: CONDUCT MISSION SUPPORT		
Collective Tasks	(01-1-0034.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE
	(01-1-0062.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES
	(01-1-1001.01-0NRC)	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C ²) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS
	(01-1-1002.01-0NRC)	DIRECT THE STAFF
	(01-1-1016.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES
	(01-1-1019.01-0NRC)	INTEGRATE AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY MEASURES
	(01-1-1022.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT
	(01-1-1023.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)

Figure 2-2. Missions to collective task (continued).

(01-1-1024.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM
(01-1-1028.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)
(01-1-1031.01-0NRC)	MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE
(01-1-1060.01-0NRC)	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL
(01-1-1101.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)
(01-1-1102.01-0NRC)	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
(01-1-1103.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
(01-1-1104.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING
(01-1-1105.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
(01-1-1107.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT
(01-1-1120.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)
(01-1-1201.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)
(01-1-1202.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES
(01-1-1203.01-0NRC)	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE
(01-1-1206.01-0NRC)	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR
(01-1-1301.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)
(01-1-1302.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)
(01-1-1303.01-0NRC)	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS
(01-1-1306.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)
(01-1-1308.01-0NRC)	INTEGRATE BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS INTO THE ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A ² C ²) PLAN
(01-1-1311.01-0NRC)	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS
(01-1-1401.01-0NRC)	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)
(01-1-1402.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT
(01-1-1403.01-0NRC)	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
(01-1-1405.01-0NRC)	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
(01-1-1406.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
(01-2-0001.01-0NRC)	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE
(01-2-0013.01-0NRC)	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK
(01-2-0017.01-0NRC)	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK

Figure 2-2. Missions to collective task (continued).

(01-2-0101.01-0NRC)	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA
(01-2-0102.01-0NRC)	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION
(01-2-0108.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS
(01-2-0201.01-0NRC)	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
(01-2-0203.01-0NRC)	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT
(01-2-0280.01-0NRC)	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
(01-2-0301.01-0NRC)	USE COUNTERMEASURES AGAINST ENEMY AIR DEFENSE ARTILLERY (ADA)
(01-2-0403.01-0NRC)	COMPLY WITH ESTABLISHED ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A ² C ²) MEASURES
(01-2-0609.01-0NRC)	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
(01-2-0610.01-0NRC)	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION
(01-2-0611.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION
(01-2-0702.01-0NRC)	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
(01-2-0715.01-0NRC)	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
(01-2-2035.01-0NRC)	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES
(01-2-2036.01-0NRC)	REPORT INFORMATION
(01-2-2047.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES
(01-2-2048.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
(01-2-2051.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
(01-2-2052.01-0NRC)	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
(01-2-2054.01-0NRC)	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
(01-2-2064.01-0NRC)	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
(01-2-2160.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE
(01-2-7011.01-0NRC)	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS
(01-2-7012.01-0NRC)	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS
(01-2-7013.01-0NRC)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS
(01-2-7014.01-0NRC)	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS
(01-2-7017.01-0NRC)	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR [BDAR]/RECOVERY OPERATIONS
(01-2-7039.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
(01-2-7102.01-0NRC)	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
(01-2-7105.01-0NRC)	PERFORM AERIAL PASSAGE OF LINES
(01-2-7707.01-0NRC)	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
(01-2-7714.01-0NRC)	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS
(01-2-7730.01-0NRC)	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS
(01-3-7726.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT FORWARD ARMING AND REFUELING POINT (FARP) OPERATIONS

Figure 2-2. Missions to collective task (continued).

(01-4-0320.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
(01-4-1029.01-0NRC)	PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS
(01-4-1352.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS
(01-4-1414.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C4) SYSTEMS PLANNING
(01-4-7708.01-0NRC)	PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT
(01-4-7720.01-0NRC)	ESTABLISH MEDICAL SUPPORT
(01-4-7721.01-0NRC)	CONDUCT MEDICAL SUPPORT ACTIVITIES
(01-4-7723.01-0NRC)	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
(01-5-1110.01-0NRC)	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM

Figure 2-2. Missions to collective task (concluded).

2-3. SUPPORTING REFERENCES TO COLLECTIVE TASKS LISTING

Figure 2-3 identifies references that provide additional information on each of the collective tasks.

BOS: DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE		
Collective Task:	01-1-1060.01-0NRC	PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40)	Enemy Prisoners Of War, Civilian Internees And Detained Persons
	DA Pam 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedure)
Collective Task:	01-1-1203.01-0NRC	PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE
References	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operation.
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 2-0(FM 34-1)	Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations
	FM 2-50.301(FM 34-25-3)	All-Source Analysis System and the Analysis and Control Element
	FM 2-50.601(FM 34-25-6)	(S) Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Electronic Processing and Dissemination System (U)
	FM 2-33.5(FM 34-3)	Intelligence Analysis

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks.

Collective Task:	01-1-1206.01-0NRC	PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR
References	FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40)	Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees, and Detained Persons
	Joint Pub 3-50.21	Joint Doctrine for Combat Search and Rescue
Collective Task:	01-2-2036.01-0NRC	REPORT INFORMATION
Reference	FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75)	Combat Skills Of The Soldier
BOS: DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER		
Collective Task:	01-1-1343.01-0NRC	CONDUCT AVIATION URBAN OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-06.1(FM 1-130)	Aviation Urban Operations (to be published)
	FM 3-97.11(FM 90-10-1)	An Infantryman's Guide to Urban Combat in Build-up Areas
Collective Task:	01-1-1347.01-0NRC	CONDUCT AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-1-1349.01-0NRC	CONTROL A CIVIL DISTURBANCE
References	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
Collective Task:	01-1-1350.01-0NRC	CONDUCT A SHOW OF FORCE DEMONSTRATION
References	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1358.01-0NRC	ENFORCE PEACE AGREEMENTS
References	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1359.01-0NRC	EMPLOY A QUICK REACTION FORCE
References	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-2-0001.01-0NRC	PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE
References	FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95)	Cavalry Operations
	FM 4-01.30(FM 55-30)	Army Motor Transport Units And Operations
	FM 4-01.9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-2-0101.01-0NRC	OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95)	Cavalry Operations
	FM 3-34.103(FM 5-103)	Survivability
Collective Task:	01-2-0102.01-0NRC	SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION
References	FM 3-09(FM 6-20)	Fire Support In The AirLand Battle
	FM 3-21.10(FM 7-10)	The Infantry Rifle Company
	FM 3-21.7(FM 7-7)	The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad [APC]
Collective Task:	01-2-2048.01-0NRC	CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT
References	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Battalion
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 4-01.30(FM 55-30)	Army Motor Transport Units and Operations
	FM 4-01.9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning
Collective Task:	01-2-5105.01-0NRC	CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Battalion
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-97.4(FM 90-4)	Air Assault Operations
Collective Task:	01-2-7105.01-0NRC	PERFORM AERIAL PASSAGE OF LINES
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Battalion

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
BOS: EMPLOY FIREPOWER		
Collective Task:	01-1-1022.01-0NRC	COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT
References	FM 3-09(FM 6-20)	Fire Support In The AirLand Battle
	FM 3-09.71(FM 6-71)	Tactics, Techniques, And Procedures For Fire Support For The Combined Arms Commander
	FM 3-91.1(FM 71-1)	Tank And Mechanized Infantry Company Team
BOS: PROTECT THE FORCE		
Collective Task:	01-1-0034.01-0NRC	COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-11.100(FM 3-100)	Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-97.50(FM 3-50)	Smoke Operations
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
Collective Task:	01-1-1016.01-0NRC	EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES
References	AR 380-5	Department of the Army Information Security Program
	AR 380-19-1	(C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U)
	FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30)	Physical Security
	FM 6-02(FM 24-1)	Signal Support to Army Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1019.01-0NRC	INTEGRATE AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY MEASURES
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)	Flight Operations Procedures

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-1-1202.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES
References	AR 381-10	U.S. Army Intelligence Activities
	AR 381-12	Subversion And Espionage Directed Against U.S. Army (SAEDA)
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30)	Physical Security
Collective Task:	01-2-0013.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK
References	FM 3-11.100(FM 3-100)	NBC Operations
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
Collective Task:	01-2-0017.01-0NRC	RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK
Reference	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
Collective Task:	01-2-0201.01-0NRC	PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS
References	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
Collective Task:	01-2-0203.01-0NRC	CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT
References	FM 3-24.3(FM 20-3)	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys
	FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75)	Combat Skills Of The Soldier
Collective Task:	01-2-0280.01-0NRC	CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
References	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-2-0301.01-0NRC	USE COUNTERMEASURES AGAINST ENEMY AIR DEFENSE ARTILLERY (ADA)
Reference	FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)	Flight Operations Procedures
Collective Task:	01-2-0403.01-0NRC	COMPLY WITH ESTABLISHED ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A ² C ²) MEASURES
References	FM 3-100.1(FM 100-103)	Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone
	FM 3-100.2	ICAC2 Multiservice Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-2-0609.01-0NRC	CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA
References	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
	FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)	NBC Protection
	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
Collective Task:	01-2-0610.01-0NRC	PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION
References	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
Collective Task:	01-2-0611.01-0NRC	CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION
References	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
Collective Task:	01-2-2035.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 2-01.3(FM 34-130)	Intelligence Preparation Of The Battlefield

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-2-2051.01-0NRC	EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
References	FM 03-04.300(FM 1-300)	Flight Operations Procedures
	FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8)	Small Unit Self-defense Against Air Attack
Collective Task:	01-2-2052.01-0NRC	EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES
References	FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)	Flight Operations Procedures
	FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8)	Small Unit Self-Defense Against Air Attack
Collective Task:	01-2-2160.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE
References	FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)	NBC Field Handbook
	FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)	NBC Decontamination
BOS: PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT		
Collective Task:	01-1-0062.01-0NRC	COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES
References	AR 220-10	Preparation for Overseas Movement of Units (POM)
	AR 25-400-2	The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS)
	FM 3-35(FM 100-17)	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
Collective Task:	01-1-1014.01-0NRC	PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
	FM 3-07.5(FM 90-29)	Noncombatant Evacuation Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-1-1023.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC)
References	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1031.01-0NRC	MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	Joint Pub 3-50.21	Joint Doctrine for Combat Search and Rescue
Collective Task:	01-1-1102.01-0NRC	PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
Collective Task:	01-1-1104.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING
References	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)	Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft
	Joint Pub 3-50.21	Joint Doctrine for Combat Search and Rescue
Collective Task:	01-1-1105.01-0NRC	PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES
References	AR 27-10	Legal Services: Military Justice
	DA PAM 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
Collective Task:	01-1-1107.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40)	Enemy Prisoners Of War, Civilian Internees And Detained Persons
Collective Task:	01-1-1402.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT
References	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1403.01-0NRC	INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS
References	DA Pam 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1405.01-0NRC	PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT
References	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1406.01-0NRC	COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES
References	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-2-0108.01-0NRC	CONDUCT DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	Joint Pub 3-50.21	Joint Doctrine for Combat Search and Rescue
Collective Task:	01-2-0702.01-0NRC	PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT
References	AR 220-10	Preparation for Overseas Movement of Units (POM)
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-35(FM 100-17)	Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	DOD 4500.9-R, Part III	Defense Transportation Regulation (Mobility)
	FM 4-01.12(FM 55-20)	Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations
	FM 4-01.9(FM 55-9)	Unit Air Movement Planning
Collective Task:	01-2-0715.01-0NRC	PERFORM FIELD SANITATION
References	AR 40-5	Preventive Medicine
	FM 4-25.10(FM 21-10)	Field Hygiene and Sanitation
	FM 4-25.12(FM 21-10-1)	Unit Field Sanitation Team
Collective Task:	01-2-1335.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CH-47 FORWARD AREA REFUELING EQUIPMENT (CFARE) OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	TM 55-1520-240-10	Operator's Manual for Army CH-47D Helicopter
Collective Task:	01-2-1336.01-0NRC	PERFORM AERIAL MOVEMENT OF HAZARDOUS CARGO
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	AR 95-27	Operational Procedures for Aircraft Carrying Hazardous Materials
	AR 95-1	Flight Regulations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	TM 38-250	Preparing Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipments
	TM 55-1520-240-10	Operator's Manual for Army CH-47D Helicopter
Collective Task:	01-2-1360.01-0NRC	CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATION (CASEVAC)
Reference	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
Collective Task:	01-2-2054.01-0NRC	COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS
References	FM 4-20.05(FM 10-27-4)	Organizational Supply for Unit Leaders
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
Collective Task:	01-2-2064.01-0NRC	PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT
Collective Task:	01-2-5103.01-0NRC	CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 4-20.197(FM 10-450-3)	Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Basic Operations and Equipment
	FM 4-20.198(FM 10-450-4)	Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Single-Point Rigging Procedures
	FM 4-20.199(FM 10-450-5)	Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Dual-Point Load Rigging Procedures
	FM 55-450-2(FM 4-01.450)	Army Helicopter Internal Load Operations
	FM 100-14 (FM 3-100.14)	Risk Management
Collective Task:	01-2-5106.01-0NRC	CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS
References	FM 4-01.220(FM 55-220)	Air Transport Procedures: Transport of M753 Nuclear Projectile by US Army Helicopters Transport of M753 Nuclear Projectile Complete Mission Loads by US Army CH-47 Helicopter
	FM 4-01.384(FM 55-384)	Air Transport Procedures: Transport of W84 Nuclear Warhead in H1408 Container by US Army CH-47 Helicopter
	AR 95-1	Flight Operations
	AR 50-5	Nuclear and Chemical Weapons and Material - Nuclear Surety
	TC 3-15	Nuclear Accident and Incident Response and Assistance (NAIRA)

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	AR 50-6	Nuclear and Chemical Weapons and Materiel, Chemical Surety
	TM 38-250	Preparing Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipments
	FM 4-06.450(FM 55-450-2)	Army Helicopter Internal Load Operations
Collective Task:	01-2-7011.01-0NRC	PERFORM PRODUCTION CONTROL IN THE MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS
References	DA Pam 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	TM 1-1500-204-23-1	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (General Maintenance and Practices) Volume 1
	TM 1-1500-204-23-10	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Sheet Metal Shop Practices) Volume 10
	TM 1-1500-204-23-3	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Maintenance Practices for Fuel and Oil Systems) Volume 3
	TM 1-1500-204-23-4	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Electrical and Instrument Maintenance Procedures and Practices) Volume 4
	TM 1-1500-204-23-6	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Hardware and Consumable Materials) Volume 6
	TM 1-1500-204-23-9	Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Tools and Ground Support Equipment) Volume 9
	TM 1-1500-250-23	Aviation Unit and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance for General Tie-Down and Mooring on all Series Army Models, AH-64, UH-60, CH-47, UH-1, AH-1, OH-58 Helicopters
	TM 1-1500-328-23	Aeronautical Equipment Maintenance Management Policies and Procedures
	TM 1-1500-335-23	Nondestructive Inspection Methods
	TM 1-1500-344-23	Aircraft Weapons Systems Cleaning and Corrosion Control

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	TM 1-1520-237-10	Operator's Manual for UH-60A Helicopters, UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters
	TM 55-1500-323-24	Installation Practices for Aircraft Electric and Electronic Wiring
	TM 55-1500-345-23	Painting and Marking of Army Aircraft
	TM 55-1520-240-23-9	Aviation Unit and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance Manual for CH-47D Helicopter
	STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for Lieutenants and Captains)
Collective Task:	01-2-7012.01-0NRC	MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS
References	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	TB 43-0106	Aeronautical Equipment Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP)
	TB 43-180	Calibration And Repair Requirements For The Maintenance Of Army Materiel
Collective Task:	01-2-7013.01-0NRC	PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS
References	DA Pam 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	DA Pam 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for Lieutenants and Captains
Collective Task:	01-2-7014.01-0NRC	PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS
References	DA Pam 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	DA Pam 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-2-7017.01-0NRC	PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR [BDAR]/RECOVERY OPERATIONS
References	DA Pam 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
	FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)	Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft
	STP 21-II-MQS	Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for Lieutenants and Captains
Collective Task:	01-2-7102.01-0NRC	SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-22.6(FM 22-6)	Guard Duty
Collective Task:	01-2-7707.01-0NRC	EVACUATE CASUALTIES
Reference	FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)	Medical Evacuation In A Theater Of Operations Tactics, Techniques and Procedures
Collective Task:	01-2-7714.01-0NRC	SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS
References	FM 1-0(FM 12-6)	Personnel Doctrine
	FM 4-25.11(FM 21-11)	First Aid For Soldiers
	FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)	Medical Evacuation In A Theater Of Operations Tactics, Techniques And Procedures
	DA PAM 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
Collective Task:	01-2-7730.01-0NRC	MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS
References	DA Pam 738-751	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System-Aviation (TAMMS-A)
	FM 3-04.500 (FM 1-500)	Army Aviation Maintenance
Collective Task:	01-3-7726.01-0NRC	CONDUCT FORWARD ARMING AND REFUELING POINT (FARP) OPERATIONS
References	FM 4-20.12(FM 10-67-1)	Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations
	FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-24.3(FM 20-3)	Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-4-0320.01-0NRC	PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT
References	AR 710-2	Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level
	DA Pam 710-2-1	Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures)
	FM 4-0(FM 100-10)	Combat Service Support
Collective Task:	01-4-1029.01-0NRC	PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS
Reference	FM 3-20.15(FM 17-15)	Tank Platoon
Collective Task:	01-4-7708.01-0NRC	PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT
References	FM 4-20.2(FM 10-23)	Basic Doctrine For Army Field Feeding
	FM 4-20.51(FM 10-23-1)	Commander's Guide To Food Service Operations
	FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)	Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance
Collective Task:	01-4-7720.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH MEDICAL SUPPORT
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 4-02.92(FM 8-10-4)	Medical Platoon Leaders' Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
	FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)	Medical Evacuation In A Theater Of Operations Tactics, Techniques and Procedures
	FM 4-02.55(FM 8-55)	Planning For Health Service Support
Collective Task:	01-4-7721.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MEDICAL SUPPORT ACTIVITIES
References	AR 40-8	Temporary Flying Restrictions Due to Exogenous Factors
	AR 600-105	Aviation Service of Rated Army Officers
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 4-25.11(FM 21-11)	First Aid For Soldiers
	FM 3-21.38(FM 57-38)	Pathfinder Operations
	FM 4-02.92(FM 8-10-4)	Medical Platoon Leaders' Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
	FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)	Medical Evacuation In A Theater Of Operations Tactics, Techniques and Procedures
	FM 4-02.285(FM 8-285)	Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-4-7723.01-0NRC	PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE
References	DA Pam 738-750	Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS)
	FM 4-30.3	Maintenance Operations and Procedures
Collective Task:	01-5-1110.01-0NRC	IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM
References	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 1-05(FM 16-1)	Religious Support
BOS: EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL		
Collective Task:	01-1-1001.01-0NRC	COMMAND AND CONTROL (C ²) BATTALION/ SQUADRON OPERATIONS
References	DA Pam 385-1	Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide
	DA Pam 600-41	Military Personnel Managers Mobilization Handbook
	DA Pam 600-8	Management and Administrative Procedures
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 6-22(FM 22-100)	Army Leadership
Collective Task:	01-1-1002.01-0NRC	DIRECT THE STAFF
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1017.01-0NRC	PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO)
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1020.01-0NRC	COORDINATE DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	Joint Pub 3-50.21	Joint Doctrine for Combat Search and Rescue
Collective Task:	01-1-1024.01-0NRC	COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM
References	AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program
	AR 385-95	Army Aviation Accident Prevention
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1028.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO)
References	AR 385-10	The Army Safety Program
	AR 385-95	Army Aviation Accident Prevention
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A)
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1101.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1)
References	DA Pam 600-67	Effective Writing for Army Leaders
	DA Pam 600-8-20	SIDPERS Handbook for Commanders
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A)
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-1-1120.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM)
References	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A)
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1201.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2)
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A)
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 2-0(FM 34-1)	Intelligence And Electronic Warfare Operations
	FM 2-01.3(FM 34-130)	Intelligence Preparation Of The Battlefield
	FM 2-00.21(FM 34-2-1)	Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures For Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support To Counterreconnaissance
Collective Task:	01-1-1301.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3)
References	DA PAM 385-1	Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0 (FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A)
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1302.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC)
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-1-1303.01-0NRC	PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1306.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP)
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
Collective Task:	01-1-1308.01-0NRC	INTEGRATE BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS INTO THE ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A ² C ²) PLAN
References	FM 3-100.1(FM 100-103)	Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone
	FM 3-100.2	ICAC2 Multiservice Procedures For Integrated Combat Airspace Command Control
	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)	Flight Operations and Airfield Management
Collective Task:	01-1-1311.01-0NRC	PERFORM LIAISON OPERATIONS
References	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-1-1342.01-0NRC	CONDUCT A CIVIL MILITARY OPERATION
References	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
	FM 3-07.5(FM 90-29)	Noncombatant Evacuation Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1344.01-0NRC	LIMIT LOCAL POPULATION INTERFERENCE WITH U.S. MILITARY
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1345.01-0NRC	PROVIDE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSISTANCE
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1346.01-0NRC	PROVIDE HUMANITARIAN SUPPORT
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	Civil Affairs Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-114)	Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1348.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH BASE OPERATIONS
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	Attack Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations
	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1351.01-0NRC	DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN
References	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1354.01-0NRC	CONDUCT MEDIATION AND NEGOTIATION
References	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	Domestic Support Operations
	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	Military Operations In Low Intensity Conflict
	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	Division Operations
Collective Task:	01-1-1401.01-0NRC	PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4)
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)	Operational Terms and Graphics (MCRP 5-2A)
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (continued).

Collective Task:	01-2-2047.01-0NRC	CONDUCT TROOP LEADING PROCEDURES
References	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	Risk Management
	FM 5-0(FM 101-5)	Staff Organization and Operations
	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	Army Aviation Operations
Collective Task:	01-2-7039.01-0NRC	CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT
References	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	Aviation Brigades
	FM 3-21.20(FM 7-20)	The Infantry Battalion
	FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)	Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations, Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
Collective Task:	01-4-1352.01-0NRC	ESTABLISH COMMUNICATIONS
References	FM 6-02(FM 24-1)	Signal Support in the AirLand Battle
	FM 6-24.11(FM 24-11)	Tactical Satellite Communications
	FM 6-24.16(FM 24-16)	Communications-Electronics: Operations, Orders, Records, and Reports
	FM 6-24.18(FM 24-18)	Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques
	FM 6-24.19(FM 24-19)	Radio Operator's Handbook
	FM 6-02.22(FM 24-22)	Communications - Electronics Management Systems
	FM 6-24.33(FM 24-33)	Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
	FM 6-24.35(FM 24-35)	(O) Signal Operation Instructions "THE SOI"
	TC 24-20	Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
Collective Task:	01-4-1414.01-0NRC	PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C ⁴) SYSTEMS PLANNING
References	FM 6-02(FM 24-1)	Signal Support to Army Operations
	FM 6-02.7(FM 24-7)	Tactical Local Area Network (LAN) Management

Figure 2-3. Supporting references to collective tasks (concluded).

CHAPTER 3 TRAINING PLANS

3-1. GENERAL

This chapter describes the use of the MTP to develop battalion-level training plans and provides mission outlines. It is designed to help commanders prepare training plans for critical wartime missions. FMs 7-0(FM 25-100) and 7-10(FM 25-101) provide detailed information on training management and should be used with this MTP.

a. Training Management Cycle. Figure 3-1 depicts the stages of the training management cycle. The training management cycle is METL-based and depends on continuous feedback. This cycle is a common thread throughout Chapter 3.

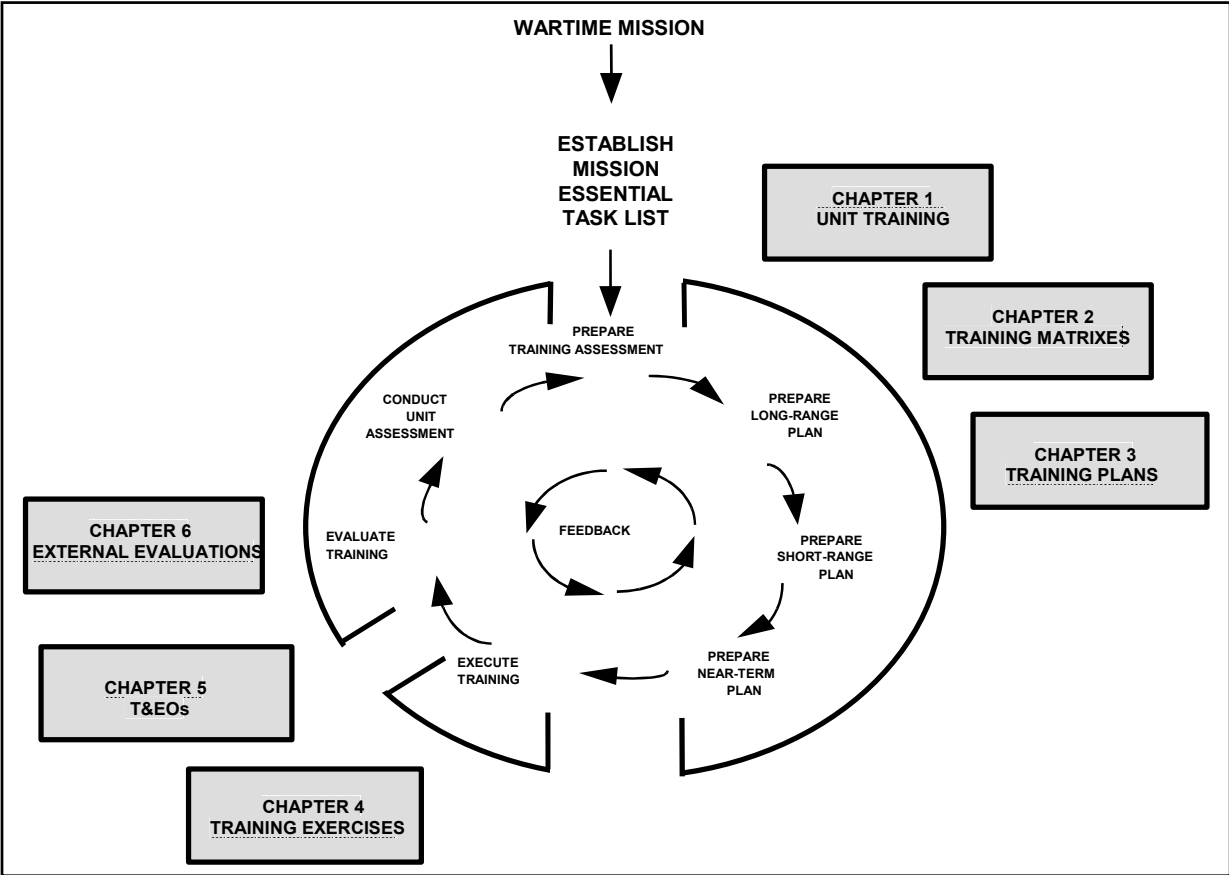


Figure 3-1. Training management cycle.

b. Training Management Automation. The Army is fielding a fully integrated training system using CD-ROM and the Internet. Successful accomplishment of these Army Training XXI training management automation objectives will support unit training at the battalion level. These improvements are described below and in each section of this MTP.

(1) Standard Army Training System. The SATS is a unit-level training development tool that ties into the TRADOC training database program called ASAT. SATS combines training doctrine with automated information management technologies to help commanders plan, manage, develop, execute, record, and report training programs. It supports AC and RC units from squad to Army level. It automates training management doctrine found in FMs 7-0(FM 25-100), 7-10(FM 25-101), and 3-0(FM 100-5). Through the use of SATS, units are able to download current doctrine for use in training and training development. Information on how to obtain SATS software and a user's guide for the database is available through the SATS project manager at the Army Training Support Center, Fort Eustis, VA 23604. The Internet address for SATS is <http://www.SATSBBS.com/public/default.htm>.

(2) Training support packages. Warfighter TSPs provide unit-tailored training scenarios for live, virtual, and constructive simulation training. Warrior TSPs and WarMod TSPs provide scenarios, courses, and materials for individual and systems training, respectively. TSPs minimize unit preparation time and increase actual training time.

(3) Training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations. TADSS is a set of training tools to offset the financial, safety, environmental, and technological constraints associated with training. TADSS also provide enhanced realism through the synthetic application of all BOS, related units, and diverse training environments. It includes physical devices for institutional and collective training and SE tools.

(4) Standard Army after-action review system. STAARS is a system of after-action systems designed to provide standardized and automated data/information storage, distribution, and retrieval. Trainers, doctrine writers, testers, analysts, materiel developers, combat developers and training developers use STAARS to provide DTLOMS-based data.

(5) General Dennis J. Reimer Training and Doctrine Digital Library. The RDL is an information repository that allows trainers, trainees, training developers, and doctrine writers to store and retrieve training and doctrine products and materials via the Internet. The Internet address of the RDL is <http://155.217.58.58/atdls.htm>.

c. Battle-Focus Planning. As in tactical operations, planning lays the foundation for successful execution of any training plan. Planning involves leaders at all levels of the organization. It is an extension of the battle-focus concept that links organizational METL with the execution and evaluation of training. Battle focus allows the commander to narrow his scope of planning to wartime mission-essential tasks. All training, planned and conducted, must be linked to the METL and support collective battle tasks. It includes improving proficiency on some tasks and sustaining performance on others. When planning training, aviation commanders should include the senior warrant officer and the senior NCO at each level of command, as the senior trainers in their unit. The battalion commander is responsible for long-range, short-range, and near-term training plans.

3-2. LONG-RANGE PLANNING

a. Publish Command Training Guidance. The CTG is published at division and brigade to document the organization's long-range—sometimes called annual—training plan. It is the training counterpart of the organization's operational war plan. It must be read and understood by every commander because it is used as a ready reference to plan, execute, and assess training throughout the long-range planning period.

b. Develop the Unit METL. This is the initial process used to develop a battle-focused, long-range training plan. The METL is an unconstrained statement of tasks required to accomplish wartime missions. It must be continuously reviewed and crosswalked with the unit MTOE, CATS, and this MTP. It must support and complement the METL of the next higher headquarters and be based on the wartime mission. All members of the organization must understand their unit METL. The following is a checklist for METL development:

- (1) The brigade commander provides a restated wartime mission and approved METL to the battalion commander.
- (2) The battalion commander identifies specified and implied tasks.
- (3) Collective tasks that support critical wartime missions, and other tasks required to execute war plans, are identified using the mission-to-collective-task list (see Figure 2-2) found in Chapter 2 of this MTP.
- (4) All collective tasks are compiled in a list sequenced as they are expected to occur during the execution of the wartime mission.
- (5) The restated mission is analyzed and only those tasks essential to accomplish the wartime mission are selected from the task list. Subordinate commanders, key warrant officers, and key NCOs participate in selecting the tasks. When the tasks are approved, these mission-essential tasks compose the specific battalion's METL and battle tasks, not to be confused with the all-inclusive collective task list found in this document.
- (6) The brigade commander then approves the battalion's METL. A unit's METL is stabilized when approved. It normally is modified only if changes occur in wartime missions. FM 7-10(FM 25-101), Chapter 2, covers METL development in detail.
- (7) The battalion's restated mission and approved METL are provided to the subordinate chain of command. Figure 3-2 depicts a sample METL for a heavy helicopter battalion.

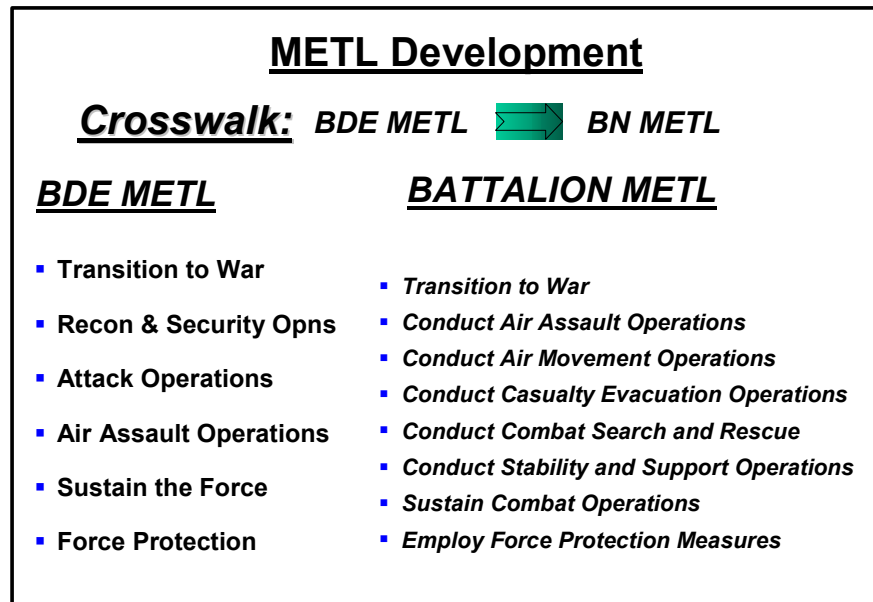


Figure 3-2. Sample utility helicopter battalion METL.

c. **Establish Training Objectives.** After the METL is approved, the commander establishes training objectives. The training objectives are conditions and standards, which describe the situation or environment and ultimate outcome criteria the unit must meet to successfully perform the tasks. Training objectives and standards for METL can be obtained from the MTP, STP, higher headquarters command guidance, and local SOP. It is important that every task have a condition and a standard so that all training can be evaluated and critiqued to the standard.

d. Conduct the Commander's Training Assessment. Every commander has specific goals and training objectives that are based on his own vision, guidance from higher commanders, and guidance in appropriate doctrinal manuals. An initial METL assessment is required to set the starting point for developing the battalion's training strategy. An ongoing evaluation process is required to ensure that the battalion continues to be focused on preparation for its wartime missions. Aviation commanders must always include the proficiency of individual aviators and aircrews in their assessment. The training assessment is the commander's continuous comparison of the unit's current proficiency with the proficiency required to fight and win on the battlefield. The commander, his staff, and subordinate commanders assess the organization's current proficiency on mission-essential tasks against the required standard. The commander then indicates the current proficiency by rating each task as "T" (Trained), "P" (Needs Practice), or "U" (Untrained). The outcome of the training assessment identifies the unit's training requirements. The METL assessment compares current levels of training with the Army standard and is used to update unit goals and objectives. Figure 3-3 summarizes the METL assessment process. Table 3-1 depicts a sample commander's training assessment for a heavy helicopter battalion. Tips for conducting the commander's training assessment are listed below.

(1) Review all formal and informal (internal/external) evaluations—such as CTC after-action reports, CIP results, and ARMS inspection trends. Pay particular attention to recurring deficiencies.

(2) Review past QTBs to determine how the previous commander assessed the unit with respect to the METL and his training strategy.

(3) Review all equipment availability and readiness reports to detect trends.

(4) Talk to the HHC commander, battalion aviation maintenance officer, battalion motor officer, and AVIM commander.

(5) Review past USR data for readiness information.

(6) Review CIS reports on individual training records and check weapons qualification, CTT, and PT scores.

(7) With company commanders, review individual aircrew-training folders for overall correctness, the commander's task list, and minimum training requirements. Discuss aviation training with the battalion standardization officer.

- **Is made by the commander.**
- **Compares current level of training with the Army standard.**
- **Is the cornerstone of the long-range planning process.**
- **Is based on firsthand observations and input from all leaders.**
- **Is a continuous process.**
- **Is used to set or update unit goals and objectives.**
- **Is influenced by future events.**

Figure 3-3. Training assessment.

Table 3-1. Sample battalion commander's training assessment.

METL TASKS	BOS						OVERALL
	INTELLIGENCE	DEPLOY/ MANEUVER	EMPLOY FIREPOWER	PROTECT THE FORCE	CSS/ SUSTAINMENT	C MD & CONTROL	
Conduct Transition to War	T	T			T	T	T
Conduct Air Assault Operations	P	P	P			P	P
Conduct Air Movement Operations	P	P	P			P	P
Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations	T	T	T			T	T
Conduct Combat Search and Rescue Operations	P	P	P			P	P
Conduct Stability and Support Operations	P	P	P			P	P
Sustain Combat Operations		T			T	T	T
Employ Force Protection Measures	T	T			T	T	T

(8) Review selected individual flight records to ensure that pilots maintain medical qualification. Ensure that pilots have current (commander-signed) DA Form 4186 (Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty) on file for annual exams and all temporary groundings. Discuss training with the flight surgeon.

(9) Review the unit's gunnery programs.

(10) Request a review of the aircrew training program, PC status, and no-notice evaluation program and a report of who is on-track, behind, and ahead with respect to ATM progression from the battalion standardization officer.

(11) Request an assessment of unit training from key leaders within the organization—such as staff, company commanders, senior warrant officers, and NCOs.

(12) Review the personnel status report for critical personnel shortages. Note personnel turnover trends. Pay particular attention to low density MOS turnover.

(13) Participate in several company-level training exercises.

(14) Talk to the soldiers.

(15) Determine operator proficiency on newly fielded equipment—such as a new series of cargo vehicle, new generators, and new or updated personal weapons.

(16) Consult with the battalion aviation safety officer. Review the unit safety record, paying particular attention to trends in accidents and incidents.

(17) Consult with the brigade commander, S3, and CSM. The perceptions of the battalion's training status by these three individuals will have tremendous impact on the battalion commander's training assessment.

e. **Army National Guard Commander's Training Assessment.** Army NG commanders face additional challenges in the training assessment process. Sources that may offer training insight include—

- The brigade FER, if the unit has recently completed a BCBST rotation.
- The TAM after an AT exercise.
- Information gained from consulting with the unit's TSBN.

f. Develop Training Strategy and Commander's Guidance. The training strategy is developed using the outcome from the training assessment. With the training strategy, the commander and his staff establish training priorities by determining the minimum frequency each mission-essential task will be trained during the upcoming planning period. It includes the commander's guidance, which includes the commander's training vision. To develop unit goals, the commander must—

- Review higher commander's goals.
- Spell out in real world terms what his unit will do to comply with the goals of higher commanders.
- List in broad terms his goals for the unit. Figure 3-4 provides a sample of the commander's guidance with training goals, objectives, and priorities.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <u>TRAINING GOALS</u> - Company/Team/Platoon METL proficiencies trained to standard. Refine battle staff proficiencies and TOC/ALOC battle tracking procedures. The battalion poised to conduct a well planned and precisely executed FTX during this quarter. • <u>TRAINING OBJECTIVES:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> -Newly assigned soldiers and leaders trained and confident on battalion SOPs/ TTPs. -Newly assigned aviators incorporated into the commander's ATM program within 10 days of arrival in the unit. -One hundred percent of crews qualified table VIII (day/night). -Companies and staff sections trained for the battalion FTX to be conducted this quarter. • <u>TRAINING PRIORITIES:</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Individual/crew proficiency sustainment. - Company/team/platoon mission training. - Door gunnery skills. - Staff battle tracking procedures. - NBC training.

Figure 3-4. Sample commander's guidance.

g. Establish Training Priorities. Priorities are established for training METL tasks by basing the priorities on training status, the criticality of the task, and the relative training emphasis the task should receive.

h. Integrate Training into the Long-Range Planning Calendar. Long-range planning is the process of integrating the battalion's training strategy into the brigade's long-range training calendar. This process ensures that resources—such as major training areas, ammunition, and fuel—are allocated and shortfalls are identified. It synchronizes supporting units and agencies so that training events can be properly executed. The tools used to develop a long-range training plan are the battalion training strategy, the brigade and division's CTG, and the brigade and division long-range training calendar—12 to 18 months out. The following basic steps can be used to develop the long-range planning calendar:

(1) Required training events on the calendar. Brigade or higher headquarters direct these requirements. These events provide excellent training opportunities. Evaluate the training strategy and determine what areas the battalion can train on during these events.

(2) Time management. Highlight prime-time training periods available to the unit and support periods. Focus resources and training exercise planning to take advantage of prime-time training. Account for holiday periods.

(3) Training cycle management. Many headquarters use a training cycle system to insulate units from training distracters during peak training periods. Capitalize on training opportunities during these peak periods. However, the nature of support in an aviation battalion often mandates some level of continuous support to other combat units, even during peak training cycles. Alignment of aviation battalions in habitual support relationships will significantly impact training management.

(4) Unit exercises and other training. Schedule events that will improve or sustain METL proficiency along with the higher headquarters directed training requirements.

(5) Aircrew Training Program. A major consideration in developing the long-range training plan for any aviation unit is the ATP and factors that impact it. Consideration must be given to—

- Individual pilot proficiency.
- Aircrew proficiency (battle roster).
- The unit maintenance program
- Flight-hour allocation to supported units where aviation training is conducted along with supported unit missions.
- Individual and aircrew training that is usually accomplished while not in a support role—such as emergency procedure training, flight evaluations, and instrument proficiency training.
- Pilot training accomplished in the crew and collective simulators/simulations.
- Training accomplished with the ASET system.

(6) Other requirements. Identify other requirements that affect training—such as announced inspections, weekly sergeants' time, new equipment fielding, and community and installation support events, such as post cleanup and parades.

i. Use SATS During Long-Range Planning. Using SATS, the commander and S3 can automate many of the long-range planning steps.

(1) METL development. During METL development, SATS is used to download the MTOE for the battalion by selecting the RDL icon and following the instructions. A generic mission statement for the battalion is in the MTOE. Through the SATS terminal, the battalion's official mission as approved by the brigade commander is obtained together with the brigade's approved METL. With this information, and the commander's guidance, the S3 can prepare a proposed METL for discussion with the company commanders. After incorporating results from these discussions and examination of implied battle tasks, informal coordination can be made with the brigade S3. The battalion commander approves the unit's proposed METL and then sends it to the brigade commander for approval. He may send it electronically through shared databases on the battalion and brigade terminals.

(2) Commander's training assessment. The commander, or the S3, can use SATS to access the RDL and download the battalion's MTP and other appropriate publications, such as FM 7-0(FM 25-100). The previous commander's training assessment may be examined. In coordination with the CSM, company commanders, senior warrant officers, 1SGs, and the staff, the commander updates the commander's training assessment based on the new METL, any training evaluations available, and the personal observations of his team of leaders. From this process the battalion commander develops his training vision, goals, and priorities that he will publish as the commander's guidance. Face-to-face coordination will occur throughout this process. The assessment documentation will be shared electronically via SATS.

(3) Long-range planning calendar. For the new annual training calendar, the S3 will carefully study the brigade CTG and the key training events in which his unit will participate. The TSPs that relate to those events can be found through SATS and the RDL. Based on the commander's training assessment, the S3 tailors the T&EO or STX for each event to emphasize the METL tasks that need practice. The METL tasks that must be trained will be the focus of battalion-directed training. The S3 selects appropriate training scenarios with supporting OPLANS from the TSPs in the SATS database. OPLAN annexes provide details on resources, sequences, and duration of training. Along with the brigade, division, and the military community, the S3 chooses training event dates that do not conflict with other key calendar events. The proposed annual training calendar is then ready to be published. It is coordinated and approved by the battalion commander and meets the requirements of the CTG, and training is resourced. The S3 includes the newly approved METL and establishes training objectives for each mission-essential task. The S3 also identifies long-lead time resources and long-term coordination requirements for CTC rotations.

3-3. SHORT-RANGE PLANNING

A short-range training plan defines, in greater detail, the broad guidance on training events and other activities contained in the long-range training guidance and on the long-range calendar. It begins with a review of the commander's training assessment and the brigade's QTG. It results in the quarterly training calendar and QTB. The short-range plan is prepared using the following steps:

a. Review the Training Program. The commander reviews the training program described in the long-range planning process. He reviews it to determine whether assessments made during long-range planning are still valid. The commander reviews—

(1) Short-range (quarterly) training guidance published at each level of command from division through battalion. QTG enables commanders and staffs to prioritize and refine mission-essential training guidance contained in the long-range CTG. Battalion commanders publish their QTG after receiving the brigade and division QTG. This usually occurs about 90 days before the start of each quarter. The roles of the CSM and battalion standardization officer are an important aspect of the QTG development process. They help identify the individual and crew training tasks that must be integrated into collective mission training during the short-range planning period.

(2) The training goals and priorities to determine whether goals are still valid. Established priorities must support these goals. To update priorities during the short-range planning process, the commander uses the same process followed in establishing priorities during the long-range planning process.

(3) Training guidance from higher headquarters to ensure the training program described in the long-range planning calendar meets the established training guidance.

(4) Long-range planning calendars of the unit and higher headquarters for entries that affect short-range planning. Changes to the long-range planning calendar may effect the unit's ability to accomplish its training program.

(5) Previous short-range planning calendars for the AC or monthly schedules for the RC. He reviews them for training accomplished, training preempted, and lessons learned.

b. Review Current Unit Proficiency. The commander performs this review to update priorities. The commander's training assessment is reviewed to provide a snapshot of the unit's current soldier, leader, and collective task proficiency. Individual and crew training sustainment must be included in the plan.

c. Review Resources. This review is performed to determine if it is still possible to execute the program described on the long-range planning calendar.

d. Review the Training Environment. The commander's second review of the training environment takes on added importance as training events and activities approach. Factors that affect the training environment and that collectively impact on the training program are—

- Personnel assigned.
- Personnel turbulence.
- Morale.
- Education programs.
- Mandatory training.
- Visits, inspections, and tests.
- Supplies and equipment.
- Nonmission-related activities.
- Other programs.

e. Develop a Detailed Plan of Action. The commander develops a detailed plan for the duration of the short-range plan. The detailed plan of action is prepared as described below.

(1) Validate the need for scheduled events. He examines the events identified on the long-range training plan to determine whether they are still valid.

(2) Transfer valid events to a quarterly training calendar.

(3) Determine desired outcomes for scheduled events. The commander determines what he expects to accomplish with each event and then plans backward to achieve the desired outcome.

(4) Analyze supporting missions to determine the related individual, leader, and collective tasks. The success of collective training is a function of the training achievement of crews and of individuals. Figure 3-5 depicts the relationships among training levels and exercises that support that training.

(5) Select specific training objectives for missions and tasks to be trained. The T&EOs in Chapter 5 give the commander the conditions, standards, task steps, and performance measures for the collective tasks that support the unit's missions.

(6) Prepare a Quarterly Training Calendar. When preparing the quarterly training calendar, the S3 studies the brigade CTG and the battalion annual training calendar. He refines and expands the annual calendar, as appropriate. He identifies, allocates, and coordinates short lead-time resources, such as local training facilities. The S3 pays particular attention to CTC lessons learned, as obtained from STAARS and the RDL in the SATS database, as he begins to develop training objectives and tasks for inclusion in an FTX OPORD. He allocates time on the AVCATT and other critical training resources. The S3 cross-references each event with specific training objectives and coordinates with all supporting agencies, the battalion staff, and unit commanders.

(7) Review short-range plans with higher headquarters.

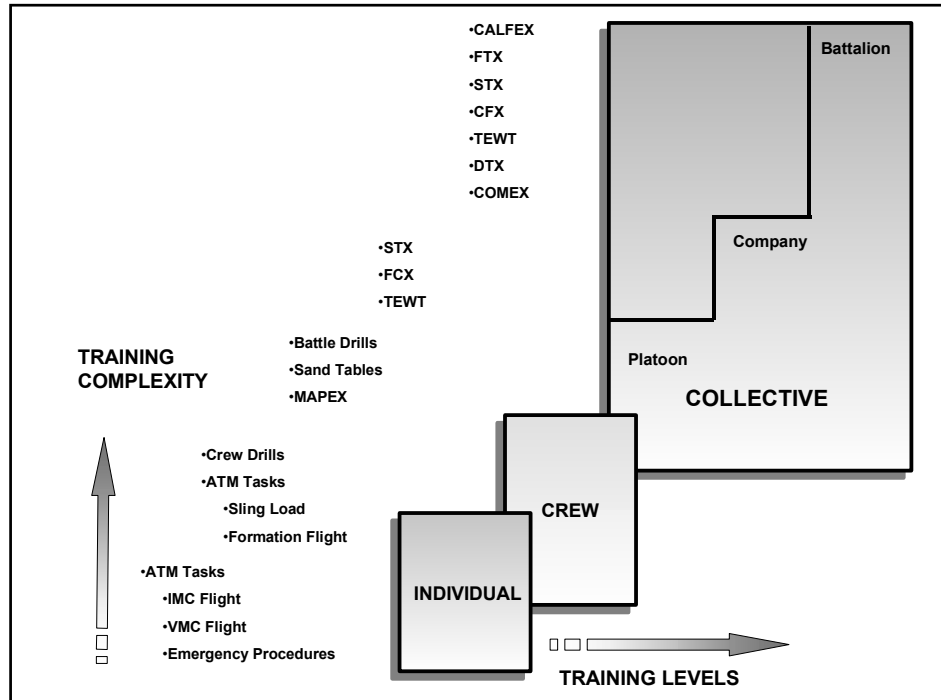


Figure 3-5. Training exercises and training levels.

(8) Issue guidance specifically addressing how training will be accomplished.

Commanders pass guidance to lower echelons in many ways, including—

- Letters of instruction.
- Training meetings.
- Command and staff calls.
- Published S3 notes.

3-4. NEAR-TERM PLANNING

Near-term planning covers a six- to eight-week period before training. It defines specific actions required to execute the short-range plan and is the final phase of planning before training execution.

a. Company and Platoon Planning.

(1) The battalion staff uses the training plan to define responsibilities and assist the company commanders in the planning and execution of training for their units. In preparation for training, the company commander may execute his own training strategy. Flight company commanders focus on individual pilot and aircrew training. They take maximum advantage of training opportunities afforded by flight hours allocated to supported units. Maintenance company commanders focus on individual soldier/maintainer development and maintenance team development.

(2) Flight platoon leaders focus on individual pilot proficiency training and on collective training of aircrews. The platoon should be able to perform all of its collective tasks and battle drills according to standards and guidelines provided by the appropriate ATM, MTP, FMs, and unit SOPs. To accomplish this, platoons can plan and execute limited STXs before taking part in company-level training. These exercises can increase the confidence level of individual aircrews and provide valuable operational experience. In addition, the platoon leader can use sand table exercises, rock drills, and OPORD drills to

ensure his subordinates have a basic understanding of the tasks and drills they must execute. In developing the platoon training plan, leaders at all levels should adhere to the principles outlined in FMs 7-0(FM 25-100) and 7-10(FM 25-101) as well as using this MTP as a guide. Platoon leaders should crosswalk training references to identify the platoon collective tasks and the crew, leader, and individual tasks used during training exercises.

b. Tips for Commanders. In near-term planning, commanders—

- Conduct battalion and company training meetings to coordinate and finalize all training events, activities, and resources.
- Provide specific guidance to trainers.
- Prepare training objectives.
- Prepare T&EOs.
- Ensure attached or units under OPCON have been integrated.
- Determine time for preexecution checks.
- Prepare detailed training schedules.
- Crosswalk aircraft requirements with aircraft maintenance.

c. Training Meetings. Training meetings are nonnegotiable at the battalion and company level; they must be held. During training meetings commanders provide guidance for forming training schedules, conduct near-term planning, and resource long-range planning. The primary focus of training meetings is management issues for the next six weeks. At the company level, training meetings focus on the specifics of training to be conducted. Well-structured, well-organized, and recurring training meetings produce training events that are exciting, demanding, and directly related to the unit's mission. Training meetings are conducted in three phases—Phase I, assessment of completed training; Phase II, coordination; and Phase III, future planning. They produce coordinated and locked-in training schedules. Battalion training meetings are—

- Conducted by the commander.
- Focused on training issues only.
- Conducted weekly.
- Routinely scheduled on the same day and time.
- Posted on the training schedule.
- Agenda oriented.
- Attended by all necessary participants to include all commanders.
- Focused on training that is METL oriented.
- Held to ensure that risk management is integrated.
- Forums to identify and overcome problems or distracters.

d. Training Schedules. The training schedule is the company's primary management tool to ensure that training is conducted on time, by qualified trainers, and with the necessary resources. Draft training schedules must be initiated at least six- to eight-weeks out to ensure that resources are coordinated and external support is requested. Once the battalion commander approves and the company commander signs the training schedule, it constitutes an official order. Training schedules must be living documents; however, the S3 should approve all changes. He ensures that they are up-to-date and posted where every soldier in the unit can read them. Training schedules ensure that information is disseminated and that every soldier knows who is to be at the scheduled training and with what equipment and the date/time/place where the training will take place.

e. Preparation for Training. As with any tactical unit, aviation units must be proficient at the myriad of tasks necessary to deploy, establish AAs and conduct operations, perform maintenance, and defend organizational assets, while located at a field site. Additionally, aviation units must maintain extremely high standards of crew member proficiency. The following discussion covers preparation for training for both ground-oriented tasks as well as aircrew tasks.

(1) Train and certify leaders. This is an important step and covers all trainers, evaluators, and unit leaders involved in unit training. The proficiency and preparedness of the evaluation team will directly affect the quality of training and the proficiency that units gain at the training site. Before execution of training, senior leaders must certify all trainers and leaders to ensure their technical and tactical proficiency in relation to the unit they will train and evaluate. Senior leaders use a series of officer and NCO professional development sessions, followed by certification exercises or examinations. These can take many forms, such as written exams and sand table evaluations. The trainers should be knowledgeable and experienced in the position of the individuals they are selected to evaluate. Leaders must also undergo training before the unit takes part in a collective training exercise. Commanders at each level must ensure that subordinate leaders are able to perform the required leader tasks in support of the collective tasks to be trained. In turn, the leadership will train subordinate leaders on the individual and crew tasks supporting the collective tasks.

(2) Reconnoiter the site. After trainers, evaluators, and leaders are certified, the commander and evaluation team must make a site reconnaissance of the area where the training will be conducted. At this point, they can begin to develop graphic control measures for the exercise. They also conduct a terrain analysis to identify all key terrain as well as the following locations:

- (a) STX lanes.
- (b) OPFOR positions.
- (c) AAs.
- (d) Leader training sites.
- (e) AAR sites.
- (f) Logistics support locations.
- (g) CP locations.
- (h) Retraining areas.

(3) Conduct risk management. Risk management can be a great asset to training realistically and safely. Identifying hazards, assessing hazards, making decisions, implementing controls, and supervising execution—whether formal or informal—are the commander's business. Training realistically for war requires commanders to properly manage the risks that are inherent in the business. This means eliminating all unacceptable risks and properly dealing with the acceptable calculated risks that remain. Appendix C of this MTP covers risk management.

(4) Issue the plan. After planning and coordination are completed, the training event begins. The platoon leader receives the OPORD and begins his troop-leading procedures. While he formulates his plan, the rest of the platoon conducts the various activities of troop-leading procedures, including crew training, in preparation for the exercise. The trainer and/or commander evaluates the platoon leader on his understanding of the OPORD, requiring him to back-brief the order. This ensures the platoon leader is ready to issue the OPORD to his platoon. It also tests his ability to understand oral orders and builds his confidence before stepping in front of his team leaders, pilots, and vehicle commanders to issue the order.

(5) Brief the mission. The mission briefing communicates mission specifics—specified and implied tasks and intent—to the aircrew or flight. Communicating information and intent is commander business. The mission briefing is an indicator of the amount of preparation that has gone into a given

mission. An incomplete, poor briefing sheet may be a false indicator of adequate or better planning. It also may be a true indicator of less-than-adequate planning.

(6) Conduct rehearsal. The key to successful execution is practice. Regardless of the unit's level of proficiency, it will benefit from conducting rehearsals. Rehearsals ensure understanding of the mission, concept of the operation, commander's intent, specific responsibilities and timing of actions, and backup procedures. Time may be critical; however, some form of rehearsal must be done before mission execution. Commanders should try to avoid redundancy. Commanders also should know the desired outcome of the rehearsal and establish standards. Some rehearsal techniques used at battalion and company level are map rehearsals, sand-table/terrain model, and rock drills. A well-thought-out and executed rehearsal results in synchronized, successful execution of combat actions. The rehearsal should cover the mission from start to finish, concentrating on actions in the objective area. If time is limited, the commander must decide the critical events of the mission and rehearse them first:

(a) Minimize changes at the rehearsal. Rehearsals generally occur at the eleventh hour. Major changes at this point can be disastrous. Instill in the members of the unit, that if they see a potential conflict, they should not wait until the rehearsal to voice it—the more time to implement a change, the better.

(b) Insist that members of each participating crew attend the rehearsal. There is no more important duty than this critical preparation task.

(c) Think risk management.

(d) Build and use an easily transportable rehearsal box/kit. Contents may include engineer tape, paint, chalk, string, rope, tent stakes, 3x5 cards, and model threat and friendly vehicles and aircraft.

(e) Reinforce earlier training and increase proficiency in the critical tasks to be evaluated.

(f) Synchronize the actions of team leaders, vehicle commanders, aircraft crews, and other subordinate elements.

(g) Confirm coordination requirements between the platoon and adjacent units.

(h) Improve each soldier's understanding of the concept of the operation, the fire support plan, anticipated contingencies, and possible actions and reactions for various situations that may arise during the operation.

f. Training Execution. Execution of a training exercise should be attempted only when the unit/crew/individual clearly understands how to execute the mission. The trainer determines this at the conclusion of the rehearsals. At that point, he either allows the unit to execute the task or continues with additional rehearsals, focusing on leader training. During the execution phase, the trainer conducts a detailed evaluation for use during the AAR, which immediately follows the exercise.

g. Conduct the AAR. A properly conducted AAR is the key to assessing the training program. The two types of AARs are formal and informal. Formal AARs normally are scheduled and conducted as part of an external or internal evaluation. Informal AARs require less planning and the focus is on-the-spot reviews of soldier and collective training performance. AARs should take the format of issues, discussion, and recommendations. They analyze the training event through the planning, preparation, and execution phases of the operation. The AAR is a professional discussion that requires the active participation of those being trained. This structured review process allows training participants to discover for themselves what happened, why it happened, and how the unit can improve its performance. Crews should conduct informal AARs after every training flight. These lessons learned should be captured and shared at the next company pilot briefing. AARs should always—

- Be standards-based and capture the good and bad aspects of the training.
- Provide the participants with a rating for each task trained during the exercise.
- Tell a story about what was planned, what happened, why it happened, and what could be done differently to improve performance.
- Tell what was good and needs to stay the same.
- Reinforce and increase the learning that took place.
- Increase soldier and leader interest and motivation.
- Identify and analyze both strengths and weaknesses.
- Involve all participants.
- Guide the training unit toward achieving learning objectives.
- Link lessons learned to subsequent training.

h. Retrain. Based on the evaluation results, the unit should undergo retraining on each task for which it receives a “No-Go” rating. Trainers and leaders must develop a training program to meet these specific requirements. The unit can then be reevaluated later.

i. Automated Near-Term Planning. For the monthly training schedule using AT XXI automated tools, the S3 calls up TADSS on the SATS terminal and allocates training resources to specific trainers. He uses STAARS to ensure appropriate AARs are included in training. He also uses it to ensure that lessons learned from other units are studied before training begins, and new lessons learned are captured when the event ends. The S3 must supervise to ensure that all training events are presented as scheduled. He ensures that they are accurate, well structured, efficient, realistic, safe, and effective. He must ensure that informal evaluation and feedback by trainers and senior leaders are continuous, and formal evaluations are included in training plans. Evaluation documentation can range from annotated T&EOs to CTC take-home packages. The STAARS can be accessed to provide simple, codified methods to capture and disseminate the results of formal evaluations as well as lessons learned using standard CALL formats. Using the command assessment program established by the battalion commander, the S3 gathers all the related reports, results, feedback, scores, evaluations, and related data used to assist in the commander's organizational assessment. The commander assesses the battalion's overall go-to-war readiness in every area, not just training. The commander uses the assessment results to update the unit files in STAARS. The information is then available—

- For input to the ULLS.
- For the SIDPERS to update the resource database.
- To update the RDL.
- To link to the SORTS.

3-5. TRAINING THE HEADQUARTERS

a. Training at the Battalion Level. Planning training for the battalion staff presents the commander with unique challenges. The staff and headquarters are involved in day-to-day priority operations and support of subordinate unit training. It is difficult to find the time to address the training needs of these elements; however, they must be capable of fulfilling their roles for the unit to perform its wartime missions. The battalion XO is the key. He must coordinate with the commander to ensure that staff tasks are mastered, while still accomplishing the day-to-day priorities.

b. Training the Coordinating Staff. Chapter 5 of this MTP identifies the training tasks for the battalion staff. The strategy used to train the staff varies based on the considerations used in planning training, such as level of proficiency and training support available. FM 7-10 (FM 25-101) contains detailed information on the conduct of exercises. Methods of training the staff are discussed below.

(1) Tactical exercise without troops.

(a) General. The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. It is used to train subordinate leaders and battle staffs on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training to

plan the execution of a unit mission, which may include employing CS and CSS assets. A TEWT can be used to train personnel to—

- Analyze terrain.
- Employ units according to terrain analysis.
- Emplace weapon systems to best support the unit's mission.
- Plan conduct of the unit's mission.
- Plan and place CS and CSS assets.
- Coach subordinates on the best use of terrain.

(b) Planning phase. TEWTs require limited resources—maps, graphic materials, and organic vehicles for transportation during the exercise. Commanders begin planning, using the following steps: operations, tasks, objectives, personnel trained, and resources.

- When conducting reconnaissance of the terrain, inspect the area for all military aspects. Take detailed notes about the area, and select rendezvous points, briefing or AAR sites, parking areas, and routes.
- In developing the scenario, include the general situation, initial situation, requirements, and time schedule. Check the scenario to ensure it fits the terrain. During this check, war-game likely responses to situations and requirements.
- Ensure narratives for the scenario (situations) are short and create a realistic battlefield picture.
- Finalize plans and the scenario. The starting point for a TEWT can be either the issuance of an OPORD or the commander's concept of the operation and intent; then reconnaissance, planning, coordination, and preparation can begin. The higher headquarters staff should assist in preparation of the OPORDs.

(c) Preparation phase. A rehearsal is conducted by war-gaming with the staff.

(d) Execution phase. All participants must be present, to include staff, company commanders, attached or OPCON commanders, platoon leaders, and CS and CSS personnel. If the staff and commander are initially preparing an OPORD, only the planning staff need be present. The execution phase should include the following:

- Explain the purpose and objectives of the exercise.
- Present the general situation. (This may be given earlier.)
- Orient personnel on the terrain and identify prominent features.
- Present the initial situation and requirements. Include the location and time of rendezvous for briefing the plan. Solutions or plans can be briefed at the same point, depending on the similarity of the company missions.
- Organize personnel into groups and release groups to conduct reconnaissance. Maintain combat organization—company commanders with platoon leaders; staff with special elements.
- Move through the area to observe personnel conducting reconnaissance and formulating plans.
- Ensure all personnel meet at designated time and place.
- Select the order and personnel to brief.
- Ensure briefers use sand tables or map boards with graphics and walk the terrain.

- Ensure personnel listen to each briefing or brief the commander on their plan separately and then move to the next position.
- Ask specific questions or provide a format for the briefer. For example, the commander may want leaders to brief on organization and employment of CS and CSS elements.
- At the end of subordinate back-briefs, the commander may conduct a sand table or terrain board rehearsal of the operation.
- Conduct TEWTs using the same procedures and techniques as for planning and preparing an actual operation.

(e) After-action review. At the conclusion of each plan or after all solutions have been presented, conduct an AAR that covers solutions, employment of forces, and the six BOS. Conduct the final AAR using the same steps and procedures as an FTX.

(2) Map exercise.

(a) General. The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise that requires a minimum number of support personnel and portrays military situations on maps and overlays. It may be supplemented with training aids, such as terrain models and sand tables. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders to plan, coordinate, and execute operations under simulated wartime conditions. The commander uses a MAPEX to train his staff and leaders in—

- Functioning as an effective team.
- Exchanging information.
- Preparing estimates.
- Giving appraisals.
- Making recommendations and decisions.
- Preparing plans.
- Issuing orders.
- Coordinating execution of orders.

(b) Methods. MAPEXs can be conducted internally or with higher headquarters' MAPEXs. They should include all leadership of attached and supporting elements. MAPEXs can be conducted several ways. One method involves only the staff and commander. The commander issues a higher headquarters order to his staff and then war-games, plans, and develops an OPORD. Another method involves staff and subordinate commanders. The commander and staff plan, as in the first method, and present the OPORD to the battalion orders group. The subordinate commanders and leaders then prepare orders and position forces on sand tables, map boards, or overlays. The orders group war-games through the operation. The commander presents different *what-if* situations to test the participants. In these MAPEXs, the commander acts as the primary trainer, but participation from higher headquarters and supporting CS and CSS elements increases the value of the exercise.

(c) Planning phase. The commander uses the following sequence to plan and conduct a MAPEX for his unit:

- Determine the tasks, operations, and objectives to be evaluated as part of short-range planning. (Normally, tasks on which staff performance is weak, as identified during FTXs, have priority.)
- Determine who will be trained. (The first MAPEX may involve commander and staff; follow-on exercises can include leaders down to platoon level. Staff planning should involve all CS and CSS leaders—ADA, FSB, engineers, FAC, NBC, MI, organic elements. The higher headquarters staff should provide the OPORD and representatives during the exercise).
- Develop an outline plan (scenario).

- Determine the location of the exercise and resources required—classroom, tents, map boards, sand tables, butcher paper.

(d) Preparation phase. The commander performs the following in preparing for a MAPEX:

- Conduct training on staff coordination, estimates, recommendations, or orders preparation.
- Set up the MAPEX site.
- Write orders. (This normally is done by the higher headquarters staff to promote coordination and teamwork between the headquarters and the battalion.)

(e) Execution phase. The commander explains to his staff and leaders the objectives, sequence of events, and procedures:

- Begin the exercise when the higher headquarters OPORD is given to the staff by the commander or a headquarters representative.
- Give initial guidance and start the MDMP.
- Develop the plan or order using FM 5-0(FM 101-5).
- Stop the sequence of events at any time to conduct an AAR or provide guidance to the staff.
- Issue the OPORD to the staff, company commanders, and other attached or unit commanders under OPCON after the staff completes the plan. (Commanders plan and position their forces on a map board or sand table.)
- Use OPFOR to drive a MAPEX, depict various enemy actions, and allow the commander and staff to practice their own reactions and execution procedures. (Simulations [discussed below] can also be used to make MAPEXs more execution-oriented and allow planning of better evaluations.)

(f) After-action review. AARs are conducted throughout the exercise, with a final AAR at the end of the MAPEX. Since there are no assessed results of the battle, the need for an in-depth discussion of what happened and why it happened and how to improve is even more critical.

(3) Command post exercise.

(a) General. The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise that may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters, and in which the forces are simulated. At a minimum, it requires the establishment of unit CPs with their necessary communications equipment, demanding a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as the establishment and use of communications equipment. CPX trains commanders and staff to—

- Execute the MDMP.
- Refine SOPs.
- Build teamwork and cohesion.
- Exchange information correctly using tactical SOPs.
- Prepare estimates, plans, and orders.
- Establish and use tactical communications.
- Displace headquarters and CPs.
- Integrate synchronized BOS.

Battalions often conduct either a STAFFEX or a TOCEX, or they may conduct both before conducting a CPX. In a STAFFEX, principal and special staffs practice organizing for war—such as establishing CPs and conducting staff calls, and conducting training of wartime missions. In a TOCEX, the command group and staff practice setting up their CPs. Battalions normally participate in a CPX as part of a larger

force; however, they may conduct internal CPXs. Simulation systems—as discussed below—assist in conducting realistic CPXs.

(b) Planning phase. The CPX requires most of the senior leadership and staff elements to conduct extensive battlefield planning, preparation, and C² while using their tactical communications equipment and TAC CP. In addition to the following considerations, see the sections on MAPEXs and TEWTs above for more planning considerations:

- Normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced.
- CPXs should be conducted under battlefield conditions to validate staff and unit procedures. (Tactical exercises integrate nuclear and chemical weapons employment; NBC warning and reporting; reconnaissance; MOPP, logistics, and decontamination operations; and perimeter defense.)
- EW should be portrayed to show its importance to all elements and to illustrate how it hinders commanders and staff who are not prepared.
- CPXs require controllers and evaluators. (The controllers, directed by the chief controller, manage the exercise and cause play to flow to a logical conclusion. The evaluators observe player activities to determine if tasks are performed to established standards at each echelon.)
- Battalion produces an LOI that provides the basis for subunit planning as well as for briefing controllers and evaluators.

(c) Preparation phase. Controllers and players require training in certain basic subjects before starting the exercise. Subjects should include—

- Purpose and scope of the exercise.
- Training objectives.
- Controller duties.
- Casualty and damage assessment.
- Controller records and reports.
- Intelligence play.
- War-game procedures.
- After-action reviews.
- ROE.

(d) Execution phase. This phase begins with the chief controller and staff giving the player commander and staff a commander's update briefing. The briefing covers any changes to the LOI or other items that must be addressed. Immediately following the commander's update briefing, the chief controller assumes the role of the players' higher commander and is briefed by controllers representing the higher staff. The chief controller converts the OPLAN to an OPORD and announces the staff is available for coordination with player counterparts. This marks the start of exercise.

(4) Field training exercises. The FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises C² of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated OPFOR. It provides a method for training a battalion in its entire mission and a means to perform the tasks practiced in an STX. An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's METL. The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the example supporting STXs. The commander can combine a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs.

(5) Progressive exercises. For battalion-level units, a method to optimize staff and unit training is to integrate TEWTs, MAPEXs, and CPXs to prepare the orders and plans for upcoming battalion FTXs. This technique exercises the entire spectrum of the staff effectively and also optimizes unit field training time. The AVCATT virtual simulation system provides an excellent medium to conduct

combined company-and battalion-level command and staff training. The bottom line is that each unit is different and only the commander can determine the best method of training his staff.

(6) Staff training using simulations. Constructive and virtual simulation systems are making staff and unit training easier as TADSS becomes accessible to units. The following simulations may contribute to training the battalion staff and subordinate companies:

(a) Brigade and battalion simulation. This microcomputer-based simulation system trains officers and NCO leaders at battalion and brigade levels in all facets of combat, CS, and CSS operations in a CPX or STAFFEX mode. BBS is a training tool that exercises the full range of battle command and staff execution orders. The virtual combat environment remains transparent to the training audiences, who conduct operations from their normal TOC/TAC configurations. Work cells within the simulation center replicate platoons and companies/troops fighting on the battlefield. They provide realistic battle events derived from the BBS through SOP-based reports to their higher headquarters. BBS aids in building effective teams by causing participants to coordinate tasks, refine and standardize processes, and exchange information. BBS can be exercised from within a local simulation center or deployed to remote locations. Exercises may run from 2 to 36 hours, depending on training objectives. AARs may be formal or informal and generally last 2 hours.

(b) Janus Army. This microcomputer-based, two-sided, interactive combat simulation model employs a dynamic graphical representation to simulate force-on-force engagements. Janus Army focuses on individual fighting system engagements and assessments, with aggregation capability up to company-size elements. C² of the individual systems can be exercised; however, simulation of CS and CSS is limited. Janus trains NCOs and officer leaders at the platoon and company level in an educational setting. Simulation supports training of tactical leadership skills and is excellent for evaluating OPORDs and battle synchronization. Leaders can experiment and receive immediate individual feedback. It is relatively easy to set up an exercise, but setup requires approximately eight hours. A typical exercise takes approximately 4 hours, followed by an AAR lasting about 1 and 1/2 hours.

(c) Aviation combined arms tactical trainer. The AVCATT is the centerpiece of Army aviation's collective training strategy and will train up to six crews simultaneously in a virtual simulation environment. It is a modular suite of reconfigurable helicopter platforms. These platforms will provide individual, crew, combined arms, joint task force, brigade, and battalion staff training for attack, reconnaissance, assault, and heavy helicopter units in both the active and reserve components worldwide. Included in the AVCATT are friendly and opposing semiautomated forces, environmental conditions, terrain databases, and realistic depiction of communication, navigation, weapons, aircraft survivability equipment, and sensor systems.

3-6. DEVELOPING TRAINING EXERCISES

Chapter 4 provides sample exercises for the unit to use or modify to meet specific training needs. Units may also use TSPs in developing their training exercises. TSPs are task-based and provide structured situational training scenarios for live, virtual, or constructive training. TSPs include all needed training products and subsequently simplify the commander's tasks of planning, executing, and assessing training. This paragraph provides general procedures for the staff to use for FTX preparation and for the unit supporting STXs. Exercise plans are normally prepared as part of the short-range plan. The following topics should help in preparing the unit exercise:

a. Selection of Missions and Tasks for Training. This was accomplished during the development of the long-range plan and refined during the development of the short-range plan.

b. Training Site Selection. Confirm selection of a training maneuver area.

c. Scenario Development. After missions and tasks are selected, prepare a detailed scenario for the exercise as follows:

(1) List the missions, tasks, and events in the preferred sequence of occurrence.

(2) Identify events necessary for the control of the exercise. These activities would normally include the issuance of orders, AARs, and any other administrative or logistical actions necessary to conduct the exercise.

(3) Prepare the exercise overlays that show the sequence of actions and the terrain to be used for each event.

(4) Determine the estimated time for each event using the overlay and scenario. The total time is determined to ensure the scenario can be completed in the time allocated for the exercise.

d. Selection of Observer-Controllers and Opposing Forces. OCs and OPFOR normally are desired for every FTX and STX. Ideally, higher headquarters or sister units provide OCs and OPFOR. It is difficult for a battalion-size unit to provide these from its own resources. When the battalion is required to provide OCs and OPFOR, unit leaders may have to serve as OCs for their units. The OPFOR may be selected from personnel or units not essential for attainment of the exercise objectives.

e. Preparation of the Control Plan. Control plans are developed to coordinate the actions of the training units, OPFOR, and OCs. The scenario is used, and a detailed control plan is prepared. The control plan includes—

- Detailed schedules of OPFOR actions.
- Detailed instructions for the OPFOR, to include ROE.
- Detailed schedule of activities for units.
- OPORDs and FRAGOs for friendly units. (Normally, friendly unit actions are controlled through the issuance of OPORDs and FRAGOs.)
- Administrative preparation instructions.
- AAR schedule and instructions.

f. Preparation of the Evaluation Plan. All training is evaluated by someone, either internally or externally. The evaluation plan identifies the tasks to be evaluated, by whom, and at what time. The evaluation plan includes—

- Specific instructions for the OCs.
- A sequential list of T&EOs to be evaluated by each OC.
- Detailed time schedules for evaluation of tasks and AARs.

3-7. MISSION OUTLINE

The mission outline is designed to provide a graphic portrayal of the relationship of the critical wartime missions to FTXs and STXs. It illustrates the relationship between the missions and their collective supporting tasks. An outline gives the trainer a diagram of the unit missions and the supporting collective tasks. Since unit training is mission oriented, mission outlines show how task training contributes to the ability of the unit to perform its missions. The outline helps the commander and staff prepare to train. Figure 3-6 shows an example outline for one mission—*Conduct Air Assault Operations*.

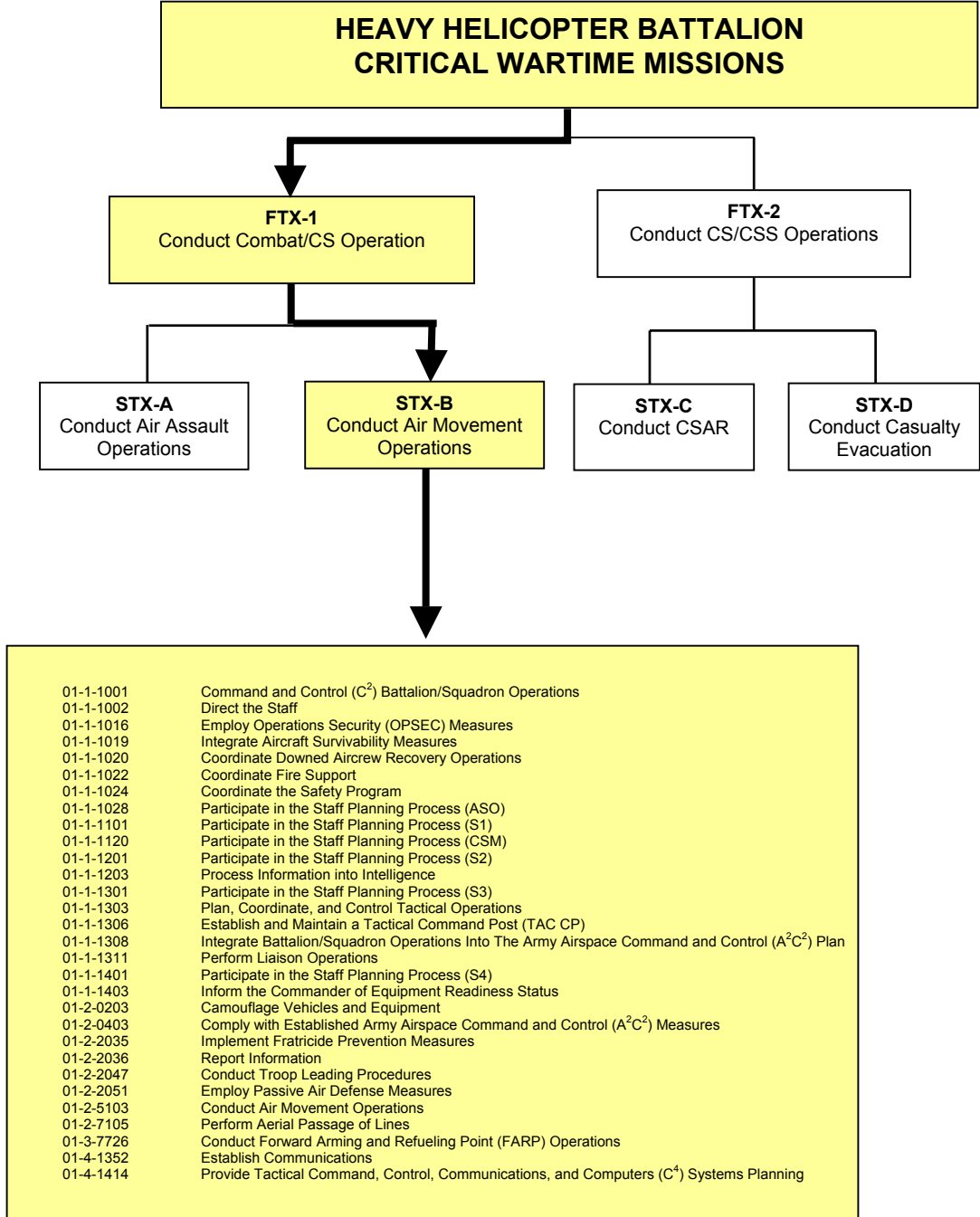


Figure 3-6. Example mission to FTX/STX outline.

CHAPTER 4

TRAINING EXERCISES

SECTION I. INTRODUCTION

4-1. GENERAL

Collective training exercises help trainers at all levels to develop, sustain, and evaluate unit proficiency at collective tasks that constitute critical wartime tasks and special mission requirements. The ultimate purpose of training exercises is to prepare units to execute combat, CS, or CSS missions. The commander has a range of training exercise types available to conduct collective training. They vary from simple to complex, from inexpensive to resource-intensive, and from simulations to hands-on. Table 4-1 shows examples of an FTX and STXs. They are developed later in this chapter.

Table 4-1. Training exercises.

Exercise Number	Title	Page
FTX	Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations	4-3
STX-1	Conduct Air Assault Operations	4-10
STX-2	Conduct Air Movement Operations	4-18

4-2. FIELD TRAINING EXERCISE

The FTX is a high-cost, high-overhead exercise conducted under simulated combat conditions in the field. It exercises C² of all echelons in battle functions against actual or simulated OPFOR. It provides a method for training a battalion in its entire mission, and a means to perform the tasks practiced in an STX. An FTX should be oriented toward the unit's METL. The FTX outlined in this chapter is developed only to the extent necessary to link it to the example supporting STXs. The commander combines a number of STXs to create an FTX that meets his unit's specific training needs.

4-3. SITUATIONAL TRAINING EXERCISE

The STX is a mission-related, limited exercise. It is designed to train one collective task or a group of related tasks or drills through practice. It is characterized by distinct start and stop points, representing a segment of battle. The STXs in this chapter are mission-oriented exercises. They cover a group of closely related tasks that collectively compose a tactical operation. The STXs can be used to train a separate unit or as part of the parent unit's training. These STXs support the referenced FTX. They should involve the unit's full complement of external combat, CS, and CSS assets.

4-4. OTHER TRAINING EXERCISES

Brief descriptions of other recognized exercises are listed below. Chapter 3 discusses exercises that are conducive to staff training.

a. Battle Simulation Exercise. The BSX is a military war-game that recreates combat situations on a map or terrain model. Pieces or markers represent units. Specific rules govern movement, fire, losses, and other aspects of actual combat. The BSX is best suited for leader training, especially in terms of fire and maneuver.

b. Combined Arms Live Fire Exercise. The CALFEX is a high-cost, resource-intensive exercise. In this exercise, player units maneuver and employ organic and supporting weapons systems with full-service ammunition. This exercise integrates all combat, CS, and CSS functions.

c. Computer Assisted Exercise. A CAX is a CPX in which a computer driver provides force simulation.

d. Command Field Exercise. The CFX is a field training exercise with reduced company and vehicle density, but with full C², CS, and CSS elements—such as a platoon leader in his aircraft representing the entire platoon. The CFX lies between the CPX and FTX in terms of resources. It may serve as a backup for an FTX if maneuver damage, weather, or other factors prohibit FTX execution. The CFX is less expensive and exercises intersystem linkages and actual distances.

e. Communications Exercise. The COMEX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise. Its primary purpose is to ensure the operational abilities of communications systems as well as the training status of operators, staffs, and leaders. At a minimum, the COMEX should include proper use of the SOI; the establishment of, entry into, and exit from the radio net, and communications discipline.

f. Command Post Exercise. The CPX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise. It may be conducted from garrison locations or between participating headquarters. The forces are simulated in this CPX. At a minimum, it requires the establishment of unit CPs with their necessary communications equipment. It demands a greater commitment of personnel, time, and resources. However, normal battlefield distances between CPs may be reduced. The CPX trains commanders and staff to prepare and transmit estimates, plans, and orders, as well as to establish and use communications equipment.

g. Combined Training Exercise. The CTX is a training exercise jointly conducted by military forces of more than one nation. It also is referred to as "multinational training."

h. Deployment Exercise. The DEPEX is an exercise that provides training for soldiers, units, and support agencies. The training includes the tasks and procedures used to deploy from home stations or installations to areas of potential employment.

i. Decision-Making Exercise. The DMX is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise that assesses how a unit's key leadership reviews and performs case study analysis of previous war-gaming decisions. A DMX usually incorporates a MAPEX.

j. Digital Training Exercise. The DTX is an exercise conducted on a simulated battlefield. It is used to train battalion/squadron and brigade staffs and subordinate elements. It can involve a constructive simulation-based MAPEX linked to collective virtual simulators—such as the AVCATT—and/or legacy simulators, both ground and air, from remote locations.

k. Emergency Deployment Readiness Exercise. An EDRE is a minimum-notice exercise to test unit deployment capabilities for contingency operations.

l. Fire Coordination Exercise. The FCX is a medium-cost, reduced-scale exercise that can be conducted at the platoon, company team, or battalion task force level. It exercises C² skills through the integration and synchronization of organic weapon systems, indirect fires, supporting fires, and maneuver. Targets, ranges, and weapon densities may be reduced for participating units, and subcaliber devices substituted for service ammunition.

m. Joint Training Exercise. The JTX is an exercise that involves forces of more than one service.

n. Logistics Coordination Exercise. The LCX is a medium-cost, medium-overhead exercise where leaders train to conduct unit sustainment operations—such as supply, transportation, medical,

personnel replacement, maintenance, and graves registration. The LCX clarifies the key elements of the unit's logistics apparatus, as well as their relationships. It incorporates a tactical war game that produces a wide variety of logistics requirements, while exercising the flow of logistics information.

o. Live Fire Exercise. The LFX is a resource-intensive exercise. In this exercise, player units maneuver and employ organic and supporting weapons systems, using full-service ammunition. Extensive range and resource requirements limit unit sizes to platoon and company/team level. This results in a focus on small units and their integration of weapon systems.

p. Logistics Exercise. The LOGEX is a training exercise that concentrates on tasks associated with the CSS BOS.

q. Lane Training Exercise. The LTX is a technique for training company/team level and smaller units on a series of selected soldier, leader, and collective tasks (STX) using specific terrain.

r. Map Exercise. The MAPEX is a low-cost, low-overhead training exercise. It requires a minimum number of support personnel and portrays military situations on maps and overlays. It may be supplemented with training aids, such as terrain models and sand tables. A MAPEX enables a commander to train the staff and leaders to plan, coordinate, and execute operations under simulated wartime conditions.

s. Mobilization Exercise. The MOBEX is a major-scale exercise conducted by FORSCOM. It is usually a part of an Army-wide involvement in a CJCS or HQDA exercise. It involves actions necessary to deploy active and reserve components on short notice up to the point of actually moving to the proposed deployment location. The MOBEX is used to test plans, procedures, and systems for mobilization, deployment, sustainment, redeployment, and demobilization. All or parts of this exercise can be executed, depending on the commander's assessment.

t. Partnership for Peace Exercise. The PFPX is a NATO exercise conducted as one of a series of training events. It enhances the coordination of military forces for peacekeeping, humanitarian assistance, and search and rescue operations. Based on nonlethal scenarios, the PFPX program seeks to expand and intensify military and political cooperation throughout Europe.

u. Staff Exercise. The STAFFEX is a training exercise in which the principal and special staffs organize for war (CPs and cells) and train MTP wartime missions.

v. Sealift Emergency Deployment Readiness Exercise. The SEDRE is a minimum-notice exercise to test surface deployment capabilities of the unit, installation, and transportation-operating agency for contingency operations.

w. Tactical Exercise Without Troops. The TEWT is a low-cost, low-overhead exercise. It is conducted in the field on actual terrain suitable for training units for specific missions. It is used to train subordinate leaders and battle staffs on terrain analysis and unit and weapons emplacement. The TEWT also provides training on planning the execution of a unit mission, which may include the employment of CS and CSS assets.

SECTION II. FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS

1. OBJECTIVE. This sample FTX provides training for the heavy helicopter battalion to conduct continuous tactical operations while deployed to a field site. It is designed to train the unit to move from one location to another and conduct combat and CS operations. During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, conducts sustainment operations, and continues its mission. Within the FTX, the unit should incorporate STXs to train unit deficiencies or to take advantage of training resources not usually available, such as gunnery ranges or urban operations facilities. The battalion may train as a

unit, as separate companies, or as a combination of both. All exercises may be conducted with battalion staff support. The success of the exercise depends on the unit's ability to secure and defend an AA, and to sustain operations in a tactical environment.

2. INTERFACE. STX-1, Conduct Air Assault Operations, and STX-2, Conduct Air Movement Operations, support this FTX. These STXs may be battalion- or company-level exercises depending on the level of involvement during the exercise. Figure 4-1 shows the general relationship between this FTX and the supporting STXs.

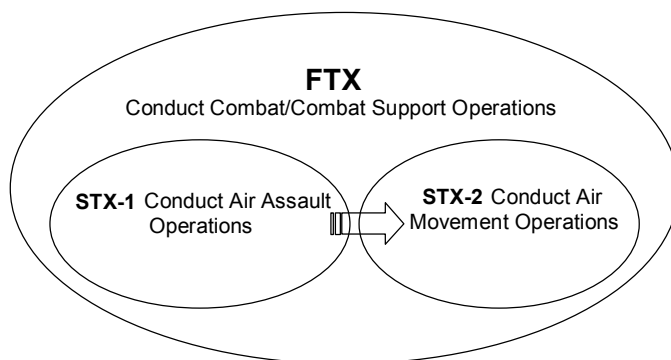


Figure 4-1. FTX: Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations.

3. TRAINING ENHANCERS. Chapter 2 shows the collective tasks that must be mastered to perform this critical wartime mission. The following training events will enhance the unit's ability to perform the missions:

- a. Staff training. See Chapter 3, paragraph 3-5, Training the Headquarters.
- b. Map and sand table exercises (key leaders—officers and NCOs).
- c. Classes on threat force capabilities, tactics, and doctrine and how to counter them—all soldiers to a varying degree.
- d. Adventure training to increase morale and confidence—such as escape and evasion exercises, land navigation, and orienteering.
- e. Reverse-cycle training.
- f. Review of T&EOs (all key leaders).
- g. Review of FTX training objectives (all key leaders).
- h. Review of STX training objectives (all key leaders).
- i. Review of field TACSOP, to include load plans (all key leaders).
- j. Exercises with artillery simulation, fire support, and CAS.
- k. Condition options. (After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this FTX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this FTX may be conducted under several condition options—with OPFOR, night tactical movement and AA establishment, and within an NBC environment.)

l. Complex situations. (The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations—such as ground attack, ambush, decontamination operations.)

m. T&EO task standards. (During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards, retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.)

NOTE: The critical training gates depicted in the CATS (Appendix A) should be conducted before executing the FTX.

4. CONDUCT OF THE FTX.

a. This exercise must be tailored to the specific requirements of the battalion with defined training goals. It should be based on mission priorities, TO&E structure, and tactical proficiency. This sample FTX may begin with an alert or recall exercise or the receipt of an OPORD. The FTX ends after all stated training objectives are satisfactorily demonstrated.

b. An AAR should be conducted after major events during the FTX, after completing each STX, and following the end of the FTX. If an STX is a battalion exercise, a company AAR should be conducted before the battalion's exercise. If necessary, portions of the exercise should be repeated until the unit's performance is satisfactory.

c. Figure 4-2 portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this FTX.

d. Table 4–2 shows a suggested time allocation for the FTX. Many training tasks listed may be a part of an STX. It has approximate times required to perform tasks. Many factors—such as the location of, and distance to, training areas—may cause actual times to vary. The table also provides a sample of the thought process trainers must use when planning an FTX. Leaders and trainers must identify all relevant training objectives. They also must collectively establish an FTX schedule that accomplishes all training goals. The schedule should include flexible events and timetables to allow for weather variables. It also may provide time for a second iteration of a particular task to ensure proper training.

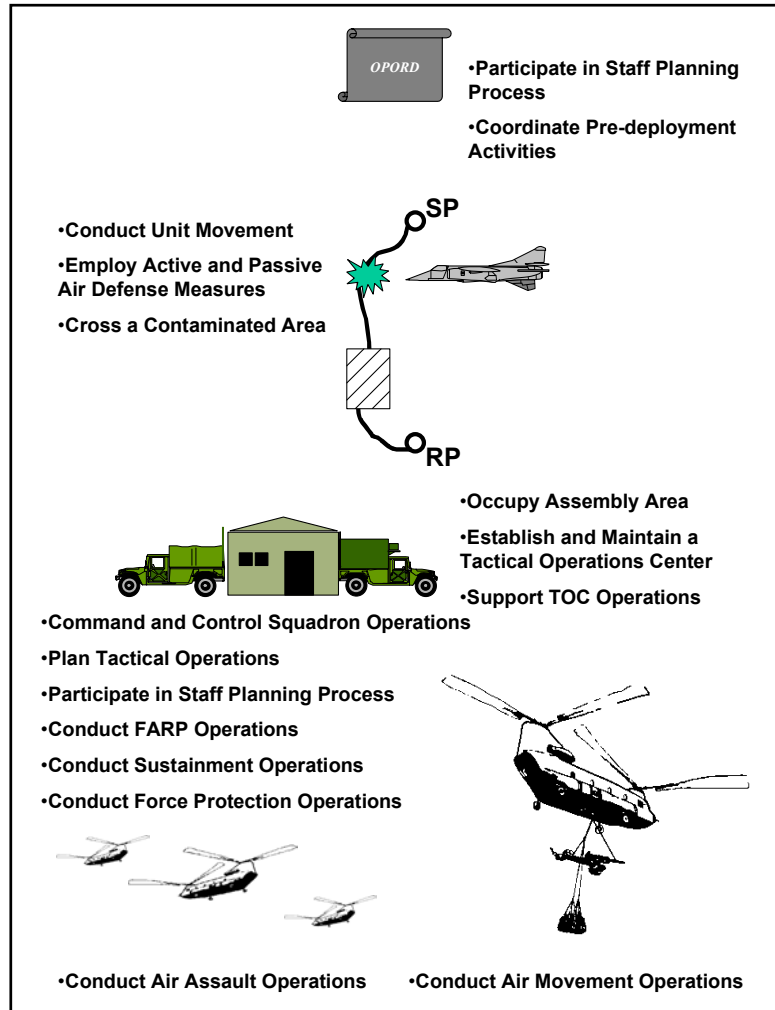


Figure 4-2. General scenario illustration of the FTX.

Table 4-2. Suggested time allocation for FTX.

FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS		
Number	Task or Event	Time Required
1	Administrative preparations.	Pre-FTX
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall and issues WARNORD to companies.	2 hours
4*	Battalion prepares for tactical movement.	4 hours
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	(2 to) 4 hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)
6*	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour
8*	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours
9*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours
10	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)
11*	Advance party secures AA and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
13	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	NA
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)
15	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	NA
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)
17*	Battalion establishes perimeter defense.	1 hour
18*	Aircraft arrive on site and conduct arming and refueling as necessary.	0.7 hour (Depending on distance)
19	Battalion headquarters establishes TOC.	1 hour
20*	Companies establish CPs.	1 hour
21*	Battalion establishes communications with higher HQ (may be simulated).	0.5 hour
22*	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour
23	Conduct AAR: Company and Battalion.	1.5 hours
24	Battalion conducts tactical sustainment.	72.0 hours
25*	Battalion executes STX-1: Conduct Air Assault Operations.	12 hours
26*	Battalion executes STX-2: Conduct Air Movement Operations.	12 hours
27	Battalion receives FRAGO to redeploy to home station.	1 hour
28*	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours
29	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 (to 4) hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)

Table 4-2. Suggested format for a time allocation for FTX (concluded).

FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS		
Number	Task or Event	Time Required
30	Redeployment OPORD issued by Battalion.	1 hour
31*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours
32	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours
33	Main body closes on and occupies AA Home Station.	3.0 hours. (May be extended for equipment servicing and storage)
34	Conduct Final AAR: Company and Battalion.	1.5 hours
		Total Time 96 hours

* Indicates that time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

NOTES:

- Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.
- Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.
- AARs are not time constrained.

5. **T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-3 lists the T&EOs in Chapter 5 to be used for this FTX.

Table 4-3. T&EOs supporting the FTX.

Task Number	Task Title
01-1-0034	Coordinate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Defense
01-1-0062	Coordinate Predeployment Activities
01-1-1001	Command and Control (C ²) Battalion/Squadron Operations
01-1-1002	Direct the Staff
01-1-1016	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
01-1-1019	Integrate Aircraft Survivability Measures
01-1-1020	Coordinate Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations
01-1-1022	Coordinate Fire Support
01-1-1023	Establish and Maintain an Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)
01-1-1024	Coordinate the Safety Program
01-1-1028	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (ASO)
01-1-1031	Maintain Isolated Personnel Report (ISOPREP) Database
01-1-1101	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1)
01-1-1102	Perform Strength Management
01-1-1120	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)
01-1-1201	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)
01-1-1202	Establish Security Measures
01-1-1203	Process Information into Intelligence
01-1-1301	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3)
01-1-1302	Establish and Maintain a Tactical Operations Center (TOC)
01-1-1303	Plan, Coordinate, and Control Tactical Operations
01-1-1306	Establish and Maintain a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)
01-1-1308	Integrate Battalion/Squadron Operations Into The Army Aerospace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Plan
01-1-1311	Perform Liaison Operations
01-1-1401	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4)

Table 4-3. T&EOs supporting the FTX (concluded).

TASK NUMBER	TASK TITLE
01-1-1402	Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition, and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment
01-1-1403	Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status
01-1-1405	Plan and Coordinate External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment
01-1-1406	Coordinate/Provide Other Logistical Services
01-2-0001	Plan/Organize the Move
01-2-0101	Occupy an Assembly Area
01-2-0102	Secure and Defend Unit Position
01-2-0201	Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
01-2-0280	Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area
01-2-0403	Comply with Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Measures
01-2-0702	Prepare Unit for Deployment
01-2-0715	Perform Field Sanitation
01-2-2035	Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures
01-2-2036	Report Information
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures
01-2-2048	Conduct Unit Movement
01-2-2051	Employ Passive Air Defense Measures
01-2-2052	Employ Active Air Defense Measures
01-2-2054	Coordinate Unit-Level Supply Operations
01-2-2064	Perform Company/Troop Strength Management
01-2-5103	Conduct Air Movement Operations
01-2-5105	Conduct Air Assault Operations
01-2-7011	Perform Production Control in the Maintenance and Shop Sections
01-2-7012	Maintain Quality Control of Programs and Work Completed by Maintenance and Shop Sections
01-2-7013	Perform Helicopter System Repairs and Inspections
01-2-7014	Perform Helicopter Subsystem Repairs and Inspections
01-2-7102	Support Tactical Operations Center (TOC) Operations
01-2-7105	Perform Aerial Passage of Lines
01-2-7730	Maintain Helicopters
01-3-7726	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
01-4-0320	Provide Unit Supply Support
01-4-1352	Establish Communications
01-4-1414	Provide Tactical Command, Control, Communications, and Computers (C ⁴) Systems Planning
01-4-7708	Provide Food Service Support
01-4-7720	Establish Medical Support
01-4-7721	Conduct Medical Support Activities
01-4-7723	Perform Unit-Level Maintenance
01-5-1110	Implement the Command Religious Support Program

SECTION III. STX-1: CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS

1. OBJECTIVE. This sample STX trains the organization to conduct air assault operations. During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, and continues the mission. This STX helps the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs; prevents wasted time and effort; and maintains operational efficiency. It can be used at battalion or at company level.

2. INTERFACE. This STX supports FTX-1 "Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations." It is not supported by drills.

3. PRELIMINARY LEADER TRAINING. Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following:

a. Classroom discussion. How to plan the exercise, how to implement the unit SOP, and how to coordinate supporting fires.

b. MAPEX. Using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.

c. Terrain boards or sand table exercises. These permit the use of simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.

d. TEWT. The emphasis is given to threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.

4. LEADER TRAINING TIPS. The following are training tips for leaders.

a. Know the requirements of an air assault as discussed in FMs 3-04.113(FM 1-113) and 3-97.4(FM 90-4).

b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting an air assault.

c. Become familiar with the other T&EOs listed in Table 4-5 that support this exercise.

d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area before the MAPEX or TEWT.

e. Develop a plan based on METT-TC. Consider such questions as—

(1) What information is available on the PZs and LZs from which the battalion/company will conduct the air assault?

(2) What is the likelihood of a ground, air, or NBC attack?

(3) What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?

(4) What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?

(5) How many aircraft are required?

(6) How many aircraft are available?

(7) How are they to be organized?

(8) What aircraft and crew configurations are required?

- (9) What is required of the supported units?
- (10) What intelligence is available for mission planning?
- (11) What supporting fires are required?
- (12) What are the CSAR and DART arrangements?
- (13) How much time is needed to prepare?
- (14) How long will it take to complete the operation?
- (15) How much planning time is available?

5. TRAINING ENHANCERS.

a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under the following condition options:

- (1) With troops (assault force).
- (2) With air assault security helicopters.
- (3) With OPFOR.
- (4) At night using night vision devices.
- (5) Within an NBC environment.

b. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations like the following:

- (1) Increased number of aircraft (use of serials).
- (2) Multiple lifts.
- (3) Multiple PZs.
- (4) Multiple LZs.
- (5) Extraction of the assault force following their mission.
- (6) Back-haul casualties.
- (7) Threat ADA.
- (8) Downed aircrew recovery and/or escape and evasion.
- (9) Simulated loss of a leader (premission or midmission).
- (10) Incidents of MIJI.
- (11) En route change/modification of mission—such as alternate PZ and/or LZ.
- (12) With external loads.

c. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards. Otherwise, they must retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

d. The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR tactics and ways to defeat them. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An OPFOR evaluator or observer must monitor OPFOR actions.

e. During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions. Alternate flight routes should be reconnoitered, planned, and briefed for each mission.

f. When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.

6. STX-1. GENERAL SITUATION.

a. The company is in an AA. It is ordered to conduct an air assault.

b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day or night.

c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency at executing air assault operations.

d. Figure 4-3 portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this STX.

e. Table 4-4 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.

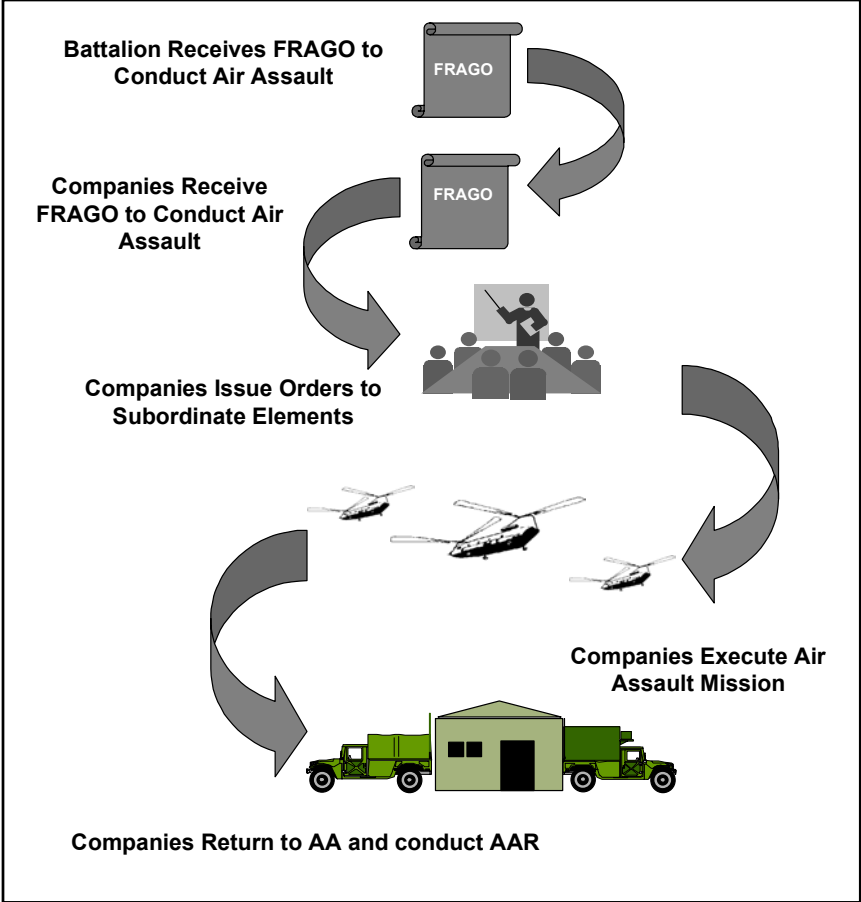


Figure 4-3. General scenario illustration of STX-1.

Table 4-4. Suggested time allocation for STX-1.

STX-1: CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS		
Event	Action	Time Required
1	Battalion receives FRAGO to conduct air assault mission.	1 hour
2	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
3	Companies coordinate and plan operations according to FRAGO.	3 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
4	Company commanders issue Aircrew Mission Briefing to aircrews, and conduct rehearsal.	2 hours
5	Companies execute air assault missions.	2.5 hours (Depends on mission complexity and distance traveled)
6	Conduct AARs at company and/or battalion.	1.5 hours
7*	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	NA
		Total Time: 12 hours

* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

NOTES:

- Due to the complexity of air assault operations, the mission should be included as an on-order mission in the FTX OPORD to allow additional planning time.
- Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.
- Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.
- AARs are not time constrained.

7. STX-1. SPECIAL SITUATION.

a. The commander may choose to use a FRAGO to initiate STXs in support of the FTX. Figure 4-4 is a suggested format for a FRAGO. The unit receives this as an example.

<p>FRAGMENTARY ORDER _____</p> <p>1. SITUATION.</p> <p>a. Enemy Forces. Elements of the <u>(enemy force)</u> are in hasty defensive positions between Phase Line <u>(designation)</u> and Phase Line <u>(designation)</u>.</p> <p>b. Friendly Forces. <u>(Battalion designation)</u> conducts an air assault to support <u>(Air Assault Task Force headquarters)</u> beginning NLT <u>(date/time group)</u>. <u>(Sister unit)</u> conducts an air assault of <u>(supported infantry unit)</u> Company into LZ <u>(designation)</u>, located at <u>(grid location)</u>, beginning <u>(date/time group)</u>. <u>(Unit designation)</u> provides air assault security beginning <u>(date/time group)</u>.</p> <p>2. MISSION. <u>(Training unit)</u> Company conducts an air assault of <u>(supported infantry unit)</u> Company into LZ <u>(Designation)</u>, located at <u>(grid location*)</u>, beginning <u>(date/time group)</u> in order to defeat the enemy on OBJ <u>(Designation)</u>.</p> <p>3. EXECUTION</p> <p>Intent: Air assault <u>(supported infantry unit)</u> Company into position to conduct an attack of Objective <u>(designation)</u>.</p> <p>a. Concept of operations. <u>(Training unit)</u> Company is the main effort. <u>(Training unit)</u> Company arrives at PZ <u>(designation)</u> NLT <u>(date/time group)</u>. <u>(Training unit)</u> Company proceeds along Route <u>(designation)</u> to arrive at LZ <u>(designation)</u> at <u>(date/time group)</u>.</p> <p>b. Tasks to subordinate units. (Optional)</p> <p>c. Coordinating instructions. See change __ to Annex C, Operations Overlay.</p> <p>4. SERVICE SUPPORT. FARP <u>(designation)</u>, located at <u>(grid location)</u>, will be operational beginning NLT <u>(date/time group)</u>, until end of mission.</p> <p>5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. No change to OPORD __.</p> <p>*NOTE: Location of the LZ should be within enemy area of operations.</p>

Figure 4-4. Suggested format for an STX-1 FRAGO.

b. Leaders use troop-leading procedures to conduct an air assault. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute assigned missions. The commander evaluates and critiques the unit's performance, considers any information on threat conditions, and briefs leaders on sustainment operations.

8. SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS.

a. Minimum Trainers or Observer-Controllers. The commander is the primary trainer. One OC is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary OC. At least one other OC is required if OPFOR is used.

b. Opposing Forces. Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the *run* phase of training. The OPFOR should be familiar with area reconnaissance

operations and employ thoroughly planned tactics to disrupt mission execution. Such tactics may affect AA occupation, aircraft availability and employment, and other aspects of the operation.

c. Vehicles and Communications. Every attempt should be made to use only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand. When OPFOR are employed, additional vehicles and communications equipment will be required for the OPFOR and the OC. These additional vehicles and equipment should come from outside the unit.

d. Maneuver Area. The training area should be large enough to allow for tactical displacement of all required organic aircraft and equipment.

e. Pyrotechnic and Ammunition Support Requirements.

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. DA Pamphlet 350–38 contains pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations. It is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. DA Pamphlet 350–38 is available via the Internet from USAPA at <http://www.usapa.com>. Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering TADSS for a particular exercise.

(2) FM 3-04.140(FM 1-140) contains ammunition requirements for door gunnery training. This publication is available from the RDL at <http://155.217.58.58/>.

(3) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The pyrotechnics listed in DA PAM 350-38 are the total annual allocation for a heavy helicopter battalion. The HHC and OPFOR requirements are included in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or fewer pyrotechnics for a particular exercise. However, units cannot exceed their annual allocation.

(4) Pyrotechnic requirements for CTCs are resourced separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(5) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and MILES devices, an additional company OC is required.

9. **T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-5 lists the T&EOs in Chapter 5 to be used for this STX.

NOTE: If a company is conducting this STX independently, battalion staff tasks would not necessarily be required.

Table 4-5. T&EOs supporting STX-1.

Task Number	Task Title
01-1-1001	Command and Control (C ²) Battalion/Squadron Operations
01-1-1002	Direct the Staff
01-1-1016	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
01-1-1019	Integrate Aircraft Survivability Measures
01-1-1020	Coordinate Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations
01-1-1022	Coordinate Fire Support
01-1-1024	Coordinate the Safety Program
01-1-1028	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (ASO)
01-1-1101	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1)
01-1-1120	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)
01-1-1201	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)
01-1-1203	Process Information into Intelligence
01-1-1301	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3)
01-1-1303	Plan, Coordinate, and Control Tactical Operations
01-1-1306	Establish and Maintain a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)
01-1-1308	Integrate Battalion/Squadron Operations Into The Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Plan
01-1-1311	Perform Liaison Operations
01-1-1401	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4)
01-1-1403	Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
01-2-0403	Comply with Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Measures
01-2-2035	Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures
01-2-2036	Report Information
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures
01-2-2051	Employ Passive Air Defense Measures
01-2-5105	Conduct Air Assault Operations
01-2-7105	Perform Aerial Passage of Lines
01-3-1353	Provide Pathfinder Support
01-3-7726	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
01-4-1352	Establish Communications
01-4-1414	Provide Tactical Command, Control, Communications, and Computers (C ⁴) Systems Planning

SECTION IV. STX-2: CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OPERATIONS

1. **OBJECTIVE.** This sample STX trains the organization to conduct air movement operations. During the exercise, the unit reacts to threat situations, reorganizes, and continues the reconnaissance. This STX helps the unit develop, test, and improve SOPs. It helps prevent wasted time and effort and maintains operational efficiency. It can be used at battalion or company level.
2. **INTERFACE.** This STX supports FTX-1, Conduct Combat/Combat Support Operations. It is not supported by drills.
3. **PRELIMINARY LEADER TRAINING.** Before the unit conducts this STX, unit leaders must be proficient in the required tasks. Leader training includes the following:
 - a. **Classroom discussion.** How to plan the exercise, how to implement the unit SOP, and how to coordinate supporting fires.
 - b. **MAPEX.** Using the exact area where the STX is to be conducted.
 - c. **Terrain boards or sand table exercises.** Permits the use of simulations or miniatures to gain a three-dimensional perspective while rehearsing the exercise.
 - d. **TEWT.** Emphasizes threat capabilities, active and passive defensive techniques, movement techniques, visual signals, reorganization following enemy contact, risk management, and safety.
4. **LEADER TRAINING TIPS.** These training tips include the following:
 - a. Know the requirements of air movement as discussed in FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113).
 - b. Review the T&EO requirements for conducting air movement.
 - c. Become familiar with the T&EOs listed in Table 4-6 that support this exercise.
 - d. If possible, personally conduct a reconnaissance of the training area before the MAPEX or TEWT.
 - e. Develop a plan based on METT–TC. Consider questions like the following:
 - (1) What information is available on the PZs and LZs from which the battalion/company will conduct the air assault?
 - (2) What is the likelihood of a ground, air, or NBC attack?
 - (3) What effect will adverse weather have on the mission?
 - (4) What is the condition of unit personnel and equipment?
 - (5) How many aircraft are required?
 - (6) How many aircraft are available?
 - (7) How are they to be organized?
 - (8) What aircraft and crew configurations are required?

- (9) What is required of the supported units?
- (10) What intelligence is available for mission planning?
- (11) What supporting fires are required?
- (12) What are the CSAR and DART arrangements?
- (13) How much time is needed to prepare?
- (14) How long will it take to complete the operation?
- (15) How much planning time is available?

5. TRAINING ENHANCERS.

a. After the unit has demonstrated proficiency in the tasks for this STX and the leaders are trained in the leader tasks, this STX may be conducted under the following condition options:

- (1) With internal loads.
- (2) With external loads.
- (3) With OPFOR.
- (4) At night using night vision devices.
- (5) Within an NBC environment.

b. The exercise should be tailored to the appropriate level of unit proficiency. As the unit becomes increasingly proficient, trainers may add more complex situations like the following:

- (1) Increased number of aircraft.
- (2) Multiple lifts.
- (3) Multiple PZs.
- (4) Multiple LZs.
- (5) Backhaul of equipment and personnel.
- (6) Threat ADA.
- (7) Downed aircrew recovery and/or escape and evasion.
- (8) Simulated loss of a leader (premission or midmission).
- (9) Incidents of MIJI.
- (10) En route change/modification of mission—such as alternate PZ and/or LZ.

c. During training, leaders must enforce the task standards in the T&EOs. As training progresses and more realistic conditions are added, the unit must be able to maintain those standards or retrain on the particular task steps and procedures or entire tasks that were performed below standard.

d. The OPFOR is a vital element in the training process. In the early stages of training, the leadership should discuss OPFOR tactics and ways to defeat them. As training progresses, walk-through training can be conducted to show the unit how to defeat the threat. When the unit can perform all tasks at an acceptable level, the OPFOR should be employed to enhance and reinforce training. An OPFOR evaluator or observer must monitor OPFOR actions.

e. During the exercise, leaders should take advantage of any information regarding suspected OPFOR activity or adverse conditions. Alternate flight routes should be reconnoitered, planned, and briefed for each mission.

f. When the unit has demonstrated proficiency in this STX as a stand-alone event, the unit sustains proficiency by executing the STX as part of the FTX. Personnel turnover will require leaders to assess the need for additional training to maintain proficiency.

6. STX-2. GENERAL SITUATION.

- a. The company is in an AA. It is ordered to conduct an air movement.
- b. The unit will conduct the exercise under various environmental conditions, day or night.
- c. The STX is over when the unit has demonstrated collective proficiency at executing air movement operations.
- d. Figure 4-5 graphically portrays the general scenario of tasks performed in this STX.
- e. Table 4-6 shows the estimated time needed for each part of this exercise as a training event during this STX.

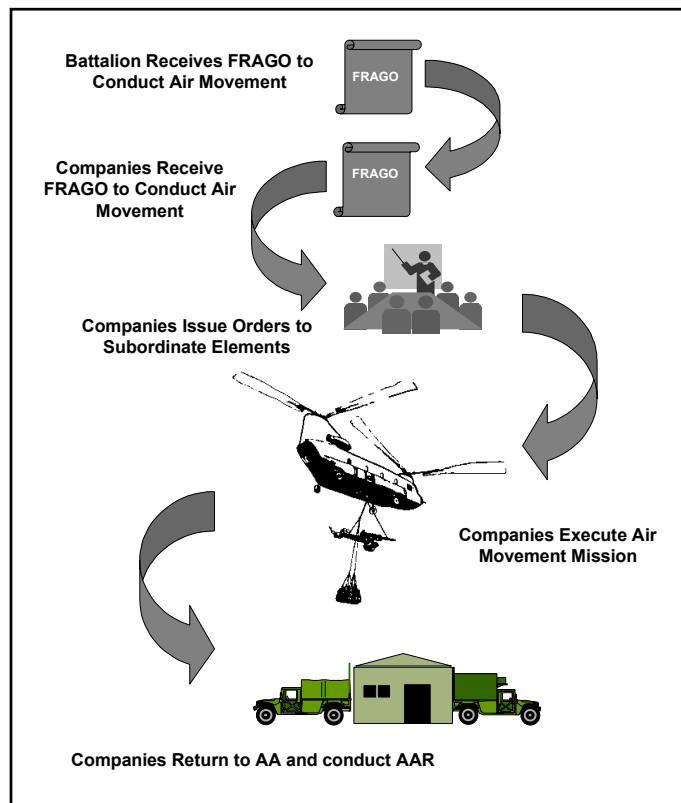


Figure 4-5. General scenario illustration of STX-2.

Table 4-6. Suggested time allocation for STX-2.

STX-2: CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OPERATIONS		
Event	Action	Time Required
1	Battalion receives FRAGO to conduct an air movement mission.	1 hour
2	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	2 (to 4) hours (Depends on mission complexity)
3	Companies coordinate and plan operations according to FRAGO.	2.5 hours (Depends on mission complexity)
4	Company commanders issue aircrew mission briefing to aircrews.	1 hour
5	Companies execute air movement missions.	(2 to) 4 hours (Depends on mission complexity and distance traveled)
6	Conduct AARs at company and/or battalion.	1.5 hours
7*	Companies conduct sustainment operations.	NA
		Total Time: 12 hours

* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

NOTES:

- Due to the complexity of air movement operations, the mission should be included as an on-order mission in the FTX OPORD to allow additional planning time.
- Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.
- Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.
- AARs are not time-constrained.

7. STX-2. SPECIAL SITUATION.

a. The commander may choose to use a FRAGO to initiate subsequent STXs in support of the FTX. Figure 4-6 is a suggested format for a FRAGO. The unit receives this as an example.

FRAGMENTARY ORDER _____

1. SITUATION.

a. **Enemy Forces.** Elements of the (enemy force) are in hasty defensive positions between PHASE LINE (designation) and Phase Line (designation).

b. **Friendly Forces.** (Battalion Designation) conducts an air movement to support (supported unit) beginning NLT (date/time group). (Sister unit) conducts an air movement to support (supported unit) beginning (date/time group).

2. MISSION. (Training unit) Company conducts an air movement of personnel and equipment into LZ (designation), located at (grid location), beginning (date/time group) to support (supported unit).

3. EXECUTION

Intent: Move critical personnel and equipment to LZ (designation) to sustain the combat operations of (supported unit).

a. **Concept of operations.** (Training unit) Company is the main effort. (Training unit) Company arrives at PZ (designation) NLT (date/time group). (Training unit) Company proceeds along Route (designation) to arrive at LZ (designation) at (date/time group).

b. **Tasks to subordinate units.** (Optional)

c. **Coordinating instructions.** See change ___ to Annex C, Operations Overlay.

4. SERVICE SUPPORT. FARP (designation), located at (grid location), will be operational beginning NLT (date/time group), until end of mission.

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL. No change to OPORD ___.

Figure 4-6. Suggested format for an STX-2 FRAGO.

b. Leaders use troop-leading procedures to conduct a zone reconnaissance. They must receive, plan, coordinate, and execute assigned missions. The commander evaluates and critiques the unit's performance, considers any information on threat conditions, and briefs leaders on sustainment operations.

8. SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS.

a. **Minimum Trainers or Observer-Controllers.** The commander is the primary trainer. One OC is the minimum required to conduct this exercise. For internal evaluations, the commander is also the primary OC. At least one other OC is required if OPFOR is used.

b. **Opposing Forces.** Use OPFOR in this exercise after the company has demonstrated basic proficiency and is at the *run* phase of training. The OPFOR should be familiar with zone reconnaissance

operations, and employ thoroughly planned tactics to disrupt mission execution. Such tactics may affect AA occupation, aircraft availability and employment, and other aspects of the operation.

c. Vehicles or Communications. Every attempt should be made to use only vehicles and communications equipment that are organic and on hand. When OPFOR is employed, additional vehicles and communications equipment will be required for the OPFOR and the OC. These additional vehicles and equipment should come from outside the unit.

d. Maneuver Area. The training area should be large enough to allow for tactical displacement of all required organic aircraft and equipment.

e. Pyrotechnic and Ammunition Support Requirements.

(1) Pyrotechnics and ammunition are not required to conduct this STX. DA Pamphlet 350–38 contains pyrotechnic training aids and ammunition authorizations. It is the proponent publication for their authorization and is subject to change. DA Pamphlet 350–38 is available via the Internet from USAPA, at <http://www.usapa.com>. Training managers should verify the currency of their information when preparing yearly forecasts and when ordering these TADSS for a particular exercise.

(2) FM 3-04.140(FM 1-140) contains ammunition requirements for door gunnery training. This publication is available from the RDL at <http://155.217.58.58/>.

(3) Unit trainers must divide these resources among their subordinate units as the training situation dictates. The pyrotechnics listed in DA PAM 350-38 are the total annual allocation for a heavy helicopter battalion. The HHC and OPFOR requirements are included in the total. Commanders may desire to use more or fewer pyrotechnics for a particular exercise. However, units cannot exceed their annual allocation.

(4) Pyrotechnic requirements for CTCs are resourced separately and are not part of the unit's annual allocation.

(5) When this STX is conducted using ammunition and MILES devices, an additional company OC is required.

9. **T&EO SEQUENCE.** Table 4-7 lists the T&EOs in Chapter 5 to be used for this STX.

NOTE: If a company is conducting this STX independently, battalion staff tasks would not necessarily be required.

Table 4-7. T&EOs supporting STX-2.

Task Number	Task Title
01-1-1001	Command and Control (C ²) Battalion/Squadron Operations
01-1-1002	Direct the Staff
01-1-1016	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
01-1-1019	Integrate Aircraft Survivability Measures
01-1-1020	Coordinate Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations
01-1-1022	Coordinate Fire Support
01-1-1024	Coordinate the Safety Program
01-1-1028	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (ASO)
01-1-1101	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1)
01-1-1120	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)
01-1-1201	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)
01-1-1203	Process Information into Intelligence
01-1-1301	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3)
01-1-1303	Plan, Coordinate, and Control Tactical Operations
01-1-1306	Establish and Maintain a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)
01-1-1308	Integrate Battalion/Squadron Operations Into The Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Plan
01-1-1311	Perform Liaison Operations
01-1-1401	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4)
01-1-1403	Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment
01-2-0403	Comply with Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Measures
01-2-2035	Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures
01-2-2036	Report Information
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures
01-2-2051	Employ Passive Air Defense Measures
01-2-5103	Conduct Air Movement Operations
01-2-7105	Perform Aerial Passage of Lines
01-3-1353	Provide Pathfinder Support
01-3-7726	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
01-4-1352	Establish Communications
01-4-1414	Provide Tactical Command, Control, Communications, and Computers (C ⁴) Systems Planning

CHAPTER 5

TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

5-1. INTRODUCTION

This chapter contains the training and evaluation outlines for the unit. T&EOs are the foundation of the MTP and the collective training of the units. T&EOs are training objectives—task, conditions, and standards—for the collective tasks that support critical wartime operations. The unit must master designated collective tasks to perform its critical wartime operations. T&EOs may be trained separately, in an STX, in an FTX, or in live-fire exercises. For collective live-fire standards, the trainer needs to refer to the applicable gunnery manual for the appropriate course of fire. Those standards and courses of fire need to be integrated into the training exercise.

5-2. STRUCTURE

The T&EOs in this chapter are listed in Tables 5-1 and 5-2. Figure 2-2 lists the T&EOs required to train the critical wartime missions according to their specific BOS.

5-3. FORMAT

The T&EOs are prepared for every collective task that supports critical wartime operation accomplishment. Each T&EO contains the following items:

a. Element. This identifies the unit or unit elements that performs the task. Collective tasks that are common to multiple organizations—such as Utility Helicopter, Heavy Helicopter, Attack, Air Cavalry—will indicate elements from all organizations that perform the task.

b. Task. This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit and provides the task number.

c. References. These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first and underlined. If there is only one reference do not underline the reference.

d. Iteration. Used to identify how many times the task is performed and evaluated during training. The "M" identifies when the task is performed in MOPP4.

e. Commander/Leader Assessment. This is used by the unit leadership to assess the proficiency of the unit in performing the task to standard. Assessments are subjective in nature and use all available evaluation data and submit leader input to develop an assessment of the organization's overall capability to accomplish the task. Use the following ratings:

(1) T - Trained. The unit is trained and has demonstrated its proficiency in accomplishing the task to wartime standards.

(2) P - Needs practice. The unit needs to practice the task. Performance has demonstrated that the unit does not achieve standard without some difficulty or has failed to perform some task steps to standard.

(3) U - Untrained. The unit can not demonstrate an ability to achieve wartime proficiency.

f. Condition. This is a statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.

g. Task Standard.

(1) The task standard states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training. Every soldier should understand it.

(2) The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements, where applicable, and his judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This will establish a common base line for unit performance.

h. Task Steps and Performance Measures. This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

i. GO/NO-GO Column. This column is provided for annotating the platoon's performance of the task steps. Evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "Go" for the task step to be successfully performed.

j. Task Performance/Evaluation Summary Block. This block provides the trainer a means of recording the total number of task steps and performance measures evaluated and those evaluated as "Go". It also provides the evaluator a means to rate the units demonstrated performance as a "Go" or "No-Go". It also provides the leader with a historical record for five training iterations.

k. Supporting Individual Tasks. This is a listing of all supporting individual tasks required to correctly perform the task. Listed are the reference, tasks number, and task title.

l. OPFOR Standards. These standards specify overall OPFOR performance for each collective task. These standards ensure that OPFOR soldiers accomplish meaningful training and force the training unit to perform its task to standard or *lose* to the OPFOR. The OPFOR standards specify what must be accomplished—not how it must be accomplished. The OPFOR must always attain its task standards, using tactics consistent with the type of enemy they are portraying.

5-4. USE

The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a group of tasks, such as an STX or FTX. The T&EOs are listed below by element in Table 5-1 and by BOS in Table 5-2.

Table 5-1. List of T&EOs by Element.

<u>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</u>	<u>T&EO TASK NUMBER</u>	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
BATTALION		
Process Noncombatants	(01-1-1014.01-0NRC)	5-96
Conduct Aviation Urban Operations	(01-1-1343.01-0NRC)	5-18
Provide Environmental Assistance	(01-1-1345.01-0NRC)	5-222
Provide Humanitarian Support	(01-1-1346.01-0NRC)	5-226
Conduct Area Security Operations	(01-1-1347.01-0NRC)	5-22
Establish Base Operations	(01-1-1348.01-0NRC)	5-230
Control A Civil Disturbance	(01-1-1349.01-0NRC)	5-25
Conduct A Show of Force Demonstration	(01-1-1350.01-0NRC)	5-28
Develop A Media Plan	(01-1-1351.01-0NRC)	5-233
Conduct Mediation and Negotiation	(01-1-1354.01-0NRC)	5-235
Enforce Peace Agreements	(01-1-1358.01-0NRC)	5-31
Employ A Quick Reaction Force	(01-1-1359.01-0NRC)	5-34
BATTALION COMMANDER (COMMAND SECTION)		
Command and Control (C ²) Battalion/Squadron Operations	(01-1-1001.01-0NRC)	5-181
BATTALION EXECUTIVE OFFICER (COMMAND SECTION)		
Direct the Staff	(01-1-1002.01-0NRC)	5-183
COMMAND SERGEANT MAJOR (COMMAND SECTION)		
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)	(01-1-1120.01-0NRC)	5-196
AVIATION SAFETY OFFICER (BATTALION S3 SECTION)		
Coordinate the Safety Program	(01-1-1024.01-0NRC)	5-190
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (ASO)	(01-1-1028.01-0NRC)	5-192
BATTALION S1 SECTION		
Coordinate Predeployment Activities	(01-1-0062.01-0NRC)	5-93
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1)	(01-1-1101.01-0NRC)	5-194
Perform Strength Management	(01-1-1102.01-0NRC)	5-103
Conduct Replacement Operations	(01-1-1103.01-0NRC)	5-105
Conduct Casualty Reporting	(01-1-1104.01-0NRC)	5-107
Provide Other Personnel and Administrative Services	(01-1-1105.01-0NRC)	5-109
BATTALION S2 SECTION		
Maintain Isolated Personnel Report (ISOPREP) Database	(01-1-1031.01-0NRC)	5-101
Process Captured Documents and Materiel	(01-1-1060.01-0NRC)	5-10
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)	(01-1-1201.01-0NRC)	5-198
Establish Security Measures	(01-1-1202.01-0NRC)	5-60
Process Information into Intelligence	(01-1-1203.01-0NRC)	5-12
Process Enemy Prisoners of War	(01-1-1206.01-0NRC)	5-14
BATTALION S3 SECTION		
Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures	(01-1-1016.01-0NRC)	5-56
Plan and Conduct Stability and Support Operations (SASO)	(01-1-1017.01-0NRC)	5-185
Integrate Aircraft Survivability Measures	(01-1-1019.01-0NRC)	5-58
Coordinate Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations	(01-1-1020.01-0NRC)	5-188
Coordinate Fire Support	(01-1-1022.01-0NRC)	5-51
Coordinate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Defense	(01-1-0034.01-0NRC)	5-53
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3)	(01-1-1301.01-0NRC)	5-201

Table 5-1. List of T&EOs by Element (continued).

<u>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</u>	<u>T&EO TASK NUMBER</u>	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
Establish and Maintain a Tactical Operations Center (TOC)	(01-1-1302.01-0NRC)	5-203
Plan, Coordinate, and Control Tactical Operations	(01-1-1303.01-0NRC)	5-206
Establish and Maintain a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)	(01-1-1306.01-0NRC)	5-208
Integrate Battalion/Squadron Operations into the Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Plan	(01-1-1308.01-0NRC)	5-210
Perform Liaison Operations	(01-1-1311.01-0NRC)	5-212
Conduct Civil-Military Operations (S5 function, if assigned)	(01-1-1342.01-0NRC)	5-214
Limit Local Population Interference with U.S. Military Operations (S5 function, if assigned)	(01-1-1344.01-0NRC)	5-219
COMMUNICATIONS SECTION		
Establish Communications	(01-4-1352.01-0NRC)	5-243
Provide Tactical Command, Control, Communications, and Computer (C ⁴) Systems Planning	(01-4-1414.01-0NRC)	5-246
BATTALION S4 SECTION		
Establish and Maintain an Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)	(01-1-1023.01-0NRC)	5-99
Establish and Coordinate Security of Temporary Enemy Prisoners of War (EPW) Collection Point	01-1-1107.01-0NRC)	5-112
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4)	(01-1-1401.01-0NRC)	5-237
Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition, and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment	(01-1-1402.01-0NRC)	5-114
Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status	(01-1-1403.01-0NRC)	5-116
Plan and Coordinate External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment	(01-1-1405.01-0NRC)	5-118
Coordinate/Provide Other Logistical Services	(01-1-1406.01-0NRC)	5-120
BATTALION S5 SECTION (If Assigned)		
Conduct Civil-Military Operations	(01-1-1342.01-0NRC)	5-214
Limit Local Population Interference with U.S. Military Operations	(01-1-1344.01-0NRC)	5-219
CHAPLAIN/MINISTRY TEAM		
Implement the Command Religious Support Program	(01-5-1110.01-0NRC)	5-179
UTILITY HELICOPTER COMPANY		
Conduct Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations	(01-2-0108.01-0NRC)	5-122
Use Countermeasures Against Enemy Air Defense Artillery (ADA)	(01-2-0301.01-0NRC)	5-73
Comply with Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Measures	(01-2-0403.01-0NRC)	5-76
Conduct CH-47 Forward Area Refueling Equipment (CFARE) Operations	(01-2-1335.01-0NRC)	5-128
Conduct Aerial Movement of Hazardous Cargo	(01-2-1336.01-0NRC)	5-130
Conduct Air Movement Operations	(01-2-5103.01-0NRC)	5-138
Conduct Air Assault Operations	(01-2-5105.01-0NRC)	5-46
Conduct Air Movement of Nuclear Weapons	(01-2-5106.01-0NRC)	5-141
Perform Aerial Passage of Lines	(01-2-7105.01-0NRC)	5-49
Conduct Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) Operations	(01-2-1360.01-0NRC)	5-132
HEADQUARTERS AND HEADQUARTERS COMPANY		
Support Tactical Operations Center (TOC) Operations	(01-2-7102.01-0NRC)	5-153

Table 5-1. List of T&EOs by Element (continued).

<u>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</u>	<u>T&EO TASK NUMBER</u>	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
CLASS III PLATOON		
Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations	(01-3-7726.01-0NRC)	5-162
SUPPLY SECTION		
Provide Unit Supply Support	(01-4-0320.01-0NRC)	5-164
FOOD SERVICE SECTION		
Provide Food Service Support	(01-4-7708.01-0NRC)	5-168
AUTOMOTIVE MAINTENANCE SECTION		
Perform Vehicle Recovery Operations	(01-4-1029.01-0NRC)	5-166
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	(01-4-7723.01-0NRC)	5-176
MEDICAL TREATMENT SQUAD		
Establish Medical Support	(01-4-7720.01-0NRC)	5-171
Conduct Medical Support Activities	(01-4-7721.01-0NRC)	5-173
AVIATION UNIT MAINTENANCE COMPANY		
Perform Production Control in the Maintenance and Shop Sections	(01-2-7011.01-0NRC)	5-143
Maintain Quality Control of Programs and Work Completed by Maintenance and Shop Sections	(01-2-7012.01-0NRC)	5-145
Perform Helicopter System Repairs and Inspections	(01-2-7013.01-0NRC)	5-147
Perform Helicopter Subsystem Repairs and Inspections	(01-2-7014.01-0NRC)	5-149
Perform Aircraft Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)/Recovery Operations	(01-2-7017.01-0NRC)	5-151
TASKS PERFORMED BY ALL COMPANIES		
Plan/Organize the Move	(01-2-0001.01-0NRC)	5-36
Respond to a Chemical/Biological Attack	(01-2-0013.01-0NRC)	5-62
Respond to a Nuclear Attack	(01-2-0017.01-0NRC)	5-65
Occupy an Assembly Area	(01-2-0101.01-0NRC)	5-40
Secure and Defend Unit Position	(01-2-0102.01-0NRC)	5-42
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	(01-2-0201.01-0NRC)	5-67
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	(01-2-0203.01-0NRC)	5-69
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	(01-2-0280.01-0NRC)	5-71
Cross a Chemically/Biologically Contaminated Area	(01-2-0609.01-0NRC)	5-78
Perform Operational Decontamination	(01-2-0610.01-0NRC)	5-80
Conduct Thorough Decontamination	(01-2-0611.01-0NRC)	5-82
Prepare Unit for Deployment	(01-2-0702.01-0NRC)	5-124
Perform Field Sanitation	(01-2-0715.01-0NRC)	5-126
Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures	(01-2-2035.01-0NRC)	5-84
Report Information	(01-2-2036.01-0NRC)	5-16
Conduct Troop Leading Procedures	(01-2-2047.01-0NRC)	5-239
Conduct Unit Movement	(01-2-2048.01-0NRC)	5-44
Employ Passive Air Defense Measures	(01-2-2051.01-0NRC)	5-87

Table 5-1. List of T&EOs by Element (concluded).

<u>ELEMENT AND TASK TITLE</u>	<u>T&EO TASK NUMBER</u>	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
Employ Active Air Defense Measures	(01-2-2052.01-0NRC)	5-89
Coordinate Unit-Level Supply Operations	(01-2-2054.01-0NRC)	5-134
Perform Company/Troop Strength Management	(01-2-2064.01-0NRC)	5-136
Conduct Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)		
Gear Exchange	(01-2-2160.01-0NRC)	5-91
Conduct Hasty Assembly Area Displacement	(01-2-7039.01-0NRC)	5-241
Evacuate Casualties	(01-2-7707.01-0NRC)	5-155
Submit Casualty Feeder Reports and Witness Statements	(01-2-7714.01-0NRC)	5-157
Maintain Helicopters	(01-2-7730.01-0NRC)	5-159

Table 5-2. List of T&EOs by BOS.

<u>BOS AND TASK TITLE</u>	<u>T&EO TASK NUMBER</u>	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
DEVELOP INTELLIGENCE		
Process Captured Documents and Materiel	(01-1-1060.01-0NRC)	5-10
Process Information Into Intelligence	(01-1-1203.01-0NRC)	5-12
Process Enemy Prisoners of War	(01-1-1206.01-0NRC)	5-14
Report Information	(01-2-2036.01-0NRC)	5-16
DEPLOY/CONDUCT MANEUVER		
Conduct Aviation Urban Operations	(01-1-1343.01-0NRC)	5-18
Conduct Area Security Operations	(01-1-1347.01-0NRC)	5-22
Control a Civil Disturbance	(01-1-1349.01-0NRC)	5-25
Conduct a Show of Force Demonstration	(01-1-1350.01-0NRC)	5-28
Enforce Peace Agreements	(01-1-1358.01-0NRC)	5-31
Employ a Quick Reaction Force	(01-1-1359.01-0NRC)	5-34
Plan/Organize the Move	(01-2-0001.01-0NRC)	5-36
Occupy and Assembly Area	(01-2-0101.01-0NRC)	5-40
Secure and Defend Unit Position	(01-2-0102.01-0NRC)	5-42
Conduct Unit Movement	(01-2-2048.01-0NRC)	5-44
Conduct Air Assault Operations	(01-2-5105.01-0NRC)	5-46
Perform Aerial Passage of Lines	(01-2-7105.01-0NRC)	5-49
EMPLOY FIREPOWER		
Coordinate Fire Support	(01-1-1022.01-0NRC)	5-51
PROTECT THE FORCE		
Coordinate Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Defense	(01-1-0034.01-0NRC)	5-53
Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures	(01-1-1016.01-0NRC)	5-56
Integrate Aircraft Survivability Measures	(01-1-1019.01-0NRC)	5-58
Establish Security Measures	(01-1-1202.01-0NRC)	5-60
Respond to a Chemical/Biological Attack	(01-2-0013.01-0NRC)	5-62
Respond to a Nuclear Attack	(01-2-0017.01-0NRC)	5-65
Prepare for Operations Under Nuclear Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Conditions	(01-2-0201.01-0NRC)	5-67
Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment	(01-2-0203.01-0NRC)	5-69
Cross a Radiologically Contaminated Area	(01-2-0280.01-0NRC)	5-71
Use Countermeasures Against Enemy Air Defense Artillery (ADA)	(01-2-0301.01-0NRC)	5-73
Comply With Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Measures	(01-2-0403.01-0NRC)	5-76
Cross a Chemically/Biologically Contaminated Area	(01-2-0609.01-0NRC)	5-78
Perform Operational Decontamination	(01-2-0610.01-0NRC)	5-80
Conduct Thorough Decontamination	(01-2-0611.01-0NRC)	5-82
Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures	(01-2-2035.01-0NRC)	5-84
Employ Passive Air Defense Measures	(01-2-2051.01-0NRC)	5-87
Employ Active Air Defense Measures	(01-2-2052.01-0NRC)	5-89
Conduct Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear Exchange	(01-2-2160.01-0NRC)	5-91

Table 5-2. List of T&EOs by BOS (continued).

<u>BOS AND TASK TITLE</u>	<u>T&EO TASK NUMBER</u>	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
PERFORM CSS AND SUSTAINMENT		
Coordinate Predeployment Activities	(01-1-0062.01-0NRC)	5-93
Process Noncombatants	(01-1-1014.01-0NRC)	5-96
Establish and Maintain an Administrative and Logistics Operations Center (ALOC)	(01-1-1023.01-0NRC)	5-99
Maintain Isolated Personnel Report (ISOPREP) Database	(01-1-1031.01-0NRC)	5-101
Perform Strength Management	(01-1-1102.01-0NRC)	5-103
Conduct Replacement Operations	(01-1-1103.01-0NRC)	5-105
Conduct Casualty Reporting	(01-1-1104.01-0NRC)	5-107
Provide Other Personnel and Administrative Services	(01-1-1105.01-0NRC)	5-109
Establish and Coordinate Security of Temporary Enemy 119 Prisoners of War (EPW) Collection Point	(01-1-1107.01-0NRC)	5-112
Coordinate the Requisition, Acquisition and Distribution of Supplies and Equipment	(01-1-1402.01-0NRC)	5-114
Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status	(01-1-1403.01-0NRC)	5-116
Plan And Coordinate External Transportation Assets for Movement of Personnel, Supplies, and Equipment	(01-1-1405.01-0NRC)	5-118
Coordinate/Provide Other Logistical Services	(01-1-1406.01-0NRC)	5-120
Conduct Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations	(01-2-0108.01-0NRC)	5-122
Prepare Unit for Deployment	(01-2-0702.01-0NRC)	5-124
Perform Field Sanitation	(01-2-0715.01-0NRC)	5-126
Conduct CH-47 Forward Area Refueling Equipment (CFARE) Operations	(01-2-1335.01-0NRC)	5-128
Perform Aerial Movement of Hazardous Cargo	(01-2-1336.01-0NRC)	5-130
Conduct Casualty Evacuation (CASEVAC) Operations	(01-2-1360.01-0NRC)	5-132
Coordinate Unit-Level Supply Operations	(01-2-2054.01-0NRC)	5-134
Perform Company/Troop Strength Management	(01-2-2064.01-0NRC)	5-136
Conduct Air Movement Operations	(01-2-5103.01-0NRC)	5-138
Perform Air Movement of Nuclear Weapons	(01-2-5106.01-0NRC)	5-141
Perform Production Control in the Maintenance and Shop Sections	(01-2-7011.01-0NRC)	5-143
Maintain Quality Control of Programs and Work Completed by Maintenance and Shop Sections	(01-2-7012.01-0NRC)	5-145
Perform Helicopter System Repairs and Inspections	(01-2-7013.01-0NRC)	5-147
Perform Helicopter Subsystem Repairs and Inspections	(01-2-7014.01-0NRC)	5-149
Perform Aircraft Battle Damage Assessment and Repair (BDAR)/Recovery Operations	(01-2-7017.01-0NRC)	5-151
Support Tactical Operations Center (TOC) Operations	(01-2-7102.01-0NRC)	5-153
Evacuate Casualties	(01-2-7707.01-0NRC)	5-155
Submit Casualty Feeder Reports and Witness Statements	(01-2-7714.01-0NRC)	5-157
Maintain Helicopters	(01-2-7730.01-0NRC)	5-159
Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations	(01-3-7726.01-0NRC)	5-162
Provide Unit Supply Support	(01-4-0320.01-0NRC)	5-164
Perform Vehicle Recovery Operations	(01-4-1029.01-0NRC)	5-166
Provide Food Service Support	(01-4-7708.01-0NRC)	5-168
Establish Medical Support	(01-4-7720.01-0NRC)	5-171
Conduct Medical Support Activities	(01-4-7721.01-0NRC)	5-173

Table 5-2. List of T&EOs by BOS (concluded).

<u>BOS AND TASK TITLE</u>	<u>T&EO TASK NUMBER</u>	<u>PAGE NUMBER</u>
Perform Unit-Level Maintenance	(01-4-7723.01-0NRC)	5-176
Implement the Command Religious Support Program	(01-5-1110.01-0NRC)	5-179
EXERCISE COMMAND AND CONTROL		
Command and Control (C ²) Battalion/Squadron Operations	(01-1-1001.01-0NRC)	5-181
Direct the Staff	(01-1-1002.01-0NRC)	5-183
Plan and Conduct Stability and Support Operations (SASO)	(01-1-1017.01-0NRC)	5-185
Coordinate Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations	(01-1-1020.01-0NRC)	5-188
Coordinate the Safety Program	(01-1-1024.01-0NRC)	5-190
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (ASO)	(01-1-1028.01-0NRC)	5-192
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1)	(01-1-1101.01-0NRC)	5-194
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)	(01-1-1120.01-0NRC)	5-196
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)	(01-1-1201.01-0NRC)	5-198
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3)	(01-1-1301.01-0NRC)	5-201
Establish and Maintain a Tactical Operations Center (TOC)	(01-1-1302.01-0NRC)	5-203
Plan, Coordinate, and Control Tactical Operations	(01-1-1303.01-0NRC)	5-206
Establish and Maintain a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)	(01-1-1306.01-0NRC)	5-208
Integrate Battalion/Squadron Operations Into the Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Plan	(01-1-1308.01-0NRC)	5-210
Perform Liaison Operations	(01-1-1311.01-0NRC)	5-212
Conduct Civil-Military Operations	(01-1-1342.01-0NRC)	5-214
Limit Local Population Interference With U.S. Military Operations	(01-1-1344.01-0NRC)	5-219
Provide Environmental Assistance	(01-1-1345.01-0NRC)	5-222
Provide Humanitarian Support	(01-1-1346.01-0NRC)	5-226
Establish Base Operations	(01-1-1348.01-0NRC)	5-230
Develop a Media Plan	(01-1-1351.01-0NRC)	5-233
Conduct Mediation and Negotiation	(01-1-1354.01-0NRC)	5-235
Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4)	(01-1-1401.01-0NRC)	5-237
Conduct Troop Leading Procedures	(01-2-2047.01-0NRC)	5-239
Conduct Hasty Assembly Area Displacement	(01-2-7039.01-0NRC)	5-241
Establish Communications	(01-4-1352.01-0NRC)	5-243
Provide Tactical Command, Control, Communications, and Computers (C ⁴) Systems Planning	(01-4-1414.01-0NRC)	5-246

ELEMENT: S2 SECTION

TASK: PROCESS CAPTURED DOCUMENTS AND MATERIEL (01-1-1060.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) (DA Pam 710-2-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Enemy documents or materiel have been captured. The capturing unit has reported and requested instructions for disposition. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All captured documents and materiel were accurately analyzed for intelligence value. One hundred percent of all captured documents and materiel were evacuated to higher headquarters or photographed and destroyed according to the unit SOP. Critical documents or materiel were evacuated without delay.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The S2 section coordinates with the capturing unit to determine the type of captured documents or materiel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained a general description of documents or materiel. b. Determined potential intelligence value of captured documents or materiel. 2. +The S2 section directs the unit to perform destruction or evacuation procedures. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Initiated evacuation procedures according to the unit SOP. b. Photographed designated documents or materiel and initiated destruction procedures. 3. +The S2 section coordinates with the S4 section and the capturing unit for evacuation of documents or materiel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Specified where documents or materiel would be picked up. b. Specified when pickup would take place. c. Specified how evacuation would be accomplished (for example, as part of a logistics package). 4. +The S2 section receives documents or materiel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed documents or materiel to determine effect on the current mission. b. Processed intelligence information. c. Reported any significant intelligence that could affect current missions to the commander. d. Secured documents or materiel until they were evacuated e. Transported critical or time-sensitive documents or materiel to higher headquarters immediately. 5. +The S2 section coordinates with the S4 and the brigade/regimental S2 for evacuation of documents or materiel to MI collection point. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed the transport of sensitive or specialized equipment to the MI collection point. b. Prioritized evacuation so that NBC and signal equipment were evacuated first, then weapon and C² systems. c. Completed the document register (S4 responsibility). d. Prepared turn-in documentation for captured routine equipment on DA Form 2765-1 (Request for Issue or Turn-In) (S4 responsibility). 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Directed the transport of captured routine materiel to the division support area.		
* 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0001	Process Captives
STP 21-24-SMCT	301-337-6001	Process Captured Materiel
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S2 SECTION

TASK: PROCESS INFORMATION INTO INTELLIGENCE (01-1-1203.01-0NRC)
FM 2-0(FM 34-1) FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)
 FM 2-50.301(FM 34-25-3) FM 2-50.601(FM 34-25-6) FM 2-33.5(FM 34-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The S2 is located at the main CP. The S2 section is operational and is receiving intelligence information. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no mission failures due to inadequate processing of information into intelligence. Information was processed and immediately passed on to higher headquarters by the most expeditious means available.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The S2 determines the validity of incoming information by comparing it to the current database. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined enemy capabilities. b. Analyzed the effects of weather on the operation. c. Analyzed the effects of terrain on the operation. d. Analyzed historical precedence of the enemy. e. Determined the types of equipment present. f. Determined the disposition of enemy forces. g. Analyzed the personalities of key personnel. h. Determined the consistency of the action with previous indicators. i. Determined the enemy perception of friendly capabilities and COAs. j. Determined the enemy capability to conduct deception operations. 2. + The S2 section analyzes incoming intelligence and combat information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified highly perishable combat information. b. Compared information with the intelligence requirements and priority intelligence requirements. c. Compared information with the commander's list of high-priority targets. d. Compared the information with the situation map. e. Passed highly perishable data to the brigade/regimental S2 and maneuver units. f. Passed highly perishable and targeting-quality combat information to the S3 and higher headquarters for immediate action. g. Determined if the information is an indicator of a specific enemy COA. h. Analyzed data based on predetermined key terrain, avenues of approach, trafficability data, and lines of communication to determine how recent activity affected the entire intelligence situation. i. Determined if incoming data meet the criteria for a decision point, line, or event. j. Collated incoming information with existing intelligence to determine if new activities are in concert with expected enemy courses of action and current activities. k. Requested additional information from the G2 and subordinate units to fill gaps in intelligence. l. Updated the situation map. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
m. Projected future enemy dispositions based on the enemy situation template. n. Made appropriate recommendations to the commander based on sound analytical procedures and judgment. o. Provided intelligence report to subordinate units. * 3. Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S2 SECTION

TASK: PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (01-1-1206.01-0NRC)
FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40) JOINT PUB 3-50.21

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Enemy soldiers have surrendered or have been captured. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: EPWs were processed immediately using the 5 Ss—search, segregate, silence, safeguard, speed to rear. EPWs were evacuated to holding areas within 12 hours of capture or surrender. All materials of military intelligence value were forwarded immediately. There were no violations of prisoners' rights under international law. No prisoners were allowed to escape due to improper handling procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The S2 section, with security force augmentation, searches captured personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated EPW issues with the detailed judge advocate or servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office. b. Confiscated all weapons, equipment, and documents. c. Returned personal items of no military intelligence value. d. Issued a written receipt for confiscated personal property. e. Tagged each prisoner and each item confiscated from the prisoner with required information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Specified place, date, and time of capture. (b) Specified capturing unit. (c) Summarized circumstances of capture. (2) Inventory items. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Specified type of document or material. (b) Specified place, date, and time of capture. (c) Specified the capturing unit. (d) Specified circumstances of capture. (e) Specified enemy unit from which items came, if known or can be determined. 2. +The security force segregates EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, nationality, and ideology; also segregated deserters and civilians. b. Located EPWs at temporary collection points in coordination with the S1. c. Turned over wounded EPWs to medical personnel for evacuation through medical channels. 3. +The security force maintains silence among EPWs and prevents all communications between EPWs with special emphasis on the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented EPWs from planning escapes. 4. +The security force safeguards captured enemy personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Removed EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Treated EPWs humanely. c. Provided EPWs with available food, water, and medical attention, as required. 5. The security force speeds evacuation of EPWs to the rear. a. Notified higher headquarters that enemy personnel had been captured. b. Coordinated transportation and accompanying security for EPWs with the S1 and the S4. c. Exploited intelligence information. d. Processed EPWs as quickly as possible. e. Evacuated EPWs to the rear as quickly as possible. f. Advised the EPW collection point of prisoners en route. g. Kept EPWs from C ² or key logistics facilities while en route. * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0001	Process Captives
STP 21-24-SMCT	301-337-6001	Process Captured Materiel
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: REPORT INFORMATION (01-2-2036.01-0NRC)
FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. SPOTREP formats and procedures are defined in the unit SOP. Enemy activity has been observed. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All observations of enemy activity—either from airborne or ground-based unit elements—are reported immediately. All reports contained essential information.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. + The element leader submits SPOTREP to next higher HQ.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Observed enemy activity and reported information in the format for reporting enemy (SALUTE—size, activity, location, unit identification, time, and equipment). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Described the size of the enemy unit. (2) Described the enemy activity. (3) Provided grid coordinates of enemy or reference from a know point. (4) Described distinctive uniforms, patches, signs, or symbols. Provided vehicle identification markings or numbers. (5) Provided the time the activity was observed. (6) Described the observed equipment. b. Included available maps, photos, overlays, sketches, captured documents, enemy material, and other supporting material with oral or written SPOTREP. c. Dispatched SPOTREPs by the most expeditious means available. d. Submitted reports even if the information was incomplete or "negative activity." e. Information was relayed to the S2/S3 expeditiously. <p>2. + The element leader reports bombing, shelling, and mortar, rocket, and aircraft fire.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sent a SPOTREP that included— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Unit of origin. (2) Position of the observer. (3) Direction. (4) Duration of the attack. (5) Area receiving fire. (6) Number, type, and caliber of fires, if known. (7) Flash-to-bang time. (8) Damage. (9) Angle of fall, if known. b. Submitted the reports by the most expeditious means. c. Submitted the report even if information was incomplete. d. Information was relayed to the S2/S3 expeditiously. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 3. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A or TPC
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1052	Operate Sincgars Equipment
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1053	Operate Radio Set AN/VRC-43 or AN/VRC-46 with TSEC/KY-57 and KYK-13
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1056	Operate the VRC-97 (MSRT)
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1057	Operate an AN/GRC-240 (Have Quick II Radio)
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: CONDUCT AVIATION URBAN OPERATIONS (01-1-1343.01-0NRC)

FM 3-06.1(FM 1-130)

FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)

FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

FM 3-97.11(FM 90-10-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting urban operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. ODSS may be required. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion/squadron supported the operation with adequate resources to accomplish the mission. All missions were conducted within the specified time frame. Collateral damage to facilities and noncombatants was minimized. There were no violations of the ROE. Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: ODSS operations in urban terrain generally follow the same planning and execution concepts as in other terrain. These are addressed in other T&OEs. The requirement will exist for special planning and consideration of the characteristics unique to urban terrain.</p> <p>* 1. +The S3 coordinates the staff's mission analysis for the specified urban area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained the IPB and intelligence staff estimate from the S2 with emphasis on— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Summary of the threat situation. (2) Probable threat COAs within and outside of the urban area. (3) Characteristics of the local population. (4) Detailed terrain analysis that considered— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Subterranean defensive characteristics. (b) Ground level defensive characteristics. (c) Above ground defensive characteristics. (d) Current intelligence and aerial photos. (e) Civilian maps and diagrams. (f) Airfields, helipads, open areas, and rooftops that could be used as LZs. (g) Subway systems, railways, and mass transit routes. (h) Underground water, sewer, and utility systems. (i) Electrical power stations. (j) Fuel supply and storage facilities. (k) Communications facilities. (l) Buildings protected by the law of war. (m) Areas and facilities restricted by the current ROE. (n) Routes to and from the objective. (o) Likely threat anti-aircraft sites. <p>* 2. +The S3 conducts special planning and coordination, to include—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Control measures to ensure tempo, coordination, and synchronization of the air/ground operation—subterranean, ground level, and above ground level. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Communications plan considering terrain/structures restrictions, and supplementary electronic and visual signals to differentiate friend from foe—subterranean, ground level and above ground. c. Reconnaissance and surveillance. d. Approach to the objective, if required. e. Isolation of the objective, if required. f. Task organization and weapons/ammunition requirements considering— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Military necessity. (2) Proportionality. (3) Collateral damage. (4) Noncombatant casualties. (5) Fratricide potential. (6) Precision engagement weapons. g. Integration of aerial and ground direct/indirect fires. h. Determination of the AD plan including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Weapons positioning. (2) Radar masking and degraded communications. (3) AD control measures. i. Employment of airborne CPs, as required. j. Security measures for protection of flanks, rear areas, and lines of communications. k. Requirements for additional forces, support, and special equipment (fast ropes, rope ladders, and hoists). l. Combat support/combat service support plans for continuous casualty evacuation, resupply, and maintenance support. m. Commander/staff update concerning status of local civil/military populace and future impacts of the operation. n. Liaison with local civil, police, air traffic control, and military authorities, if possible, to facilitate positive and mutual understanding of the operation. o. Coordination with a Staff Judge Advocate representative to ensure compliance with the law of war. p. Guidance and plans for training the ROE. q. The A²C² plan, including flight restrictions and positive/procedural control measures of the host nation and foreign military forces. <p>3. +The communications section adjusts the communications plan giving special consideration to—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Communications restrictions in urban terrain. b. Fire direction and AD nets. c. Supplementary signals. <p>4. +Companies/troops conduct aviation urban operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted reconnaissance, focusing on avenues of approach, surrounding urban terrain, and the terrain and situation within the urban area. b. Selected weapons to produce the desired effect on the target. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) The commander's intent. (2) ROE. (3) Day or night employment. (4) Target type. (5) Proximity of buildings—the objective's size, patterns, population density, structural density, and building construction. (6) Friendly/noncombatant positions. (7) Weather and visibility conditions. (8) Restrictions to weapons deployment and acquisition ranges. (9) Minimizing collateral damage. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Considered characteristics unique to urban terrain, including— (1) Effects of structural interference and line-of-sight disruption on radios, radar, sensors, and flight instruments. (2) Effects of city lights, higher surface temperatures, and thermal crossover on sensors. (3) Unpredictability of wind turbulence and venturi effects around buildings. d. Used ingress, egress, and contingency routes to minimize the duration of flight over urban terrain. e. Used alternate routes to avoid predictability. f. Employed assets to block enemy resupply and/or reinforcement of, or withdrawal from the objective. g. Provided communications retransmission to reduce communications limitations, air/ground and ground/ground, as required. h. Followed established control measures and ROE to limit collateral damage and avoid fratricide. i. Used available sensors and other methods to distinguish between friend, foe, and noncombatants. * 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-0113	Operate Crash Alarm System
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3015	Supervise the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-3008	Coordinate Aircraft Movement and Identification with Local Air Defense Units
No STP and No MOS	011-400-0006	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-400-0007	Integrate ASE Into Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0030	Plan the Employment of Army Aviation as Part of a Combined Arms Team
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0031	Plan and Conduct Operations in an Electronic Warfare Environment
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0001	Employ Ground Maneuver Forces

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0003	Employ Mobility/Counter-mobility/ Survivability
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0005	Employ Air Defense
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0007	Employ Aviation in Offensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0008	Employ Aviation in Defensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0020	Employ Army Aviation in Military Operations in Urban Terrain (MOUT)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0304	Conduct Battalion/Brigade Rehearsal
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0307	Perform IEW Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/ Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0704	Plan Intelligence Reconnaissance/ Surveillance Missions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: CONDUCT AREA SECURITY OPERATIONS (01-1-1347.01-0NRC)

<u>FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)</u>	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)
FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)
FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance to perform an area security operation. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. Protection priorities have been assigned within the order. The aviation battalion/squadron commander has been designated as the task force commander. The higher headquarters commander's intent is to secure the AO and enter into peacekeeping activities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no losses of personnel or damage to equipment or facilities. The battalion/squadron maintained security on a 24-hour basis. Humanitarian assistance and relief operations were not disrupted. Routes were kept clear and freedom of movement was ensured at all times. There were no unauthorized entries into zones of separation or other restricted areas. There were no violations of the ROE. Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The S5 analyzes intelligence received through CMO activities and civil affairs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established liaison with local civil, police, and military authorities, when directed, to facilitate the positive and mutual understanding about the operation. b. Determined needs of local authorities for assistance in the maintenance of law and order. c. Adjusted the civil affairs/CMO plan. d. Requested psychological operations support, if required. e. Developed recommendations for actions at potential disturbance sites. f. Briefed the commander and staff on the status of the local civil/military populace. 2. +The battalion/squadron conducts a zone reconnaissance to answer the CCIR. * 3. +The commander and staff develop the OPORD with emphasis on factors that are unique to stability and support operations, to include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established the location of subordinate unit base camps/installations. b. Established battalion/squadron base camp/installation. c. Considered use of existing installations or facilities. d. Planned for use of static and mobile security assets. e. Established performance criteria for continuous patrolling and reconnaissance. f. Established route clearance and control. g. Established checkpoints. h. Provided for conventional rear area security. i. Established civil affairs and CMO activities. j. Established ROE guidance. k. Established priorities for protection of civil/military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain within the AO. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
l. Provided for matching of security and potential peacekeeping missions, such as the establishment of a zone of separation or the conduct of humanitarian assistance, with battalion/squadron assets. m. Planned for the complete integration of aviation and ground assets. * 4. +The XO directs the development of the area security plan * 5. +The XO and staff implement the CSS plan. a. Coordinated the movement and positioning of CSS assets. b. Ensured adequate CSS support to the security effort. 6. +The battalion/squadron conducts security operations. a. Assigned subunit AOs. b. Performed detailed reconnaissance of proposed base camps or installations. c. Occupied base camps. d. Established zones of separation, if necessary. e. Provided humanitarian support, as needed. f. Conducted air and ground tactical operations, as directed. g. Established and rehearsed a quick reaction, as required. h. Conducted civil affairs/CMO activities. i. Implemented plans to protect civil/military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain. * 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93C1-SM	011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-7005	Integrate Airspace Control Measures
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0008	Conduct Unit Defensive Operations

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0030	Plan the Employment of Army Aviation as Part of a Combined Arms Team
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0705	Identify Status of Regional Threats
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion Opord
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0304	Conduct Battalion/Brigade Rehearsal
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After Action Review
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION**TASK:** CONTROL A CIVIL DISTURBANCE (01-1-1349.01-0NRC)FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

FM 3-07(FM 100-20)

FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)

FM 3-57(FM 41-10)

FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)

FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO to control a civil disturbance and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. Local civil authority is insufficient to contain or restrain an emerging civil demonstration or disturbance. The potential for destruction of critical property and the loss of supplies or assets is imminent. Soldiers are armed as allowed by law/ROE and as directed by higher headquarters. Time is critical and the battalion/squadron must transition into the operation with minimum preparation. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion/squadron forces began movement within the specified time frame. There were no losses or damage to critical facilities. All special threats were neutralized immediately. No deliberate provocation of civilians occurred during deployment of units and soldiers. Units applied the incremental minimum use of force, including nonlethal means. Changes in the situation and results of the operation were reported to higher headquarters. Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The S5 coordinates with the S2 to access the current situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained updates from higher headquarters on the scope of the disturbance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Determined intensity level of the crowd. (2) Analyzed recent trends in local public opinion. (3) Analyzed crowd mood, composition, activity, and perceived intent. b. Requested flyover and surveillance of the disturbance sites, if needed. c. Developed a reconnaissance and surveillance plan that focused on providing security during unit movement to the civil disturbance sites and at the disturbance site. * 2. +The S5 conducts special staff planning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Updated the commander and staff concerning the local populace and the potential impact of using lethal force. b. Requested psychological operations support, if necessary. c. Established liaison with local civil, police, and military authorities, when directed, to engender a positive and mutual understanding of the operation. d. Prepared crowd control proclamations in local language, if possible. e. Provided input to the S6 concerning the availability of civilian communications facilities and interpreters. f. Requested legal advice from the detailed Judge Advocate, as required. g. Developed recommendations for actions at the disturbance sites. * 3. +The commander and staff produce an OPORD/FRAGO. Planning addresses the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Occupation of key terrain/facilities. b. Isolation of the disturbance site. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Actions at the disturbance sites in coordination with civil authorities.</p> <p>d. Protection of critical facilities.</p> <p>e. Establishment of area control.</p> <p>f. Maintenance of crowd control by monitoring, containment, blocking, and dispersal operations.</p> <p>g. Integration of fixed- or rotary-wing assets, if available.</p> <p>h. Neutralization of special threats.</p> <p>i. Use of barrier material.</p> <p>j. Force protection measures.</p> <p>k. Use of riot control measures.</p> <p>l. Weapons control, arming and graduated use of force criteria.</p> <p>m. Higher headquarters approval to implement arming orders.</p> <p>n. Assistance from other organizations—MP or United Nations civil police.</p> <p>4. +The battalion/squadron rehearses the plan with all subordinate commanders and CS/CSS leaders. At a minimum, the following contingencies are addressed:</p> <p>a. Actions at the disturbance sites.</p> <p>b. ROE.</p> <p>c. Weapons control and arming.</p> <p>d. Force protection.</p> <p>e. Incremental use of force.</p> <p>5. +The battalion/squadron elements move to the disturbance sites.</p> <p>a. Moved rapidly, on visible routes, maintaining all-round security.</p> <p>b. Upon arrival at the site, elements:</p> <p>(1) Occupied assigned objectives according to the OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>(2) Coordinated all actions with civil authorities if available at the disturbance sites.</p> <p>(3) Established passive control of the sites, perimeters.</p> <p>(4) Isolated the sites by use of checkpoints, patrols, and use of barrier material, if authorized.</p> <p>(5) Established area control.</p> <p>(6) Established protection of critical facilities.</p> <p>(7) Neutralized special threats.</p> <p>(8) Implemented crowd control procedures proportionate to the threat and in accordance with ROE.</p> <p>(9) Submitted SITREPs, as needed.</p> <p>c. Upon stabilization and the restoration of order, the battalion/squadron elements:</p> <p>(1) Conducted hand-off to civil authorities or follow-on forces.</p> <p>(2) Conducted consolidation and reorganization.</p> <p>(3) Prepared AARs.</p> <p>* 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0705	Identify Status of Regional Threats
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0001	Employ Ground Maneuver Forces
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0007	Employ Aviation in Offensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0008	Employ Aviation in Defensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0014	Employ Aviation Command, Control, Communications (C ³) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0020	Employ Army Aviation in Military Operations in Urban Terrain (MOUT)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0304	Conduct Battalion/Brigade Rehearsal
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader, or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0006	Implement Measures to Reduce Your Unit's Personnel and Equipment Vulnerabilities to Terrorist Acts/Attack
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: CONDUCT A SHOW OF FORCE DEMONSTRATION (01-1-1350.01-0NRC)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)
FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)
FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability and support operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance to provide a mobile combined arms task force on short notice to demonstrate a show of force. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. The aviation battalion/squadron commander has been designated as the task force commander and has been task organized accordingly. The higher headquarters commander's intent is to stabilize tense situations between belligerent factions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion/squadron task force conducted the operation within the time specified. Execution of the show of force resulted in no belligerent force actions. There were no violations of the ROE. Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander and staff develop an OPORD/FRAGO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Synchronized air and ground assets capable of rapid deployment. b. Incorporated nonlethal munitions and psychological operations. * 2. +The S5 analyzes intelligence received through civil-military operations and civil affairs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established liaison with local civil and military authorities, and other local organizations. b. Developed recommendations for actions at the demonstration sites. c. Briefed the commander and staff on the local populace and the potential impact of the show of force operation. d. Requested advice from the detailed judge advocate, as required. 3. +The battalion/squadron rehearses the show of force operation. The rehearsal will address: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Movement (air and ground) to the demonstration sites. b. Actions at the demonstration sites. c. Actions to counter resistance. d. Review of the ROE. e. Review of the fire support and AD artillery plan. 4. +The battalion/squadron conducts the show of force operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Orchestrated the movement of air and ground forces. b. Occupied and secured the demonstration sites. c. Reacted with minimal force necessary to any resistance to the operation. d. Submitted SITREP as necessary. 5. +The battalion/squadron conducts consolidation and reorganizes for resumption of area security mission. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-7005	Integrate Airspace Control Measures
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0001	Employ Ground Maneuver Forces
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0003	Employ Mobility/Counter mobility/Survivability
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0005	Employ Air Defense
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0007	Employ Aviation in Offensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0008	Employ Aviation in Defensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0019	Plan Aviation Brigade Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0304	Conduct Battalion/Brigade Rehearsal
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: ENFORCE PEACE AGREEMENTS (01-1-1358.01-0NRC)

<u>FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)</u>	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)	FM 3-07(FM 100-20)
FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)
FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)
FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—hostile environment. It is the main force in a peacekeeping AO. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil-operations team have been attached to assist. Treaties and agreements are in place. A conflict that erupted earlier between two parties within the local population has been subdued by a show of force. The battalion/squadron commander is the ranking peacekeeping military officer in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion/squadron quickly separated belligerents and kept them apart. The battalion/squadron observers remained impartial to all belligerents. The battalion/squadron adhered to treaties, agreements, and directives from higher headquarters. There were no violations of the ROE. Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The battalion/squadron defuses the incident. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Isolated the situation. b. Dominated the situation in compliance with the peace treaty. c. Implemented multidimensional, multiecheloned actions by focusing on the larger tactical and political situation. 2. +The staff submits reports to higher headquarters. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Confirmed that the parties were separated. b. Confirmed that negotiations were initiated. 3. +The battalion/squadron establishes a zone of separation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with local civil authorities to establish a clear understanding of the zone of separation, restrictions, and limitations. b. Marked the zone of separation and defined the restricted areas for both or all of the belligerent parties. c. Limited free access to the peacekeeping force. 4. +The battalion/squadron establishes show of force positions in high visibility areas. 5. +The battalion/squadron elements patrol the site of hostility to monitor the peace. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used an appropriate mix of dismounted, vehicle, and air assets for patrolling. b. Determined the necessity and viability of night patrols. c. Analyzed the criteria for armed versus unarmed patrol personnel. d. Closely monitored potential "hot spots." 6. +The battalion/squadron elements establish OPs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected locations that provided maximum observation of the area. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Provided primary and alternate communications. c. Determined optimum staffing. 7. +Battalion/squadron establishes and controls weapons turn-in sites, as required, with assistance from local authorities. 8. +The battalion/squadron maintains communications with higher and lower headquarters. * 9. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0001	Employ Ground Maneuver Forces
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After Action Review
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5705	Establish an Observation Post
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	158-300-0030	Brief to Inform, Persuade or Direct
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: EMPLOY A QUICK REACTION FORCE (01-1-1359.01-0NRC)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)

FM 3-07(FM 100-20)

FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)

FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. While conducting area security operations, the unit received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander’s guidance to establish and deploy a QRF. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. The higher headquarters commander’s intent is to stabilize tense situations or react to conflict. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The staff issued the OPORD/FRAGO in a timely manner. The QRF deployed within the specified time frame. The QRF maintained security at all times. There were no violations of the ROE. Fratricide did not occur.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
NOTE: Rapid movement is critical. Staff planning actions are abbreviated. * 1. +The S2 develops the IPB. * 2. The XO and staff analyze the impact of the operation on CS/CSS plans. * 3. +The S5 updates the commander and the staff on civil affairs and civil-military operations activities. * 4. +The commander and staff conduct the military decision making process to produce an OPORD/FRAGO. 5. +The QRF begins movement. It— a. Crossed the start point at the specified time. b. Moved rapidly, on specified air and ground routes. c. Maintained all-around security. d. Reacted to situations en route and at the incident or hostile site, as directed. e. Submitted SITREP, as required. * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS “GO”							
TRAINING STATUS “GO”/“NO-GO”							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0003	Employ Mobility/Counter-mobility/Survivability
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0005	Employ Air Defense
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0007	Employ Aviation in Offensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0008	Employ Aviation in Defensive Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0009	Employ Rear Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5022	Prepare a Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)
No STP and No MOS	301-336-1009	Process Combat Information
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
TROOP HEADQUARTERS

TASK: PLAN/ORGANIZE THE MOVE (01-2-0001.01-0NRC)
 FM 4-01.30(FM 55-30) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95)
 FM 4-01.9(FM 55-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Tactical operations dictate that a battalion/squadron move is required. The company/troop may or may not move as an integral member of the battalion. (NOTE: The tactical situation will dictate whether the battalion/squadron moves as a whole or whether the companies/troops will conduct the move independently.) The S3 has conducted movement planning. The commander has selected a movement OIC—usually the HHC/HHT commander—who has conducted troop leading procedures. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Movement planning was conducted in a timely manner which allowed subordinate units adequate time to prepare. The quartering party identified all hazards to the road march. Quartering party preparation allowed units to occupy the AA without delay.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. + The movement OIC reviews the movement plan. The plan should include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated the movement—and new AA location, if applicable—with higher headquarters. b. Conducted a map reconnaissance to select routes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Selected routes that provide cover and concealment. (2) Selected routes that provide trafficable terrain. (3) Conducted risk assessment c. Selected the road march technique. d. Selected the movement order. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Opened column formation during daylight hours. (2) Closed column formation during limited visibility conditions or movement through urban areas. e. Determined distance factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Space between vehicles. (2) Column gap. (3) Traffic density. (4) Length of column. (5) Road gap. f. Determined movement rate factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Vehicles column speed and catch-up speed. (2) Rate of march. g. Determined time factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Pass time. (2) SP time. (3) Time distance. (4) Arrival time. (5) Completion time. (6) Extra time needed for slower vehicles. h. Determined order of unit movement. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Positioned command vehicles where they could best control movement. (2) Organized vehicles by mobility capability. (3) Divided the unit into mixed columns to maintain unit integrity. i. Finalized and issued the march order. j. Designated of a convoy commander and quartering party according to unit SOP. k. Conducted back-brief to the battalion/squadron commander on the movement plan. <p>* 2. + Quartering party OIC organizes the quartering party.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted a map reconnaissance. b. Assembled representatives from each subelement. c. Briefed personnel and designated an AA, SP location and time. <p>3. + Quartering party moves to the AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reconnoitered route and reported condition and trafficability. b. Maintained security and air guards. c. Conducted a tactical road march to the AA site. <p>4. + Quartering party occupies the tentative AA.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established security. b. Conducted hasty reconnaissance. c. Established communications with the TOC/TAC. d. Cleared and secured the AA. e. Monitored the area for NBC contamination. f. Identified. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Entrances. (2) Exits. (3) Internal routes. g. Reconnoitered for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Drainage. (2) Slope. (3) Cover and concealment. (4) Terrain. (5) Dispersion. (6) Trafficability h. Reconnoitered FARP location. i. Reconnoitered LZs. j. Identified and marked obstacles and contaminated areas. k. Reported to headquarters. <p>5. + Quartering party prepares the site for occupation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected and marked locations according to SOP for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Company CP/TOC. (2) Aircraft. (3) Vehicles and equipment. b. Maintained security. c. Marked. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Entrances. (2) Exits. (3) Internal routes. d. Removed obstacles, if feasible. e. Began site preparation. f. Established a dismount point. g. Prepared a site map. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
h. Posted road guards, if applicable. i. Posted unit guides at the RP. * 6. + Company/troop commander plans for the movement of aircraft. a. Completed troop-leading procedures and conducted aircrew briefings, which includes as a minimum— (1) Order of movement. (2) Departure time. (3) Route of flight. (4) Movement technique. (5) Initial point, air control point, and RP. (6) FARP location. (7) AA occupation plan. b. Ensured that platoon leaders had loaded equipment and aircraft were prepared for flight. * 7. + Company/troop commander plans for the movement of vehicles and personnel. a. Completed troop-leading procedures and issued an OPORD/FRAGO that identified— (1) SP location, SP departure time, and order of march. (2) Vehicle blackout procedures. (3) March procedures (closed or open). (4) Rate of march. (5) Security during halts and air guards. (6) Vehicle recovery procedures. (7) Primary and alternate routes. b. The commander designates serial commanders who— (1) Ensured vehicles were inspected and marked. (2) Issued strip maps to drivers. (3) Briefed drivers according to the OPORD/FRAGO and the unit SOP. * 8. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2001	Identify Chemical Agents Using M256 Series Chemical Agent Detector Kits
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3010	Supervise Employment of Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Markers
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5805	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance Mission
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
STP 21-24-SMCT	551-721-3359	Prepare a Strip Map
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA (01-2-0101.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112) FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)
 FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114) FM 3-20.95(FM 17-95) FM 3-34.103(FM 5-103)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The battalion/squadron has completed the move to the AA. The quartering party is established in the AA. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The AA was occupied no later than the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Elements occupied their positions without halting. The unit location was not compromised as a result of poor movement or flight techniques.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The company/troop moves vehicles into the AA. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Met vehicles at the release point with quartering party guides—not allowing vehicles to stop. b. Moved vehicles to individual vehicle locations. c. Conducted vehicle after-operations checks. 2. +The company/troop occupies the AA. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established security. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Placed guards at entrances to the AA. (2) Placed OPs to cover key terrain features and likely avenues of approach. (3) Prepared fire plans and emplaced crew-served weapons. (4) Emplaced chemical agent alarms. (5) Assigned platoon/section areas of responsibility. (6) Ensured 360-degree security of AA. (7) Organized the AA to detect and defeat a ground attack. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Oriented aircraft and vehicle weapons to support perimeter defense. (b) Organized a reaction force to respond to enemy threat. b. Camouflaged vehicles and tents. c. Commenced mission support operations. d. Reported occupation of the AA to higher headquarters. 3. +Unit moves aircraft into the AA. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refueled aircraft before landing in the AA. b. Landed aircraft in designated landing zones using appropriate flight mode according to SOP. c. Moved aircraft into final positions with ground guides. d. Parked aircraft according to SOP for emergency departure. e. Conducted aircraft after-operations inspections. 4. +Unit prepares for future operations <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed required vehicle, equipment, and aircraft maintenance. b. Conducted resupply operations. c. Performed precombat checks, if combat operations were imminent. d. Implemented plan for continuous operations. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Continued to improve perimeter defensive positions.		
* 5. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-400-2300	Perform Tactical Communications, Using Singars Radios, in a Field Environment
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0023	Conduct Assembly Area Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-326-5703	Construct Individual Fighting Positions
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5704	Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5705	Establish an Observation Post
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5770	Prepare a Platoon Sector Sketch
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5775	Coordinate With an Adjacent Platoon
No STP and No MOS	071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures
No STP and No MOS	091-257-0002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
No STP and No MOS	091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations
STP 21-24-SMCT	551-721-3359	Prepare a Strip Map
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Movement
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: SECURE AND DEFEND UNIT POSITION (01-2-0102.01-0NRC)
FM 3-09(FM 6-20) FM 3-21.10(FM 7-10) FM 3-21.7(FM 7-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has occupied a forward AA, and each company has been assigned a sector to defend. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion/squadron established immediate 360 degree security. The AA was not breached as a result of poor security. The battalion/squadron prepared and implemented a security plan within 1 hour of occupation of the AA.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The companies/troops implement the battalion/squadron AA security plan. NOTE: Occasionally the tactical situation will require the establishment of a separate company/troop AA. The same planning considerations will apply to the development of a company/troop security plan.</p> <p>2. +The companies/troops organize security.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assigned sectors of responsibility to platoons. b. Searched the area for mines, booby traps, or enemy presence. c. Established OPs/LPs. d. Prepared defensive fighting positions. e. Positioned chemical alarms for NBC defense. f. Positioned crew served weapons on likely avenues of approach. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Established primary, alternate, and supplementary positions. (2) Ensured that interlocking fires were established, if possible. (3) Prepared range cards. g. Continued to improve fighting positions. h. Established communication between OPs, companies/troops, and the main CP headquarters. h. Established communication between OPs, companies/troops, and the main CP. j. Prepared dismount points where necessary. <p>3. +The companies/troops prepare defensive fire plans.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the locations of all defensive positions and OP/LPs. b. Determined the principle direction of fire and final protective line for all machine guns. c. Ensured overlapping sectors of fire or coverage of dead space with grenade launchers and artillery fire. d. Submitted recommendations for target reference points. f. Forwarded fire plans to battalion/squadron. <p>4. +HHC/HHT organizes a reaction force.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted periodic patrols to locate and neutralize reported OPFOR. a. Established communications with company/troop headquarters. b. Counter-attacked intruding OPFOR. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. +The companies/troops reacts to an OPFOR ground attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted the main CP of OPFOR activity. b. Occupied fighting positions. c. Alerted aircraft to activate scatter plan according to the unit SOP. d. Engaged OPFOR according to ROE, weapons control status, and the unit SOP. e. Formed the reaction force at the designated rally point. f. Reported actions to the main CP. 		
* 6. Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-326-5703	Construct Individual Fighting Positions
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5704	Supervise Construction of a Fighting Position
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5705	Establish an Observation Post
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5770	Prepare a Platoon Sector Sketch
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-5775	Coordinate With an Adjacent Platoon
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0852	Clear a Field of Fire
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-430-0007	Consolidate a Platoon Following Enemy Contact While in the Defense
No STP and No MOS	071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures
STP 21-24-SMCT	441-091-3001	Direct Unit Air Defense

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CONDUCT UNIT MOVEMENT (01-2-2048.01-0NRC)
 FM 4-01.30(FM 55-30) FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112) FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)
 FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114) FM 4-01.9(FM 55-9)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Troop leading procedures have been completed. All preparations and coordination for the move have been made. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company/troop met all time schedules. All aircraft, vehicles, and personnel moved to the new location without damage to or loss of equipment or personnel. The unit was not observed by enemy forces as a result of poor road march or tactical flight discipline. Downed aircraft and disabled vehicles were recovered without incident.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The company/troop conducts movement by nontactical road march. NOTE: A nontactical road march is conducted when moving laterally within the division AO or enemy contact is not imminent.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Departed the SP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) First vehicle departed the SP at the time specified in the order. (2) Convoy commander reported the last vehicle departing the SP. b. Maintained march discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Vehicles moved at designated speed. (2) Vehicles moved with designated interval between vehicles. (3) Air guards were posted. (4) Personnel maintained 360-degree surveillance. (5) Convoy commander reported passing critical points or checkpoints. c. Conducted halts. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Column stopped at prescribed time and location. (2) Convoy commander reported halts. (3) Vehicles moved off the road and parked under cover and/or concealed (if terrain permits). (4) Maintained vehicle interval. (5) Drivers performed operator's checks during halts. (6) Maintained security. d. Conducted vehicle recovery. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintenance section: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Posted guards while operation was ongoing. (b) Inspected disabled vehicle. (c) Repaired vehicle, if possible. (d) Towed disabled vehicle, if necessary. (e) Reported status to convoy commander. e. Conducted convoy through urban area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Confirmed weight, height, and width restrictions. (2) Employed close column formation. (3) Obeyed traffic control directions. f. Crossed the RP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Passed through RP without halting and reported. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Convoy commander forwarded closing report to S3. 2. +The company/troop conducts aircraft air movement. a. Departed at the specified time. b. Followed designated air routes using appropriate terrain flight techniques. c. Reported passing the RP and proceeded to the FARP according to the unit SOP. d. Repositioned to assigned location (AA or holding area dependent upon mission). * 3. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93C1-SM	011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0005	Apply the Fundamentals of Air Defense
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	Select a Movement Route Using a Map
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
STP 21-24-SMCT	441-091-3001	Direct Unit Air Defense
STP 21-1-SMCT	551-721-1352	Perform Vehicle Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS)
STP 21-1-SMCT	551-721-1359	Drive Vehicle in a Convoy
STP 21-1-SMCT	551-721-1408	Implement Defensive Procedures When Under Enemy Attack or Ambush in a Truck Convoy
STP 21-24-SMCT	551-721-3352	Direct Convoy Defense Operations
STP 21-24-SMCT	551-721-3359	Prepare a Strip Map
STP 21-24-SMCT	551-721-4326	Perform Duties as Convoy Commander
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
ASSAULT TROOP

TASK: CONDUCT AIR ASSAULT OPERATIONS (01-2-5105.01-0NRC)
FM 3-97.4(FM 90-4) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)
FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit conducted the air assault within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Mission accomplishment was enhanced by careful planning and the use of proper tactics, techniques, and procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander conducts troop-leading procedures. * 2. +The AMC conducts required coordination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed the liaison officer's coordination to include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Number of aircraft available, as well as passenger and cargo capabilities. (2) Staging, loading, air movement, landing plans, ground tactical plans. (3) Air movement tables. (4) LZ/PZ selection and preparation. (5) Primary/alternate flight routes. (6) Airspace coordination. (7) Security plan. (8) Fire support plan. (9) C² plan. b. Determined FARP locations and capabilities. c. Coordinated control measures with air cavalry, attack, and CAS elements. * 3. +The AMC conducts the aircrew brief and air assault rehearsal. * 4. +The AMC controls the air mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Designated a flight lead, serial commanders, if required. b. Interacted with the AATF commander directly on all matters relating to the air assault. c. Provided information to the AATF liaison officer. 5. +Unit conducts staging operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved along designated routes to the staging area. b. Arrived at staging area at time designated in air movement table. c. Contacted the PZ control officer to initiate loading operations. d. Contacted the supporting aviation elements, such as attack and air cavalry units, if employed. 6. +Aircrews conduct loading operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Supervised loading of their assigned aircraft as specified in movement table. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Exercised bump plan as directed by the PZ control officer. 7. +Unit conducts air movement operations. a. Departed PZs at times indicated in air movement table. b. Moved along preplanned routes. c. Employed appropriate movement techniques. d. Employed appropriate terrain flight techniques. e. Executed the fire support plan, if necessary. f. Conducted deception operations, such as false insertion as necessary. * 8. +Unit conducts landing operations. a. Supervised air movement and landing phase of air assault. b. Arrived at LZs as specified in the air movement table. c. Ensured expeditious unloading of troops and equipment immediately upon landing. d. Provided suppressive covering fire, as required. e. Provided casualty evacuation, as required. * 9. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EP)
STP 1-93C1-SM	011-143-0008	Conduct Landing Zone/Pick Up Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1000	Participate in a Crew Mission Briefing (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1002	Conduct a Passenger Briefing (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1000	Participate in a Crew Mission Briefing (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0013	Employ Assault Helicopter Units
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0029	Employ Medium Helicopter Units
No STP and No MOS	011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment.
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0001	Employ Ground Maneuver Forces
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: PERFORM AERIAL PASSAGE OF LINES (01-2-7105.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112) FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)
 FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The company/troop has received OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The tactical situation dictates that operations be conducted forward of friendly units. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit was not engaged by friendly units as a result of improper or inadequate coordination. The aerial passage of lines was conducted at the specified time and place.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The commander conducts troop leading procedures. * 2. +The commander or designated AMC conducts special coordination. a. Selected ingress and egress routes if not provided by higher headquarters. b. Selected RPs forward of the FLOT. c. Exchanged information concerning signal operation instructions, number and type of aircraft, passage times, routes, and electronic attack and electronic protection measures to be employed with friendly unit. d. Established and coordinated recognition signals. 3. +The designated aircraft pass through friendly airspace. a. Gave proper recognition signal at the prescribed time to the ground unit. b. Flew the designated route. c. Arrived and departed the designated contact and RPs at the assigned times. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM No	011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A or TPC

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-7005	Integrate Airspace Control Measures
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE FIRE SUPPORT (01-1-1022.01-0NRC)

FM 3-09(FM 6-20)

FM 3-09.71(FM 6-71)

FM 3-91.1(FM 71-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Both OPFOR and friendly forces have indirect fire and close air support available. The FSO/fire support element, if assigned, is collocated with the TOC. Initial coordination has taken place with supported units. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S3 coordinated fire support that neutralized targets, suppressed, or destroyed OPFOR weapons. There were no casualties from friendly fires resulting from improper coordination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO (if assigned) coordinate for fire support throughout the AO..</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Planned and integrated defensive fire at the CP, TOC, administrative and logistics operation center, and trains locations. b. Developed a fire support plan that reflected the commander's guidance, plans, and intent. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured fires were planned in-depth from the line of departure/line of contact to the objectives, and beyond. (2) Identified targets affecting flight routes. (3) Established control measures for lifting and shifting fires. (4) Identified potential FARP locations. (5) Coordinated a plan for the use of priority targets, if allocated by higher headquarters, that addressed targets in depth, timing, and control of fires. (6) Identified the locations of friendly firing batteries. (7) Coordinated fires with the scheme of maneuver plan that included— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Targets of concern. (b) Effects required. (c) Priority of fires. (d) Priority of targets. (e) Graphical fire support measures. <p>* 2. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO, if assigned, cover the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Discussed priority of target effect (suppression, neutralization, and destruction). b. Discussed priority of fires. c. Discussed responsibility of priority targets. d. Discussed number of preplanned sorties available. e. Discussed use of smoke or dual purpose improved conventional munitions and control measures. f. Discussed target observers and triggers. <p>* 3. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO, if assigned, coordinate requirements for EW operations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. +The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, and FSO, if assigned, conduct reconnaissance and finalize the coordinated fires plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Located enemy known or possible positions. b. Identified dominant terrain. c. Targeted enemy avenues of approach. d. Identified possible enemy, counter attack routes. e. Established targets of concern. f. Approved fire support execution matrix. 		
* 5. + The S3, company/troop commanders, platoon leaders, FSO, and observers conduct fire support rehearsal.		
* 6. +The S3 coordinates for artillery or tactical air support to suppress enemy ADA sites—Joint Suppression of Enemy AD.		
* 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0006	Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION**TASK:** COORDINATE NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) DEFENSE (01-1-0034.01-0NRC)

FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)

FM 3-11.100(FM 3-100)

FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)

FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)

FM 3-97.50(FM 3-50)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)**COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT:** T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The OPFOR has simulated NBC capability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: NBC planning minimized the vulnerability to NBC attack. The recommended MOPP level was correct and timely and afforded maximum protection to soldiers. Identification of affected strike areas, and implementation of the monitoring/reporting plan, minimized exposure of personnel to the effects of a simulated NBC strike. Coordination for unit decontamination resulted in minimal simulated casualties and enhanced unit effectiveness.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The NBC section coordinates NBC defense.</p> <p>a. Planned NBC defensive operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Received, prepared, correlated, and disseminated information on enemy NBC activity and capability. (2) Assisted the S2 with the integration of the NBC threat analysis into the IPB. (3) Assisted the S2 with coordination of any attached NBC elements. (4) Provided mission analysis for NBC. (5) Briefed the S3 on the effects of NBC on tactical operations. (6) Assisted S3 with the development of an aircraft scatter plan in the event of an NBC attack. (7) Prepared the NBC defense annex to the OPORD/FRAGO and prepared the NBC overlay. (8) Briefed key personnel on the NBC defense plan. (9) Performed MOPP analysis. <p>b. Addressed specific aspects of NBC operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinated with the S1/S4/medical section, as appropriate, for disposition of NBC casualties. (2) Coordinated with battalion/squadron medical personnel for treatment of NBC casualties. (3) Determined the disposition of contaminated unit equipment — decontaminate or abandon—with the S4. (4) Forecasted the procurement of NBC defense equipment—dosimeters, MOPP gear, and monitors—with the S4. (5) Coordinated through the S3 for external decontamination support. <p>2. +The NBC section plans for decontamination operations.</p> <p>a. Identified possible decontamination sites—personnel, aircraft, and ground support assets.</p> <p>b. Coordinated with brigade/regiment for decontamination support.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Coordinated the integration of host-nation assets into decontamination operation, if applicable.</p> <p>d. Recommended priority of decontamination.</p> <p>e. Assisted companies/troops with operational decontamination requirements.</p> <p>3. +The S3 establishes a battalion/squadron NBC center.</p> <p>a. Coordinated the activities of the company/troop NBC teams.</p> <p>b. Reported NBC equipment and readiness status to the S3.</p> <p>c. Consolidated company/troop operational exposure guidance and radiation status information.</p> <p>d. Developed radiological survey and chemical detection plans.</p> <p>e. Collated, evaluated, and distributed NBC contamination data.</p> <p>f. Processed NBC reports.</p> <p>(1) NBC-1 (Initial Observer's Report)—Received from observers and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</p> <p>(2) NBC-2 (Evaluated Data)—Received from divisions—generated at battalion/squadron if operating independently.</p> <p>(3) NBC-3 (Warning of Predicted Contamination Report)—Received from higher headquarters.</p> <p>(4) NBC-4 (Reconnaissance and Monitoring and Survey Report)—Received from company/troop NBC teams and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</p> <p>(5) NBC-5 (Actual Contaminated Area Report)—Received from divisions for review of impact on operations.</p> <p>(6) NBC-6 (Detailed Information on Chemical/Biological Attack Report)—Received from companies/troops and forwarded to brigades/regiments.</p> <p>g. Received and analyzed the chemical downwind report.</p> <p>h. Updated the tactical situation map.</p> <p>i. Briefed the command group, as required.</p> <p>* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1103	Conduct Aviation Operations in an NBC Environment

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2004	Prepare and Submit NBC-4 Reports
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3005	Submit NBC-1 Report
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-4002	Prepare a Unit for NBC Attack
No STP and No MOS	031-503-7000	Integrate NBC Concepts Into Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: EMPLOY OPERATIONS SECURITY (OPSEC) MEASURES (01-1-1016.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30) (AR 380-5) AR 380-19-1
 FM 6-02(FM 24-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit was not compromised by electronic, visual, or audio means. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate OPSEC measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 implements OPSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed the S2 physical security plan. b. Formulated information security measures. c. Formulated signal security measures. d. Determined counter and counter-counter surveillance measures. e. Determined automated systems security. <p>2. +The S3 section implements information security measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Controlled the distribution of all written OPORDs and annexes. b. Accounted for all SOI. c. Controlled all operational information on a need-to-know basis. d. Maintained all classified information and material in an authorized security container. e. Maintained emergency destruction instructions according to applicable regulations and the unit SOP. <p>3. +The S3 section implements SIGSEC measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Transmitted mission essential information by secure radio only. b. Used authentication and encryption codes specified in the SOI. c. Limited message transmissions to no more than 20 seconds. d. Reported all SIGSEC discrepancies/violations to next higher headquarters. <p>4. +The S3 section implements electronic protection measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tuned equipment to assigned frequencies specified in the current SOI. b. Observed radio silence periods, as directed. c. Employed anti-jamming procedures. d. Forwarded reports of electromagnetic interference to communications personnel within 10 minutes of the incident. <p>5. The S3 section directs employment of counter surveillance measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured the employment of litter prevention measures that kept areas free of trash, litter, or personal items. b. Ensured the employment of measures that prevented the creation of footpaths and vehicle tracks between elements. c. Ensured that radios were operated with volumes and squelches on lowest possible settings. d. Camouflaged vehicles, equipment, and tents. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Buried cables and wires, as appropriate. f. Employed noise and light discipline. 6. The S3 section implements automated systems security. a. Positioned computers within an enclosure that provided controlled access. b. Secured all electrical facilities that supported the system. c. Restricted access to the computer by use of classified passwords. d. Controlled all log-ons and file access by the use of unique operator passwords. e. Changed passwords according to the unit SOP schedule, or more frequently as necessitated by the situation. f. Destroyed all outdated printouts of reports and lists. * 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EP)
No STP and No MOS	011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment.
No STP and No MOS	071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures
STP 21-24-SMCT	301-348-6001	Protect Classified Information and Materials
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1051	Enforce Personnel Security Policies
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
STP 21-24-SMCT	805C-PAD-3591	Protect Classified Information and Materials
STP 21-24-SMCT	805C-PAD-3594	Store Classified Information and Materials

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: INTEGRATE AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY MEASURES (01-1-1019.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is functional and reports are being received through normal channels. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct combat and/or combat support operations. The OPFOR has medium to high intensity ADA and EW capability within the AO. ASE is on hand and operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit aircraft were not engaged by OPFOR ADA or EW assets as a result of improper planning or procedural control measures. Unit aircraft were not engaged by friendly ADA assets because of improper fratricide prevention measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The TOO integrates EW considerations into tactical planning.</p> <p>a. Developed the EW annex to the OPORD in coordination with the S2.</p> <p>(1) Estimated enemy EW capabilities, limitations, vulnerabilities and ability to—</p> <p>(a) Interfere with friendly operations.</p> <p>(b) Detect friendly ASE and communications.</p> <p>(c) Interrogate friendly transponder equipment.</p> <p>(d) Conduct electronic attack against friendly forces.</p> <p>(2) Identified available friendly EW systems.</p> <p>(3) Provided guidance on appropriate—</p> <p>(a) Policies.</p> <p>(b) Doctrine.</p> <p>(c) Tactics.</p> <p>(d) Techniques.</p> <p>(e) Procedures.</p> <p>(4) Verified threat parameters and optimum ASE settings.</p> <p>b. Developed the tactical plan to avoid detection of friendly aircraft by enemy ADA.</p> <p>(1) Selected optimum flight routes using good terrain analysis with emphasis on—</p> <p>(a) Primary flight routes.</p> <p>(b) Alternate flight routes.</p> <p>(c) Hazards.</p> <p>(d) Control points for a complete mission.</p> <p>2. The TOO, in coordination with the S2 and S3, conducts an EW risk assessment.</p> <p>a. Analyzed enemy advantages and disadvantages in EW.</p> <p>(1) Assessed threat system operating procedures and capabilities.</p> <p>(2) Assessed threat tactics</p> <p>(3) Identified operating frequencies of radar threats.</p> <p>(4) Identified IR, radio frequency, and electro-optical threats, and countermeasures.</p> <p>* 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1059	Operate the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3015	Supervise the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
No STP and No MOS	011-410-0001	Perform ASE Risk Analysis
No STP and No MOS	011-410-0004	Analyze Major Threat/Allied Equipment
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0025	Integrate Aircraft Survivability Equipment (ASE) in Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0025	Defeat Enemy Threat Using Aircraft Survivability Equipment (ASE)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0307	Perform IEW Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S2 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH SECURITY MEASURES (01-1-1202.01-0NRC)

FM 3-19.30(FM 19-30)

(AR 381-10)

(AR 381-12)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The quartering party has completed reconnaissance of the AA and is prepared to guide the unit into the AA. The unit completes movement and is closing in on the AA. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The headquarters established a physical security plan within one hour of occupation of the AA. The OPFOR was not allowed to penetrate the unit or CP perimeter because of an inadequate security plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The S2, in conjunction with the S3, develops and implements a unit physical security plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated the battalion/squadron security plan and posted it in the TOC. b. Designated company/troop sectors before occupation. c. Planned for the prevention of vehicle and personnel entry into the CP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Provided for continuous sentries. (2) Designated a vehicle dismount point. (3) Directed a primary and an alternate means of communication from the security headquarters to the dismount point and perimeter posts. d. Defined procedures for the initial response to ground and air attacks. e. Developed a means to prevent unauthorized civilian access to the unit AA. f. Developed a comprehensive fire support plan to support the AA defense. 		
* 2. +The HHC/HHT operates a guard force. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established communications between the guard commander (security headquarters) and sentry posts. b. Posted sentries to stop unauthorized entry into restricted areas. c. Conducted random exterior patrols to locate, report, and neutralize OPFOR intruders before they breached the CP perimeter. d. Designated a rally point for reactionary forces. 		
* 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	071-990-0003	Control Entry Into a Restricted Area
No STP and No MOS	071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL/BIOLOGICAL ATTACK (01-2-0013.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3) FM 3-11.100(FM 3-100) FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)
 FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of chemical/biological weapons is imminent. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Preparations for imminent attack minimized damage to equipment and loss of personnel. Missions were resumed with minimal delay after a simulated chemical/biological strike. Personnel responded immediately to chemical/biological alarms. Personnel donned protective mask within 9 seconds of alarm (without hood) or within 15 seconds of alarm (with hood).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander issues a WARNORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided guidance to platoons to prepare equipment and personnel for chemical/biological attack. b. Alerted NBC teams. c. Directed appropriate MOPP level consistent with guidance received. <p>2. +Company/troop personnel begin preparation for chemical/biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Evacuated or checked chemical/biological alarms. b. Evacuated aircraft, if possible. c. Covered equipment, munitions, petroleum products, food, and water. d. Positioned vehicles and remaining aircraft to maximize terrain shielding. e. Improved existing shelters with consideration to chemical/biological agent effects—gaseous and liquid delivery methods. f. Minimized skin exposure by proper use of protective clothing. g. Reviewed unit SOP and indicators of chemical/biological attack. <p>3. +Company/troop personnel take immediate protective measures upon alert of chemical/biological attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Donned protective mask and hood, if not already in MOPP4. b. Gave the vocal or nonvocal alarms. c. Took individual protective measures, if caught in an unprotected area. d. Monitored personnel for physical signs of exposure to chemical/biological agents. e. Administered immediate and appropriate first aid to casualties. f. Sealed the shelter (if possible) if in a protected area. g. Submitted an NBC-1 report, if appropriate, (personnel observed the chemical/biological attack). h. Stayed covered until the signal was given to uncover. i. Tested the area with detector kits and reported results. j. Marked contaminated areas. <p>4. +Unit NBC teams conduct chemical/biological surveys.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted the survey using the techniques prescribed by the battalion/squadron chemical officer, or as deemed appropriate by the NBC team chief when operating independently. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Reported the survey results to the company/troop commander.</p> <p>* 5. The commander conducts poststrike actions.</p> <p>a. Assessed casualties.</p> <p>(1) Treated and evacuated casualties.</p> <p>(2) Reestablished chain of command and cross-leveled personnel.</p> <p>(3) Forwarded casualty feeder report.</p> <p>b. Forwarded NBC-4 report (results of survey) to battalion/squadron headquarters.</p> <p>c. Assessed status of aircraft, vehicles, and equipment.</p> <p>(1) Reported aircraft and equipment status.</p> <p>(2) Returned aircraft and equipment to operable status as soon as possible.</p> <p>6. +Personnel conduct immediate/operational decontamination.</p> <p>a. Decontaminated skin.</p> <p>b. Conducted a wipe down of personal equipment with decontamination kit.</p> <p>c. Conducted a spray down of equipment and vehicles, if possible.</p> <p>d. Marked contaminated runoff areas.</p> <p>* 7. The commander develops a contingency plan.</p> <p>a. Received guidance from battalion/squadron.</p> <p>b. Initiated unmasking procedures.</p> <p>c. Analyzed the mission and conducted troop leading procedures.</p> <p>d. Prepared to move the company/troop, if necessary.</p> <p>e. Requested thorough decontamination support, if necessary.</p> <p>f. Resumed operational missions.</p> <p>* 8. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1019	React to a Chemical or Biological Hazard or Attack
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1035	Protect Yourself From Chemical/Biological Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2004	Prepare and Submit NBC-4 Reports
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3005	Submit NBC-1 Report
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
No STP and No MOS	031-507-3003	Supervise Hasty Decontamination
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5004	Prepare a Warning Order
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1031	Administer First Aid to a Nerve Agent Casualty (Buddy Aid)
STP 21-24-SMCT	121-030-3534	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: RESPOND TO A NUCLEAR ATTACK (01-2-0017.01-0NRC)
FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of tactical nuclear weapons is imminent. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Preparations for imminent attack minimized damage to equipment and loss of personnel. Missions are resumed with minimal delay after a simulated nuclear strike. Personnel took immediate action in response to alarms.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander issues a WARNORD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided guidance to platoons to prepare equipment and personnel for nuclear attack. b. Alerted NBC teams. <p>2. +Company/troop personnel begin preparation for nuclear attack.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Positioned vehicles and aircraft to maximize terrain shielding—evacuated aircraft, if time permitted. b. Covered equipment, munitions, petroleum products, food, and water. c. Disconnected nonessential electronic equipment. d. Improved existing shelters with consideration to blast, thermal, and radiation effects. e. Minimized skin exposure by proper use of protective clothing. f. Issued and zeroed dosimeters. <p>3. +Company/troop personnel take immediate protective measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Took individual protective measures if caught in an unprotected area. b. Sealed the shelter if in a protected area. c. Donned NBC protective gear. d. Stayed covered until the signal was given to uncover—blast wave passed, debris stopped falling, and radiation exposure from fallout was in acceptable range. e. Monitored dosimeters and reported. f. Conducted radiological survey. <p>* 4. +The commander conducts poststrike actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reestablished communications. b. Forwarded NBC-1 report to battalion/squadron headquarters. c. Assessed casualties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Treated and evacuated casualties. (2) Reestablished chain of command and cross-leveled personnel. (3) Forwarded casualty feeder report. d. Assessed damages to aircraft, vehicles, and equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reported aircraft and equipment status. (2) Returned aircraft and equipment to operable status as soon as possible. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. +Company commander develops a contingency plan. a. Received guidance from battalion/squadron. b. Analyzed the mission and conducted troop leading procedures. c. Compared present radiation exposure state to the operational exposure guidance. d. Prepared to move the company/troop, if necessary. e. Resumed operational missions.		
* 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1102	Employ the NBC Warning and Reporting System
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1018	React to a Nuclear Hazard or Attack
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2004	Prepare and Submit NBC-4 Reports
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3005	Submit NBC-1 Report
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: PREPARE FOR OPERATIONS UNDER NUCLEAR, BIOLOGICAL, AND CHEMICAL (NBC) CONDITIONS (01-2-0201.01-0NRC)
FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4) FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of OPFOR NBC weapons is possible. NBC alert status has been issued according to unit SOP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Actions taken by the unit limited the effects of an NBC attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. + The commander ensures accountability and serviceability of NBC defense equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed that NBC detection equipment is issued to trained operators. b. Ensured that NBC detection equipment was employed and operational immediately after notification. 		
2. + The company/troop takes action to protect itself against NBC attack. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared protective shelters for personnel with overhead cover. b. Placed all equipment and supplies under cover. c. Secured or tied down all loose equipment. d. Briefed soldiers and reviewed the unit SOP. e. Assumed the designated MOPP level. 		
* 3. +The commander adjusts MOPP level based upon MOPP analysis/guidance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented MOPP level directives. b. Analyzed company/troop status and mission. 		
* 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-1101	Supervise a Unit NBC Defense Program

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/ Contamination With the Appropriate Mission- Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1019	React to a Chemical or Biological Hazard or Attack
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
No STP and No MOS	031-503-4002	Prepare a Unit for NBC Attack

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CAMOUFLAGE VEHICLES AND EQUIPMENT (01-2-0203.01-0NRC)
FM 3-25.75(FM 21-75) FM 3-24.3(FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The battalion/squadron is in an AA or companies/troops are operating autonomously and are in a stationary position. The OPFOR possesses air and ground surveillance capability. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit location is not compromised as a result of improper or inadequate camouflage.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +Leaders select concealed vehicle positions and traffic routes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured vehicle tracks followed terrain features, such as edge of wood lines and fields. b. Ensured vehicle tracks continued past the parking spot to another logical location. c. Ensured personnel used concealed routes when possible. d. Ensured all vehicles followed in the same tracks. e. Ensured all tracks lead into concealed positions are removed. f. Ensured vehicles and equipment were positioned under cover or in shadows whenever possible. g. Ensured vehicle positions used natural surroundings for concealment. h. Ensured vehicle positions avoided terrain features—hilltops, road intersections—that the enemy could use as reference points. <p>* 2. +Personnel conceal vehicles and equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used natural material to break up shapes or shadows. b. Ensured natural materials blended with the surroundings. c. Changed natural material regularly when it wilted or discolored. d. Used camouflage screen systems and other manmade materials to enhance natural camouflage. e. Covered or subdued all shiny surfaces—such as windows, mirrors, metal, and headlights. f. Kept heat sources—generators, engines, mess areas—under cover when possible to reduce thermal and noise signatures. g. Buried cables and wires, as appropriate. <p>3. +Personnel enforce noise, light, and litter discipline.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used only vehicle blackout lights from dusk to dawn. b. Ensured that all lighted work areas were completely shielded. c. Muffled or masked noise that could not be eliminated. d. Stored or buried litter. <p>* 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-1-SMCT	052-191-1501	Perform Individual Camouflage
STP 21-1-SMCT	071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
No STP and No MOS	071-990-0005	Enforce Detection Prevention Measures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA (01-2-0280.01-0NRC)
FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4) FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5) FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)
FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of nuclear weapons has occurred. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct a unit move. The company/troop must cross a radiologically contaminated area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit moved through the contaminated area by the route which provided the lowest acceptable radiation exposure to personnel. Movement techniques minimized the spread of contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The commander conducts troop leading procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified that there were no routes bypassing the contaminated area. b. Issued a warning to platoons to prepare equipment and personnel for movement through a radiologically contaminated area. c. Reviewed OPORD/FRAGO from battalion/squadron and confirmed NBC-5 report data including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Contamination levels of tentative ground and air routes. (2) Radiation exposure limits from OEG. (3) Routes which provide minimum exposure to radiation. d. Obtained route clearance and approval, as required. 2. +The company/troop prepares to conduct move. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared vehicles and aircraft with extra shielding. b. Transported equipment inside vehicles or covered it with available material. c. Ensured that radiac equipment was operational. d. Issued dosimeters and informed personnel of OEG limitations. e. Directed appropriate MOPP level protection. f. Took measures to reduce personnel exposure to dust or mud—closed windows and air vents. g. Planned for the transport, by organic aircraft, of all personnel and equipment not essential to the ground move, if exposure was reduced by air transport. h. Started continuous radiological monitoring. i. Completed all normal preparations for a unit move according to unit SOP. 3. +The company/troop conducts move across contaminated area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used movement techniques to minimize dust. b. Maintained intervals that minimized exposure to dust clouds. c. Moved steadily without unnecessary halts or delays while in the contaminated area. d. Continually monitored radiac equipment and dosimeters. 4. +The company/troop clears the contaminated area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported clearing to battalion/squadron. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Forwarded NBC-4 report. c. Assessed casualties. d. Performed immediate/operational decontamination—removed dust or mud from vehicles and equipment. e. Coordinated for thorough decontamination, if necessary. f. Reported present radiation exposure rate of personnel. 5. +The company/troop resumes operational missions. * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2004	Prepare and Submit NBC-4 Reports
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3004	Supervise Crossing of a Contaminated Area
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-4003	Control Unit Radiation Exposure
No STP and No MOS	031-503-7000	Integrate NBC Concepts Into Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
No STP and No MOS	551-721-1410	Operate a Vehicle in a Contaminated Area

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: USE COUNTERMEASURES AGAINST ENEMY AIR DEFENSE ARTILLERY (ADA) (01-2-0301.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The company/troop is operating in a medium-to-high intensity OPFOR ADA area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit was not engaged as a result of improper use of positive and procedural control measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander ensures that coordination with the S2 for OPFOR ADA information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the tactical posture of the threat (defensive or offensive). b. Determined OPFOR strength, size, unit types, and locations in the area of planned operations. c. Determined the types of ADA that were suspected in the AO. d. Determined the EW capability that will affect ASE. * 2. +The AMC plans to divert mission aircraft around OPFOR ADA areas. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared a terrain analysis with minimum requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Primary flight routes. (2) Alternate flight routes. (3) Hazards. (4) Control points for complete mission. b. Planned with higher headquarters for artillery or TACAIR support to suppress OPFOR ADA sites. c. Planned with friendly ADA and air traffic control for early warning of hostile aircraft in the AO. 3. +Aircrews use terrain flight techniques and passive ADA countermeasures based on METT-TC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used terrain to mask aircraft from OPFOR detection and fire. b. Used terrain or vegetation as a backdrop to avoid being skylined if required to unmask. c. Minimized flights in open areas that provided little cover or concealment. d. Crossed open terrain quickly to reach cover and concealment. e. Minimized aircraft firing and rotor wash signatures when operating at NOE. f. Employed armed aircraft at maximum standoff range when terrain permitted. g. Took action on contact with the OPFOR and proceeded as directed by the mission briefing and SOP. 4. +Aircrews ensure ASE is on board mission aircraft and operational, including the following, when available: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Radar detector set. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Radar jammer set. c. IR countermeasures set. d. Laser detector set. e. Missile detector set. f. Chaff/flare dispenser kit. g. IFF charged with proper, up-to-date code. h. Others, as necessary. 5. +Aircrews use available ASE to degrade enemy ADA. a. Used the radar detector set to detect and provide early warning against enemy radar. b. Used the IR jammer to divert IR missiles from aircraft. c. Used the chaff dispenser and deployed to cover when an incoming missile was detected. d. Used the flare dispenser and deployed to cover when an incoming missile was detected. e. Used the radar jammer to jam enemy radar engaging the aircraft. 6. +Aircrews take measures to suppress enemy ADA. a. Suppressed suspected ADA sites with preplanned friendly artillery or TACAIR fires. b. Used smoke from artillery or organic fires to degrade the enemy ADA capability to optically track friendly aircraft. c. Used sensors and position location equipment to locate the enemy, called for immediate artillery suppression, or used organic fires. d. Continued the mission as briefed or according to the SOP. * 7. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-5059	Identify Airspace Control Measures
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0031	Plan And Conduct Operations in an Electronic Warfare Environment
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0002	Employ IEW
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0025	Defeat Enemy Threat Using Aircraft Survivability Equipment (ASE)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: COMPLY WITH ESTABLISHED ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A²C²) MEASURES (01-2-0403.01-0NRC)

FM 3-100.1(FM 100-103) (FM 3-100.2) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no violations of airspace control measures during operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The Commander briefs the unit on established A²C² measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Defined enemy AD and EW capabilities. b. Outlined of higher and adjacent unit A²C² plans, which included the locations, radio frequencies, and call signs of supporting AD units. c. Provided Information concerning supporting aviation resources—Army, other services, allied. d. Described the A²C² and air traffic services plan that included frequencies, airspace user priorities, authority to be exercised by the maneuver commander, and the A²C² overlay if required. e. Reviewed Flight Rules concerning IMC/VMC. f. Provided instructions applicable to two or more subordinate units, such as positive and procedural control requirements and establishment of control measures and restrictions. g. Reviewed AD instructions/information—such as ADA warning, weapons control statuses, and hostile criteria. h. Provided Army aviation instructions/information—such as FARP locations, airfield locations, operating times, and in-flight reporting procedures. i. Reviewed fire support instructions/information—such as fire support coordination line, restricted fire areas, and locations of artillery batteries affecting operations. j. Identified A²C² control measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Low-level transit routes. (2) Minimum risk routes. (3) Standard Army aircraft flight routes. (4) High-density airspace control zones. (5) Restricted operations areas/zones. (6) Coordinating altitudes. (7) IFF modes 3A and 4 transponder codes. (8) IFF operating procedures—for example, IFF on and off line. (9) Alternate identification procedures that are easily executed by the pilot, and identified by the AD system. k. Hostile and friendly aircraft data. <p>2. +Aircrews conduct planning.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Updated tactical maps with A²C² information. b. Verified that IFF and aircraft survivability equipment were operational. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Reviewed A ² C ² procedures.		
3. +The unit conducts operations within A ² C ² control specifications.		
* 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3015	Supervise the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
STP 1-93C1-SM	011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-7005	Integrate Airspace Control Measures
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CROSS A CHEMICALLY/BIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA (01-2-0609.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-11.4(FM 3-4) FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3) FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)
 FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of chemical/biological weapons has occurred. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct a unit move. The company/troop must cross a chemically/biologically contaminated area. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit moves through the contaminated area by the route which provides the lowest acceptable exposure to personnel. Movement techniques minimize the spread of contamination.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The commander conducts troop leading procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified that there were no routes bypassing the contaminated area. b. Issued a warning to platoons to prepare equipment and personnel for movement through a chemical/biologically contaminated area. c. Reviewed the OPORD/FRAGO and confirmed NBC-5 report data including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Contamination levels of tentative ground and air routes. (2) Types of chemical/biological agents reported. (3) Routes which provided minimum exposure to chemical agents. d. Obtained route clearance and approval, as required. 2. +The company/troop prepares to conduct move. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed appropriate MOPP level protection. b. Transported equipment inside vehicles or covered it with available material. c. Ensured that M-8 detection paper was positioned to provide early warning of exposure. d. Took measures to reduce personnel exposure to dust or mud—closed windows and air vents. e. Planned for the transport, by organic aircraft, of all personnel and equipment not essential to the ground move, if exposure was reduced by air transport. f. Started continuous chemical/biological monitoring. g. Completed all normal preparations for a unit move according to unit SOP. 3. +The company/troop conducts move across contaminated area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used movement techniques to minimize dust. b. Maintained vehicle interval that minimized exposure to dust cloud. c. Moved steadily without unnecessary halts or delays while in the contaminated area. d. Continually monitored personnel and detection devices for signs of exposure. 4. +The company/troop clears the contaminated area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported clearing to battalion/squadron. b. Forwarded NBC-4 report. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Assessed casualties. d. Performed immediate/operational decontamination (1) Removed dust or mud from vehicles and equipment. (2) Performed personal equipment decontamination, if necessary. e. Coordinated for thorough decontamination, if necessary. f. Reported present personnel and equipment readiness status. 5. +The company/troop resumes operational missions. * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1101	Employ NBC Protection for Aviation Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1103	Conduct Aviation Operations in an NBC Environment
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1020	Detect Chemical Agents Using M9 Detector Paper
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2004	Prepare and Submit NBC-4 Reports
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3002	Conduct Unmasking Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3004	Supervise Crossing of a Contaminated Area
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
No STP and No MOS	031-507-3003	Supervise Hasty Decontamination
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8001	Report Casualties
No STP and No MOS	551-721-1410	Operate a Vehicle in a Contaminated Area

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION (01-2-0610.01-0NRC)
FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5) FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. NBC contamination has occurred. Time constraints do not allow contamination to decay naturally to a minimally acceptable level. The factors of METT-TC permit decontamination. Higher level support for decontamination is not available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminated to a negligible risk within the time specified in the commander's guidance. There were no personnel casualties or damage to equipment resulting from any part of the decontamination process. No contamination was spread to personnel, equipment, or to the environment except that which was deemed as acceptable in the risk assessment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander directs unit personnel to perform individual decontamination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Began decontamination as soon as the situation permitted. b. Ensured that contaminants were removed and controlled. c. Directed MOPP gear exchange using buddy teams, if available. * 2. +The commander directs decontamination of aircraft, ground vehicles, and equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Supervised the washing of aircraft, vehicles, and equipment. b. Used field-expedient techniques—such as driving through a stream or using water from a fire hydrant, if available and the contamination runoff was acceptable. c. Ensured controls were in place to maintain separation between "dirty" and "clean" equipment. 3. + NBC personnel update the unit radiation status—for radiological contamination only. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined present degree and extent of existing hazard using the AN/PDR-27. b. Read dosimeter. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Averaged the total dose. (2) Rounded off reading to nearest centigray. c. Reported results to the commander. d. Zeroed all dosimeters, using PP-1578-A. 4. +The company/troop continues the mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Covered, marked, and reported contaminated runoff. b. Ensured that the OEG was not exceeded. c. Monitored decontaminated personnel with the AN/PDR-27 for level of contamination. d. Repeated decontamination, as necessary. e. Updated the unit RES, and continuously compared the RES with the OEG. f. Continued to monitor NBC situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Sought and received information from higher headquarters. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Used assigned NBC equipment to monitor current situation and detected changes.		
* 5. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1100	Determine Aircraft Decontamination Levels and Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-2023	Measure Radiation Dose Rate and Total Dose Rate
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3006	Supervise Radiation Monitoring Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3008	Implement Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP)
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
No STP and No MOS	031-507-3003	Supervise Hasty Decontamination

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CONDUCT THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION (01-2-0611.01-0NRC)
FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5) FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. NBC contamination has occurred. Time constraints do not allow contamination to decay naturally to a minimally acceptable level. The factors of METT-TC permit withdrawal of the unit to the decontamination site. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit decontaminated to a negligible risk within the time specified in the commander's guidance. There were no personnel casualties or damage to equipment resulting from any part of the decontamination process. No contamination was spread to personnel, equipment, or to the environment except that which was deemed as acceptable in the risk assessment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The company/troop coordinates thorough equipment decontamination through battalion/squadron NBC center. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Sent an advance party to rendezvous with decontamination elements at the site. b. Assisted with site setup. c. Controlled traffic, and provided security at the site. d. Provided labor detail for processing and for cleanup. 2. +The company/troop completes immediate/operational decontamination—personal wipe down and operator spray down—before leaving AO. 3. +The company/troop arrives at the decontamination staging area and completes the following actions: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prioritized aircraft, vehicles, or equipment for decontamination based on commander's guidance or unit SOP. b. Prepared aircraft, vehicles, or equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Closed up items to be decontaminated. (2) Removed items that could not be decontaminated using DS2. (3) Secured or removed loose items. c. Dismounted vehicles (exempt for drivers). d. Moved to the decontamination site. 4. +The company/troop processes through the site. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received instructions from the chemical unit. b. Provided traffic control and site security. c. Moved decontaminated aircraft, vehicles, and equipment to the reconstitution area. 5. The company/troop clears the site. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assisted the chemical unit with site clearance. b. Provided necessary labor to the chemical unit. 6. +The company/troop reorganizes and resumes operations. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Coordinated with battalion/squadron for necessary support and supplies. b. Received new or amended orders or confirmation of original orders. c. Continued the mission. * 7. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1100	Determine Aircraft Decontamination Levels and Procedures
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1004	Protect Yourself From Chemical and Biological Injury/Contamination Using Your M17-Series Protective Mask With Hood
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1023	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination When Changing Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
TROOP HEADQUARTERS

TASK: IMPLEMENT FRATRICIDE PREVENTION MEASURES (01-2-2035.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 3-0(FM 100-5)
 FM 2-01.3(FM 34-130)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has issued an OPORD/FRAGO. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no casualties or equipment damage due to inadequate fratricide prevention planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander completes the fratricide risk assessment matrix.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assessed situational awareness. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Evaluated fire and maneuver control by assessing density of forces versus clarity of the situation. (2) Evaluated the fire distribution plan by comparing available rehearsal time versus collective proficiency, and navigation difficulty. (3) Evaluated potential navigation problems by assessing reconnaissance and intelligence versus visibility and navigation difficulty. (4) Evaluated fire control and battle tracking. (5) Evaluated battlefield hazards by comparing use of dud-producing munitions versus knowledge of existing hazards. b. Assessed combat identification measures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identified friendly recognition and marking system. c. Assessed fire control discipline. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Evaluated C² measures. (2) Reviewed the ROE. d. Assessed personnel and leadership preparedness. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Evaluated mission related experience and competence. (2) Considered soldier and leader fatigue and stress factors. <p>* 2. +The commander takes appropriate measures to reduce the risk of fratricide.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Enforced the fire and maneuver plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Low—Conducted back-briefs and supervised combat preparation. (2) Caution—Used a limited visibility rehearsal, clarified the intent of operations, and cross-trained soldiers/crews on critical tasks. (3) High—Rehearsed adjacent and converging task forces. Used liaison personnel, if available, to confirm ground unit maneuver plan and locations. b. Enforced the fire distribution plan. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Low—Ensured all ground AD missions, passage in and out of areas, and how fire controls were briefed and/or rehearsed. (2) Caution—Ensured that ground and flight weapons status were appropriate. Modified task organization and implemented a limited visibility plan. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) High—Modified plans and simplified coordination between air and ground forces.</p> <p>c. Rehearsed land navigation.</p> <p>(1) Low—Conducted map reconnaissance and covered the impact of terrain, weather, and enemy.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Used redundant navigation aids, ground guides, and night vision aids and marked enemy and friendly positions.</p> <p>(3) High—Assigned navigation responsibilities to multiple crews (redundancy) and conducted route reconnaissance, whenever possible.</p> <p>d. Emphasized fire control and battle tracking.</p> <p>(1) Low—Coordinated positive clearance of fires, made communications checks, and back briefed fire support.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Coordinated positive clearance of fires, used SOP, guides, beacons, and vectoring, where available.</p> <p>(3) High—Coordinated positive clearance of fires and established liaison with the ground unit.</p> <p>e. Combated battlefield hazards.</p> <p>(1) Low—Instilled safety discipline and ensured that all known hazards were identified and disseminated.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Considered all contingency plans, actions at hazards, and equipment limitations.</p> <p>(3) High—Established intermediate objectives or control points, considered special logistic and/or maintenance actions, and coordinated a detailed deception plan.</p> <p>f. Briefed combat identification.</p> <p>(1) Low—Rehearsed combat vehicle identification skills.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Used and recognized IFF, and expedient measures for exposed elements.</p> <p>(3) High—Used and recognized clear IR friendly markings and used multiple recognition signals.</p> <p>g. Rehearsed the fire control discipline.</p> <p>(1) Low—Reviewed the ROE and enforced the challenge or password discipline.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Simplified the plan and modified the ROE.</p> <p>(3) High—Rotated high stress positions and augmented door gunners.</p> <p>h. Confirmed soldiers' and leaders' preparedness.</p> <p>(1) Low—Followed full troop leading process and established sleep plan/crew rest criteria according to unit SOP.</p> <p>(2) Caution—Emphasized the troop leading process, refreshed mission specific skills, and controlled the pace in execution.</p> <p>(3) High—Prioritized tasks and rehearsals, gave FRAGO only for an emergency, and avoided requirements that exceed training level.</p> <p>* 3. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AAR's
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
STP 21-24-SMCT	850-001-2001	Assess Potential for Accidents
STP 21-24-SMCT	850-001-3001	Control Mission Safety Hazards
No STP and No MOS	878-920-1002	Recognize Friendly and Threat Armored Vehicles and Aircraft

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: EMPLOY PASSIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES (01-2-2051.01-0NRC)
FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8) FM 03-04.300(FM 1-300)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and reports are being received through normal channels. Reports indicate that OPFOR fixed-wing and helicopter forces have achieved temporary air parity and are operating in the unit's area. Unknown or hostile aircraft have been detected by company/troop personnel. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company/troop successfully avoided detection or attack by hostile aircraft.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The stationary unit takes passive AD measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Concealed and camouflaged aircraft, personnel, and equipment. b. Dispersed the unit to the maximum extent possible. c. Posted air guards to search assigned sectors. d. Gave the air attack alarm as specified in the SOP. e. Occupied defensive positions and be prepared to engage aircraft in self defense. f. Visually identified the hostile aircraft. g. Reported any aircraft action to the battalion/squadron tactical CP. h. Continued to track the hostile aircraft. <p>2. +The moving unit takes passive AD measures against nonattacking hostile aircraft.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted personnel to potential air threat. b. Posted air guards according to the SOP. c. Gave air attack alarm as specified in the SOP. d. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions; increased dispersion. All personnel prepared to engage aircraft as directed. e. Dismounted personnel and prepared to engage aircraft. f. Visually identified the hostile aircraft. g. Reported any aircraft action to the battalion/squadron tactical CP. h. Continued to track the hostile aircraft. i. Rallied the convoy after departure of the hostile aircraft and continued the unit move. <p>* 3. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
STP 21-24-SMCT	441-091-1040	Visually Identify Threat Aircraft
STP 21-24-SMCT	441-091-3001	Direct Unit Air Defense
No STP and No MOS	441-401-0001	Supervise the Implementation of Air Defense Measures
STP 21-24-SMCT	551-721-3352	Direct Convoy Defense Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: EMPLOY ACTIVE AIR DEFENSE MEASURES (01-2-2052.01-0NRC)
FM 3-01.8(FM 44-8) FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and reports are being received through normal channels. Reports indicate that OPFOR fixed wing and helicopter forces have achieved temporary air parity and are operating in the unit's area. Friendly ADA units are operating in the area. Passive AD measures have failed and the unit has been detected by OPFOR aviation forces. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company/troop reacted immediately to an enemy air attack. Defensive actions resulted in the disruption of the enemy attack.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The stationary unit takes active AD measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the air attack alarm according to unit SOP. b. Occupied defensive positions. c. Searched assigned sectors for hostile aircraft. d. Detected the enemy aircraft and immediately alerted the unit. e. Identified the detected aircraft. f. Initiated the aircraft scatter plan according to the unit SOP. g. Reported the aircraft to battalion/squadron headquarters. <p>NOTE: When making the decision to fire at nonattacking hostile aircraft with small arms, the assigned mission and tactical situation must be considered. Units have the right to self-defense, if attacked, but to prevent fratricide, positive identification is critical.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> h. Commander orders the unit to engage the aircraft with all available small arms and crew served weapons. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Established the aiming point using the "football field" method. (2) Used the "volume of fire" technique to mass small arms fire. (3) Coordinated fires with supporting ADA units, if applicable. (4) Engaged aircraft according to the ROE and weapon control status. i. Reloaded weapons following engagement of the aircraft. j. Assessed damage and casualties. k. Submitted a SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP. l. Evaluated the situation and moved the unit position as directed by headquarters. <p>2. +The moving unit takes active AD measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the air attack alarm according to the unit SOP. b. Dispersed vehicles laterally and in depth; vehicle operators continued to move. c. Moved vehicles to covered, concealed positions, if possible. d. Dismounted personnel and prepared to engage the hostile aircraft. e. Identified the hostile aircraft. f. Engaged the aircraft with all available small arms. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Established the aiming point using the "football field" method. (2) Used the "volume of fire" technique to mass small arms fire. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Coordinated fires with supporting ADA, if applicable. (4) Engaged aircraft according to the ROE and weapon control status. g. Reloaded weapons following engagement of aircraft. h. Submitted a SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP. i. Assessed damage and casualties. j. Reformed the convoy and continued to move when the "all clear" signal was given. 3. +Company/troop aircraft conducting tactical missions take active AD measures. a. Performed evasive maneuvers according to the unit SOP. b. Attempted to use terrain masking. c. Fired on attacking aircraft by establishing an aiming point, if possible. d. Rallied aircraft after the departure or destruction of the hostile aircraft. e. Submitted a SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP. f. Continued the mission. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	441-091-1040	Visually Identify Threat Aircraft
STP 21-24-SMCT	441-091-3001	Direct Unit Air Defense
STP 21-24-SMCT	551-721-3352	Direct Convoy Defense Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CONDUCT MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR EXCHANGE (01-2-2160.01-0NRC)

FM 3-11.7(FM 3-7)

FM 3-11.5(FM 3-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Simulated use of tactical NBC weapons has occurred. Protective clothing is unserviceable as a result of contamination. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All MOPP gear is exchanged without further casualties or contamination of equipment. Operations are not degraded because of poor or inadequate MOPP gear exchange.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The company/troop prepares to exchange MOPP gear. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a site large enough to accommodate entire unit. b. Obtained replacement MOPP gear and decontamination kits/equipment. c. Decontaminated individual equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Decontaminated weapon, helmet, load-bearing equipment, and mask carrier. (2) Placed items on uncontaminated surface. 2. +The unit prepares for decontamination/exchange. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Paired off into buddy teams. b. Unfastened shoulder straps of hood. c. Loosened drawcord on hood and mask. d. Untied trouser leg drawcords, unzipped trouser legs, and rolled cuffs. e. Unfastened or cut laces/fasteners of overboots. 3. +Buddy teams decontaminate the hood and mask. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Buddy 1 decontaminated buddy 2's hood and exposed parts of mask (decontamination wipes for chemical and biological; hot soapy water for radiological). b. Buddy 1 decontaminated own gloves. c. Buddy 1 removed buddy 2's hood. d. Buddy 1 continued decontamination of buddy 2's mask. 4. +Buddy teams remove overgarments and overboots. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Buddy 1 unfastened buddy 2's trouser snaps while covered by jacket. b. Buddy 1 untied buddy 2's jacket drawstring. c. Buddy 1 unfastened buddy 2's velcro at the wrists and front of jacket; unzipped jacket. d. Buddy 1 pulled jacket down and away from buddy 2. e. Buddy 1 laid jacket on the ground, black (uncontaminated) side up. f. Buddy 1 unfastened and unzipped buddy 2's trousers. g. Buddy 1 pulled buddy 2's trousers down to knees. h. Buddy 2 stepped out of trousers and overboots, and onto the black side of jacket. 5. +Buddy 2 removes gloves. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Slid hands partially out of each glove. b. Held hands away from body and let gloves fall to the ground. 6. +Buddy teams don new overgarments, overboots, and gloves. a. Buddy 1 opened buddy 2's packages without touching contents. b. Buddy 2 removed garment without touching the outside of the package. c. Buddy 2 donned clean overgarments, overboots, and gloves. 7. +Buddy teams replace hood. a. Buddy 1 decontaminated own gloves. b. Buddy 1 replaced and secured buddy 2's hood. 8. +Soldiers reverse roles and repeat steps 2 through 7. * 9. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step of troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1013	Decontaminate Yourself and Individual Equipment Using Chemical Decontamination Kits
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
No STP and No MOS	031-503-3009	Lead Mopp Gear Exchange
No STP and No MOS	031-507-1002	Decontaminate Equipment Using ABC-M11 Decontaminating Apparatus

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE PREDEPLOYMENT ACTIVITIES (01-1-0062.01-0NRC)
 FM 1-0(FM 12-6) (AR 220-10) (AR 25-400-2)
 FM 3-35(FM 100-17) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron has received deployment orders. It has the movement directive and POM information message and continuously receives messages from the installation EOC, installation transportation office, deployment support organization, the appropriate headquarters, and subordinate units. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All assigned personnel were administratively prepared for deployment within the time frame specified by the commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +S1 supervises personnel readiness actions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed personnel screening. b. Certified personnel qualified for deployment. c. Recommended the disposition of personnel on temporary duty, attending schools, or in authorized leave status according to commander's guidance. d. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander. e. Coordinated personnel replacement and disposition of excess and nondeployable personnel. f. Identified and reported shortages in critical MOS. g. Redistributed personnel based on the commander's guidance. h. Briefed rear detachment personnel. * 2. +The S1 plans the POM. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed the movement directive, movement plan/order, POM information message, and SOP to identify processing and personnel service requirements. b. Established support requirements. c. Published the POM plan. d. Briefed the command group. e. Coordinated the POM with brigade/regimental S1. * 3. +The S1 coordinates POM requirements.functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated PSC support. b. Coordinated legal support. c. Coordinated medical and dental support. d. Coordinated Red Cross support. e. Coordinated religious support. f. Coordinated with the provost marshal for POV storage. 4. +The S1 section participates in the POM process. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Briefed soldiers on the POM process. b. Issued the POM checklist. c. Reviewed family care plans. d. Reviewed pay elections. e. Assisted soldiers in the completion of postal forms. f. Reviewed the POM checklist for completeness. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. The S1 briefs family members. a. Coordinated installation support. b. Established briefing site and schedules. c. Published a family support packet. d. Provided rear detachment points of contact. 6. PSNCO provides records management. a. Identified personnel records to accompany units. b. Identified records to be transferred to records holding area. c. Provided the S3 with records management input to the rear detachment plan. * 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0300	Coordinate Staff Duties/Responsibilities in Tactical Units
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
No STP and No MOS	011-530-0009	Direct Aviation Staff Functions
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
No STP and No MOS	121-008-1496	Supervise the Implementation of Financial Readiness Actions
No STP and No MOS	121-010-3095	Coordinate Unit Deployment Readiness Activities
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8015	Recommend Administrative and Personnel Actions
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions
No STP and No MOS	152-100-0002	Perform Tasks in a Civilian/Military Workgroup
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: PROCESS NONCOMBATANTS (01-1-1014.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-57(FM 41-10) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)
 FM 3-07(FM 100-20) FM 3-0(FM 100-5) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)
 FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111) FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100) FM 3-07.5(FM 90-29)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance to conduct DC processing. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and a civil operations team have been attached to assist. Higher headquarters and the host nation are operating a DC camp in the area. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The DC processing plan was well defined and addressed all planning considerations. The DC population did not interfere with military operations. Screening and control of the population resulted in no outbreaks of disease. Human suffering was minimized.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 develops the DC processing plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained pertinent information and guidance from the S5. b. Assessed the overall needs of the DC population. c. Coordinated with support elements and agencies tasked to assist in screening, controlling, housing, and caring for the DC population. d. Assessed the impact of DC population control on other/future missions. e. Coordinated with other staff elements to ensure proper planning in terms of personnel, administrative, intelligence, logistics, legal, and civil affairs. f. Briefed the commander and staff on the DC processing plan. g. Issued an OPORD/FRAGO to subordinate units. <p>2. The battalion/squadron conducts noncombatant processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established a CCP. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinated assistance from local authorities to identify and categorize the DC population. (2) Performed the initial screen of DCs. (3) Identified and processed EPW and allied soldiers. (4) Processed and segregated the DC population by gender, family structure, and health. (5) Obtained MP support to assist in crowd and traffic control. b. Established the DC AA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Constructed or obtained shelter for DCs. (2) Provided food and water. (3) Provided medical care. (4) Isolated sick and wounded DCs. (5) Constructed sanitary facilities. (6) Continued the screening and administrative processes. (7) Coordinated host-nation support of the AA. c. Controlled DC movement. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinated MP support for traffic control and convoy security during the movement of DCs. (2) Coordinated logistics support for the movement. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(3) Coordinated host-nation support. (4) Accounted for all DCs upon arrival at the new AA. 3. +The battalion/squadron maintains C ² . a. Conducted periodic inspections of all facilities/AAs. b. Monitored AA operations. c. Directed the activities of subordinate units. d. Develop contingency plans. e. Provided regular status briefings to higher headquarters. * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5002	Prepare a Fragmentary Order
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5004	Prepare a Warning Order
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9023	Enforce Preventive Medicine Measures for Protection Against Disease and Nonbattle Injuries
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0001	Process Captives
STP 21-24-SMCT	191-379-4450	Supervise Handling of Enemy Personnel and Equipment at Unit Level
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN AN ADMINISTRATIVE AND LOGISTICS OPERATIONS CENTER (ALOC) (01-1-1023.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)
FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 4-0(FM 100-10)
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron is conducting tactical operations. The tactical situation requires administrative, resupply, maintenance, evacuation, and weapons systems replacement activities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Administrative and logistics operations were maintained on a continuous basis. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate ALOC support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The S4 in conjunction with the S1 establishes the ALOC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed paragraph 4 of the OPORD and supported the unit plan by providing continuous CSS to accomplish the operation. b. Selected a suitable location for the ALOC. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Located near a helicopter landing site. (2) Ensured adequate communication with subordinate elements. (3) Located near medical and maintenance collection points. (3) Established the ALOC on defensible terrain. (4) Located near routes that lead to subordinate element positions. (5) Ensured minimal restrictions to movement. c. Maintained an accurate operations map. * 2. +The S1 executes personnel functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared personnel elements of orders and plans. b. Supervised preparation of reports. c. Collected and processed DA Form 1155 (Witness Statement on Individual) and DA Form 1156 (Casualty Feeder Report). d. Informed subordinate elements of incoming replacements. e. Planned and coordinated personnel and administrative services support. e. Coordinated transportation for the replacements to the receiving unit. f. Provided personnel information to the TOC, as appropriate. g. Coordinated with the S4 for disposition of casualties. * 3. +The S4 executes logistics functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Executed overall supervision of ALOC operations. b. Maintained current logistics and personnel estimates in coordination with the S1. c. Prepared logistics elements of orders and plans. d. Supervised preparation of reports. e. Planned and coordinated supply, services, and maintenance support. f. Provided logistics information to the TOC, as appropriate. g. Maintained status of all vehicles and aircraft. * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System-Aviation (ULLS-A)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0010	Coordinate Supply Functions with Supply Support Activities (SSA)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0).
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0022	Supervise Aircraft Readiness Reporting
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S2 SECTION

TASK: MAINTAIN ISOLATED PERSONNEL REPORT (ISOPREP) DATABASE (01-1-1031.01-0NRC)
(JOINT PUB 3-50.21) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. ISOPREP databases have been completed by unit personnel and forwarded to the S2. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S2 maintained current ISOPREP data on 100 percent of assigned and attached personnel. The ISOPREP database was authenticated prior to every mission. ISOPREP data was transmitted, using secure means, to the RCC within the time frame prescribed by the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The S2 reviews the ISOPREP database (DD Form 1833, Isolated Personnel Report). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a completed DD Form 1833 for each individual. b. Ensured that a current photograph (front and profile view) was included in each file. 		
2. +The S2 section transmits, when appropriate, ISOPREP data using secure voice or fax to the RCC.		
3. +The S2 coordinates authentication procedures to be used during unit recovery operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured isolated personnel were not asked to provide their full authentication number in the clear. b. Provided only one statement per mission when using survivor authentication statement from the ISOPREP database. 		
4. +The S2 compiles a list of personnel assigned to each mission. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the S3 section. b. Ensured the security and confidentiality of all ISOPREP records. 		
* 5. Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
STP 21-24-SMCT	301-348-6001	Protect Classified Information and Materials
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1051	Enforce Personnel Security Policies

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: PERFORM STRENGTH MANAGEMENT (01-1-1102.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 3-04(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is operational and is located at the ALOC. The C² strength reporting system is in effect. Reports are received daily from subordinate units. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Reports were forwarded within the prescribed time limits specified in the unit SOP. There were no discrepancies between reported personnel strength and actual number of personnel accounted for or present for duty.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The S1 section performs unit strength accounting. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Received unit strength reports from subordinate units. Verified accuracy of reports using tactical reports, battalion/squadron aid station reports, and other sources of information. Determined critical shortages by MOS and grade. Determined critical MOS replacement requirements and priorities. Coordinated with the S1 of units providing attachments. Prepared a consolidated battalion/squadron personnel status report. Forwarded the consolidated report to the brigade/regimental S1 strength management section, as required by the SOP. Briefed the commander and staff daily. 		
* 2. +The S1 section prepares the PPR. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Ensured the timely receipt of accurate personnel report input for all assigned, attached, and reporting units. Prepared the PPR. Assigned the appropriate security classification to the report. Prepared additional annexes to the report, as necessary. Submitted the PPR to higher headquarters according to the unit SOP. 		
* 3. +The S1 maintains unit strength. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Requested, received, and assigned replacement personnel. Recommended cross-leveling actions to the commander. 		
* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/ Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: CONDUCT REPLACEMENT OPERATIONS (01-1-1103.01-0NRC)
FM 1-0(FM 12-6) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is located at the ALOC. The S1 section is operational. The C² strength reporting system is in effect. The unit is equipped with the TACCS. Replacements arrive with a full issue of equipment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Replacements are processed and transported to assigned units within 6 hours of their arrival and according to the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The PAC conducts administrative processing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed assignment orders. b. Welcomed soldiers to the unit. c. Assigned soldiers to units according to commander's priorities. d. Signed soldiers in on DA Forms 647 (Personnel Register). e. Collected medical and dental records. f. Turned in medical and dental records to the battalion/squadron/supporting aid station. g. Added names to the battle roster. h. Prepared the SIDPERS input. i. Prepared DA Form 3955 (Change of Address and Directory Card). j. Forwarded DA Form 3955 to servicing postal activity. 		
2. +The S1 conducts replacement coordination with supporting and supported units. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Notified subordinate units. b. Coordinated with the S4 for transportation support. c. Coordinated with the S4 for personnel and weapons systems replacement. d. Coordinated with the S4 regarding equipment issue, feeding, and rest areas. 		
* 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8001	Report Casualties
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: CONDUCT CASUALTY REPORTING (01-1-1104.01-0NRC)

FM 4-0(FM 100-10)
(JOINT PUB 3-50.21)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is operational and located at the ALOC. Subordinate units have incurred simulated casualties and are reporting by-name casualties and SIDPERS line numbers. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S1 section reported (or simulated reporting) casualties with 100-percent accuracy to the supporting PSC or equivalent agency within 36 hours after the incident. The S1 reported casualties to the commander and staff according to the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S1 or PSNCO monitors the by name casualty reporting system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed subordinate units' by name casualty reports for completeness and accuracy. b. Received data from multiple sources to verify the status of soldiers. c. Ensured that units required soldiers and civilians to carry DA Form 1155. <p>2. +The S1 section reports casualty information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received all casualty supporting documents DA Forms 1155 and 1156 from reporting units. b. Compared actual casualty data with casualty projections. c. Prepared the battalion/squadron consolidated casualty report. d. Forwarded consolidated casualty data to the supporting S1/G1/AG PSC. e. Posted information to the master casualty log. f. Briefed the S1 or PSNCO on the status of subordinate unit casualty reports. g. Managed the casualty care file for all missing and evacuated soldiers. h. Briefed the commander and staff on casualty status and return-to-duty personnel. i. Notified the commander immediately of critical losses by MOS and grade, and the impact of those losses on the operation. j. Prepared letters of sympathy and forwarded them through brigade/regiment to the PSC. k. Managed the casualty card file for all missing and evacuated soldiers. <p>3. The S1 section maintains interface with other agencies.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted liaison with medical, law enforcement, intelligence, and graves registration activities. b. Provided update to the post locator. <p>* 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8001	Report Casualties
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE OTHER PERSONNEL AND ADMINISTRATIVE SERVICES (01-1-1105.01-0NRC)
 FM 1-0(FM 12-6) (AR 27-10) (DA PAM 600-8)
 FM 4-0(FM 100-10) FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The S1 section is located at ALOC. CSS facilities and personnel are available to provide health, religious, recreational, and personal affairs support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Good order, discipline, and morale were not adversely affected by inadequate services. Assigned and attached soldiers were promoted, received awards, and were provided other services within required time frames as a result of proper administrative services.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The S1 section processes recommendations for promotion. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified the soldier's time in grade and service requirements. b. Forwarded a list of eligible soldiers to subordinate units. c. Processed approved promotions according to the unit SOP. d. Verified proper distribution of promotion orders—individual, personnel, and finance. 2. +The S1 section administers the awards program. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Solicited recommendations for awards and reviewed recommendations. b. Reviewed and authenticated DA Form 638 (Recommendation for Award). c. Processed approved awards according to the unit SOP. d. Verified proper distribution of orders for awards. 3. +The S1 section processes other personnel and finance actions and SIDPERS transactions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed changes for accuracy and completeness. b. Prepared SIDPERS input. c. Obtained required signatures for personnel actions. d. Forwarded actions according to the unit SOP. e. Notified the service member upon approval or disapproval. f. Initiated further command actions when required. 4. The S1 section processes evaluation reports. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested evaluation report shells from the S1/G1. b. Processed officer and enlisted efficiency reports according to the unit SOP. 5. +The S1 section provides mail services. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Picked up mail from the direct support postal activity or consolidated mailroom. b. Provided appropriate security for all mail until delivered to soldiers or returned to supporting postal facility. c. Delivered mail to addressees as soon as the tactical situation permitted and returned undeliverable mail. 6. The S1 section legal specialist provides legal support. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the SJA for personal legal assistance to unit personnel. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Prepared judicial and nonjudicial proceedings documents. c. Processed all appeals.</p> <p>7. The S1 section performs common administrative functions. a. Processed DA Form 31 (Request and Authority for Leave) and annotated DA Form 4179-R (Leave Control Log). b. Maintained duty rosters. c. Prepared military correspondence. d. Maintained required functional files. e. Prepared and submitted recurring reports outlined in the unit SOP. f. Maintained required regulations and SOPs. g. Maintained blank forms and references required to perform administrative functions.</p> <p>* 8. +The S1 coordinates with the brigade/regimental S1 for medical and dental support. a. Identified specific support requirements. b. Determined the number of personnel to be supported. c. Identified special equipment requirements.</p> <p>* 9. The S1 coordinates with chaplain for support. a. Specified location of unit requesting services. b. Determined the type of services needed. c. Determined the time available to the unit for services and counseling. d. Identified casualties requiring special ministering. e. Identified refugees and detainees requiring ministering.</p> <p>*10. The S1 provides morale support or coordinates for support from division G1 or brigade/regimental S1. a. Requested satellite phone link in combat zone to facilitate soldiers' communication with home and families. b. Arranged for USO-related attractions that could be attended by unit soldiers. c. Coordinated with the division G1 for audiovisual entertainment. d. Obtained recreational equipment. e. Coordinated R&R, leave, and other morale activities when the unit left combat. f. Coordinated for mobile PX support in the unit AAs.</p> <p>*11. The S1 provides morale and welfare report to the commander. a. Coordinated with the SJA and legal clerk for UCMJ status. b. Reviewed AWOL and desertion rates for each subordinate unit. c. Obtained crime and straggler rates from division G1 or brigade/regimental S1. d. Reviewed sick call and stress casualty rate from battalion/squadron surgeon. e. Reported on awards and promotions. f. Reported on morale enhancing activities. g. Determined the overall status of unit morale.</p> <p>*12. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1500	Prepare Military Correspondence
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8015	Recommend Administrative and Personnel Actions
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8020	Supervise Unit Personnel and Administration Functions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH AND COORDINATE SECURITY OF TEMPORARY ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR (EPW) COLLECTION POINT (01-1-1107.01-0NRC)
FM 3-19.40(FM 19-40) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. OPFOR EPWs have been captured or have surrendered. The S3 has coordinated with the staff sections and tasked units for a security force. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no violations of prisoners' rights under international law. No prisoners were allowed to escape due to improper handling procedures. Prisoners were evacuated within the time lines specified by higher headquarters.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The S4 section, with security force augmentation, establishes a temporary EPW collection point. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected an area that: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Protected EPWs from the dangers of the battlefield. (2) Was away from likely avenues of approach. (3) Had adequate fields of observation for security personnel. (4) Was adequately displaced from C² elements and key logistics facilities. b. Used barrier material, existing structures, and/or terrain obstacles to contain EPWs. 2. +The security force maintains segregation of EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Segregated EPWs by rank, sex, nationality, and ideology. b. Segregated deserters and civilians. 3. +The security force maintains silence among EPWs and prevents all communications between EPWs with emphasis on the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prevented EPW leaders from giving orders. b. Prevented EPWs from planning escapes. 4. +The security force safeguards EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Protected EPWs from unnecessary danger. b. Treated EPWs humanely. c. Provided EPWs with available food, water, and medical attention, as required. 5. +The S4 section coordinates with higher headquarters for the evacuation of EPWs. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated EPW issues with the detailed judge advocate or servicing Staff Judge Advocate's office. b. Coordinated for transportation assets, as required. c. Coordinated movement and transfer of EPWs. * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader, or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0001	Process Captives
STP 21-24-SMCT	191-379-4450	Supervise Handling of Enemy Personnel and Equipment at Unit Level
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE THE REQUISITION, ACQUISITION, AND DISTRIBUTION OF SUPPLIES AND EQUIPMENT (01-1-1402.01-0NRC)

FM 4-0(FM 100-10)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the ALOC are operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. CSS assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S4 verified and reported the status of supplies and equipment daily. The unit did not fail to accomplish assigned missions because of improper requisition, acquisition, or distribution of supplies and equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The S4 section maintains a current status of supplies. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received and maintained status reports from subordinate units of supplies on hand. b. Verified the accuracy of reports and records. 2. +The S4 section determines supply requirements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated current and future operations with other staff sections. b. Identified and allocated resources on hand. 3. +The S4 section coordinates requisition procedures. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed higher headquarters OPORD/FRAGO and unit SOPs that describe requisition procedures. b. Identified the disposition and location of CSS assets. c. Disseminated and monitored subordinate unit requisition procedures. 4. +The S4 section coordinates the acquisition, distribution, and accountability of supplies and equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented acquisition and distribution procedures according to unit SOP. b. Maintained property accountability documentation. c. Identified priority of resupply and support. d. Reviewed logistics estimate to determine if appropriate quantities of critical supplies were available to support the tactical mission. e. Assisted the S3 with logistics site selection in support of the tactical plan. f. Maintained situational awareness of maintenance and field service operations. g. Coordinated the procurement of supplies from local civilians (host nation). h. Ensured the turn-in of equipment/end items rendered unusable due to battle damage. * 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System-Aviation (ULLS-A)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0).
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0026	Coordinate With Corpus Christi Army Depot (CCAD)
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION

TASK: INFORM THE COMMANDER OF EQUIPMENT READINESS STATUS (01-1-1403.01-0NRC)
 (DA PAM 738-750) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP and the ALOC are operational and the staff sections are functioning. CSS assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S4 section kept a continuous status of battalion/squadron equipment. The S4 accurately briefed the commander and other staff sections on the status of equipment and its impact on future operations.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The S4 section determines the equipment readiness status. a. Received and maintained status reports from subordinate units. b. Verified the accuracy of reports and records. 2. +The S4 section maintains a current status of equipment readiness. a. Maintained a consolidated status of battalion/squadron weapons and combat equipment. b. Monitored maintenance operations, analyzed and evaluated equipment status to determine impact on current and future operations. c. Provided the commander and staff with an evaluation of the maintenance situation and its impact on current and future operations. 3. +The S4 section acts to improve the equipment readiness status. a. Coordinated with the S3, and recommended realignment of maintenance priorities. b. Coordinated battalion/squadron maintenance priorities with the support organization commander and staff. c. Coordinated weapon system replacement operations with the battalion/squadron executive officer, the brigade/regimental S4, and the support organization staff. * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0022	Supervise Aircraft Readiness Reporting
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION

TASK: PLAN AND COORDINATE EXTERNAL TRANSPORTATION ASSETS FOR MOVEMENT OF PERSONNEL, SUPPLIES, AND EQUIPMENT (01-1-1405.01-0NRC)
FM 4-0(FM 100-10) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has published an OPORD/FRAGO. CSS assets are available. External transportation assets are needed to support missions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The proper type and number of transportation assets were available as a result of accurate staff assessments by the S4. Supporting units were given adequate time to plan and prepare for the missions because of timely coordination by the S4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The S4 determines transportation requirements. a. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3 and other staff sections. b. Analyzed the capabilities of available organic transportation assets. c. Determined external transportation requirements. * 2. +The S4 requests and allocates external transportation assets. a. Coordinated external transportation assets with the support organization. b. Received and allocated external transportation assets. c. Prepared movement plans and orders. d. Recommended to the commander procedures for controlling transportation assets and the priority of movement for subordinate units. * 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0003	Plan Unit Movement

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE/PROVIDE OTHER LOGISTICAL SERVICES (01-1-1406.01-0NRC)
FM 4-0(FM 100-10) FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The battalion/squadron has published an OPORD/FRAGO. CSS assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Mission accomplishment was enhanced by adequate coordination of logistics services.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The S4 section plans and coordinates the construction and maintenance of facilities, except fortifications and signal facilities. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the situation and the commander's intent. b. Coordinated with engineers for assets to perform construction. c. Evaluated and coordinated the use of local civilians, if available and required. d. Provided real property control. e. Coordinated with and provided priorities to engineer assets and/or local civilian agencies. 2. +The S4 section coordinates and provides personnel services, to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Bath and laundry services. b. Clothing exchange. * 3. +The S4 coordinates and augments GRREG functions. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received information and intelligence on area of search, and analyzed the factors of METT-TC. b. Issued instructions to subordinate units to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) NBC reconnaissance and security area. (2) Chaplain support. (3) GRREG unit augmentation. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Search. (b) Recovery. (c) Burial and/or transport of remains. c. Prepared DD Form 565 (Statement of Recognition of Deceased) and DD Form 567 (Record of Search and Recovery). d. Secured personal effects to remains. e. Completed emergency burial data. f. Prepared a DD Form 551 (Record of Interment). * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	101-515-0002	Plan Mortuary Affairs Support Functions

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CONDUCT DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS (01-2-0108.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) (JOINT PUB 3-50.21)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit performed recovery procedures according to the unit SOP and FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111). Search did not compromise the location of isolated personnel.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +Unit aircraft reports it is down, or another aircraft is down. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Downed aircrew initiated distress call. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Initiated precontact transmission sequence followed by a listening period. (2) Did not divulge exact location, condition, or number in party unless certain of authenticity of friendly forces, and then only if requested. b. Other unit aircrew relayed distress. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reported call sign of downed aircraft. (2) Reported location of downed aircraft. (3) Reported whether downed airmen were alive and under surveillance or in radio contact. (4) Reported physical condition of downed airmen. (5) Reported status of air and ground activity. 2. +Unit notifies higher headquarter of downed aircraft. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Included information that would not be readily available to the on-site commander b. Included other friendly forces operating in area, or new developments in tactical situation. c. Forwarded information from ISOPREP packets (DD Form 1833), type and amount of survival equipment, and evasion plan of action. * 3. +Unit commander decides if, when, and how to execute recovery. 4. +Unit conducts recovery mission. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requested outside resources, as required. b. Organized task force of recovery aircraft, armed aircraft, and security force. c. Disseminated ISOPREP information. d. Conducted search. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Selected aerial or ground search procedure for isolated personnel (location unknown). (2) Selected method of search procedure for isolated personnel. (3) Contacted isolated personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Authenticated personal identification, ISOPREP information, and CSAR code words according to unit CSAR SOP. (b) Established 360 degrees of security. (c) Ensured elements of the task force did not mass, encroach upon, overfly, or continue to circle the recovery site. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Conducted extraction of personnel, followed by recovery of equipment. (5) Remained in contact with higher headquarters, immediately alerted higher commander of successful/unsuccessful extraction. * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A or TPC
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1046	Initiate Overdue Aircraft Procedures
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1059	Operate the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0026	Coordinate Combat Search and Rescue (CSAR) Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1302	Employ Downed Aircraft Recovery Team Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0035	Supervise Aircraft Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1052	Protect Classified Information and Material

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: PREPARE UNIT FOR DEPLOYMENT (01-2-0702.01-0NRC)

FM 3-35(FM 100-17)	(AR 220-10)	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)
FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	(DOD 4500.9-R, Part III)
FM 4-01.12(FM 55-20)	FM 4-01.9(FM 55-9)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron has received deployment notification and initiated the deployment plan according to the unit SOP. The unit may be in garrison or tactically deployed at the time of notification. The staff has received the deployment plan and commander's guidance and is prepared to commence deployment processing. The battalion/squadron has an approved early deployment readiness exercise SOP. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company/troop will recall all personnel with CTA-50 equipment within the time frame specified in the battalion/squadron SOP. Equipment will be inventoried and configured for movement according to the SOP within the time constraints specified in deployment plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. + The company/troop assembles personnel for deployment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Received deployment notification. b. Recalled all personnel according to the SOP. c. Followed notification hour (N-hour) sequence of the deployment plan. d. Reported personnel strength to the S1. e. Coordinated with the S1 section for administrative processing for deployment according to the unit SOP and developed plan for filling personnel shortages. f. Briefed personnel to the maximum extent possible. g. Conducted personal equipment inventories and issued shortages of equipment. h. Coordinated with the rear detachment commander for the security of facilities and nondeploying equipment. 2. + The company/troop prepares vehicles and equipment for movement. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected all vehicles and equipment for serviceability. b. Prepared all vehicles and equipment for movement. c. Inventoried and loaded equipment according to approved load plans. d. Submitted equipment shortages to the S4. e. Coordinated for secure transportation of weapons, ammunition, and pyrotechnics. 3. + The company/troop prepares aircraft for deployment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted preflight inspections according to the unit SOP. b. Coordinated the emergency repair of ground transportation, or replacement of nonflyable aircraft. c. Loaded equipment into aircraft according to approved load plans. 4. + The company/troop stages equipment and personnel for deployment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved vehicles, personnel, and equipment to the staging area. b. Conducted premission planning and repositioned aircraft to staging area, if applicable. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. + The company/troop deploys aircraft, personnel, and equipment. NOTE: Units will deploy by rail, ground, ship, USAF aircraft, or self-deploy. Actual deployment procedures will be coordinated based upon mission and mode of deployment.		
* 6. + Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0028	Plan Aviation Deployment
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
No STP and No MOS	121-010-3095	Coordinate Unit Deployment Readiness Activities
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0002	Prepare for Unit Movement
No STP and No MOS	551-88N-0004	Coordinate Unit Movement

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: PERFORM FIELD SANITATION (01-2-0715.01-0NRC)
FM 4-25.12(FM 21-10-1) (AR 40-5)

FM 4-25.10(FM 21-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated combat environment. The unit does not have access to permanent sanitation, mess, or water facilities. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Any degradation of unit OPTEMPO is not a result of poor health or illness due to inadequate field sanitation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. The commander appoints a FST. 2. + FST monitors field sanitation. a. Inspected water for potability. b. Inspected prescribed load of water purification materials. c. Inspected use of protective measures against disease carrying organisms, such as rodents and insects. d. Enforced personal hygiene measures. e. Inspected latrines and urinals. f. Inspected hand-washing facilities. g. Inspected waste disposal procedures. h. Inspected food transport, maintenance, preparation, and service. i. Enforced heat, cold, and noise prevention measures. 3. + FST provides information on field sanitation status. a. Determined deficiencies. b. Reported deficiencies. c. Provided recommendations, and training. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9023	Enforce Preventive Medicine Measures for Protection Against Disease and Nonbattle Injuries

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMPANY

TASK: CONDUCT CH-47 FORWARD AREA REFUELING EQUIPMENT (CFARE) OPERATIONS (01-2-1335.01-0NRC)

(TM 55-1520-240-10)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The requirement exists to refuel and/or rearm operational aircraft at other than an established FARP. The company has received an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct FARE operations. Mission aircraft may or may not be equipped with the HICHS. The ERFS is installed and operational. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company established the CH-47D FARP site within the time constraints established in the OPORD/FRAGO. There are no accidents or fires caused by negligent safety precautions or poor refuel/rearm procedures. The supported unit is refueled and/or rearmed within the time constraints imposed by mission requirements.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures. * 2. +The AMC conducts required coordination. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the battalion POL section for the required personnel and equipment. b. Coordinated with the supported unit (including Class III/V platoon, if appropriate) for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Location of the rapid tactical rearming/refueling site, and for an alternate site, if required. (2) Expected time for link up and for refueling/rearming to commence. (3) Coordination measures to be used for link up. (4) Procedures to be used for rearming/refueling. (5) Types and quantities of ammunition to be delivered. (6) Security measures to be employed during rearming/refueling. (7) Emergency procedures for accident, fire, or enemy attack during rearming/refueling. (8) Dispersal plan. c. Briefed personnel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Reviewed rearming/refueling procedures. (2) Reviewed security plan. (3) Reviewed emergency procedures. (4) Reviewed safety procedures. (5) Conducted aircrew mission briefing. 3. +The unit conducts the operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted an aerial passage of lines or crossed line of departure/line of contact, if required, in the concept of the operation. b. Used proper terrain flight techniques to avoid detection. c. Effected link up with supported unit. d. Occupied the site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Established local security. (2) Assembled FARE. (3) Established refueling points. (4) Established rearming point. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Refueled and/or rearmed supported unit aircraft. f. Secured all refuse, unused ammunition, equipment, and personnel. g. Returned to AA or continued operations, as directed. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1000	PARTICIPATE IN A CREW MISSION BRIEFING (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1016	PERFORM INTERNAL LOAD OPERATIONS (CH-47D)
	011-240-1070	PERFORM EMERGENCY PROCEDURES (CH-47D/F)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	CONDUCT FORWARD ARMING REFUELING POINT (FARP) OPERATIONS
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	PARTICIPATE IN THE MILITARY DECISION MAKING PROCESS
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	CONDUCT OPERATIONS MISSIONS BRIEFING/DEBRIEFING
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	PERFORM LOGISTICS STAFF DUTIES/ RESPONSIBILITIES
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	PERFORM DUTIES OF AVIATION LIAISON OFFICER

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMPANY

TASK: PERFORM AERIAL MOVEMENT OF HAZARDOUS CARGO (01-2-1336.01-0NRC)
 (AR 95-27) (AR 95-1) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)
 FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113) (TM 38-250) (TM 55-1520-240-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO, and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. With or without the HICHS, the unit is prepared to transport a variety of hazardous/dangerous cargo to or from a field site. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Hazardous/dangerous materials were inspected, loaded, secured, and transported within the mission time constraints without injury or damage to personnel or equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The company commander conducts troop-leading procedures. 2. The unit conducts required coordination for the transport of hazardous/dangerous cargo. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Advised supported unit on load configurations. b. Checked load configuration for compatibility. c. Informed flight crew of load type and configuration. 3. +Flight crew inspects load for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Leakage. b. Security of loads to pallets if HICHS was used. c. Security of internal loads to vehicles. d. No metal to metal contact on 5-gallon cans that were not secured to racks. e. No chains used to secure 55-gallon fuel drums. 4. +Flight crew secures the load. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Used correct tie-down techniques for forward and lateral security. b. Secured 463L or standard pallets when HICHS is installed. * 5. PIC ensures all crewmembers have protective masks readily available, during flight, when carrying toxic material. * 6. PIC ensures flight plan lists hazardous cargo and airfield/airport is notified 30 minutes before landing, if diverted from field site. * 7. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1000	PARTICIPATE IN A CREW MISSION BRIEFING (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1016	PERFORM INTERNAL LOAD OPERATIONS (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	PERFORM DUTIES OF AVIATION LIAISON OFFICER
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	PROTECT YOURSELF FROM NBC INJURY/CONTAMINATION WITH THE APPROPRIATE MISSION-ORIENTED PROTECTIVE POSTURE (MOPP) GEAR
STP 21-24-SMCT	850-001-3001	CONTROL MISSION SAFETY HAZARDS

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMPANY

TASK: CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATION (CASEVAC) OPERATIONS (01-2-1360.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the unit commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The aviation unit provided timely, efficient aerial casualty evacuation. The unit performed operations according to OPORD/FRAGO, SOP, applicable technical manuals, regulations, directives, safety procedures, and commander's guidance. The unit provided properly equipped aircraft to the specified location at the specified time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander conducts troop leading procedures. * 2. +The AMC prepares for the mission, including— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained locations of PZs, LZs, and medical treatment facilities. b. Determined number of patients by type (litter or ambulatory). c. Determined special equipment or aircraft configuration requirements. 3. +The unit moves to the supported unit location. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Departed at the specified time. b. Observed appropriate control measures. c. Used appropriate movement techniques. d. Used appropriate terrain flight techniques. e. Observed radio communications restrictions, as appropriate. f. Contacted PZ control authority to finalize evacuation instructions, if tactically appropriate. 4. +The aircrews supervise loading. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed support personnel during the loading of casualties. b. Ensured that support personnel followed prescribed safety procedures while working around aircraft. * 5. The AMC provides minimum essential information to the medical treatment facility. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Gave the estimated time of arrival. b. Gave the number of patients by type (litter or ambulatory). c. Identified patients' types of wounds, injuries, or illnesses. d. Gave the patients' category—urgent, priority, or routine—when known. * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A or TPC
STP 1-93C1-SM	011-143-0008	Conduct Landing Zone/Pick Up Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1016	Perform Internal Load Operations (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1020	Prepare Aircraft for Mission (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1016	Perform Internal Load Operations (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
TROOP HEADQUARTERS

TASK: COORDINATE UNIT-LEVEL SUPPLY OPERATIONS (01-2-2054.01-0NRC)
FM 4-20.05(FM 10-27-4) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP and the ALOC are operational and reports are being received through normal channels. CSS assets are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The combat effectiveness of the company/troop was not degraded as a result of poor supply and equipment acquisition procedures. All unit equipment and supplies were properly accounted for according to the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. The 1SG (or designated personnel) maintains a current status of supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained status of supplies on hand. b. Verified the accuracy of reports and records. 		
2. The 1SG (or designated personnel) determines supply requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated current and future operations with the CO. b. Identified and allocated resources on hand. 		
3. The 1SG (or designated personnel) coordinates requisitions with the supply sergeant. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidated supply requests from platoons. b. Ensured proper accountability of supplies and equipment according to unit SOP. c. Ensured requests were submitted to the S4. 		
* 4. The company commander implements procedures for supply and equipment distribution and accountability. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that accountability and security of supplies and equipment were adequate. b. Redistributed supplies and equipment to support tactical operations. c. Ensured proper supervision of the distribution of weapons, munitions (including basic load) and pyrotechnics according to unit SOP. 		
* 5. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0002	Supervise Supply Activities in a Unit
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0003	Supervise Supply Operations at the Company Level

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY HEADQUARTERS
TROOP HEADQUARTERS

TASK: PERFORM COMPANY/TROOP STRENGTH MANAGEMENT (01-2-2064.01-0NRC)
(TC 12-16) FM 1-0(FM 12-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. The company/troop has sustained simulated casualties and received replacements. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel SITREP is forwarded without errors. Replacement personnel are processed within 6 hours of arrival at the company/troop CP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The 1SG collects strength information from platoons. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified strength data. b. Corrected and completed data. 2. The 1SG processes strength information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidated strength data. b. Logged SITREP and other personnel information. c. Determined critical shortages and cross-levels requirements. d. Updated the battle roster. e. Prepared strength reports. 3. The 1SG disseminates strength information. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Forwarded personnel SITREP, DA Forms 1155 and 1156, to the S1. b. Briefed platoons on projected replacements. 4. The 1SG processes replacements. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted unit welcome and orientation briefings. b. Inspected critical clothing and equipment. c. Coordinated for the issue of needed items. d. Arranged for billeting and messing. e. Conducted personnel briefings on— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Unit mission and tactical situation. (2) Policies and procedures. * 5. + The Commander performs strength management. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified critical personnel. b. Cross-leveled critical personnel. c. Reviewed and approved strength reports. d. Briefed higher headquarters on unit strength status. * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0003	Supervise Supply Operations at the Company Level
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8011	Supervise Wartime Strength Accounting

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Ensured that aircrew members, supporting personnel, and equipment were accounted for prior to departing LZ.		
* 7. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0404	Manage a Flight Dispatch Branch
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1059	Operate the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3010	Manage Notice to Airmen (NOTAM)
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
STP 1-93C1-SM	011-143-0008	Conduct Landing Zone/Pick Up Zone (LZ/PZ) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1000	Participate in a Crew Mission Briefing (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1002	Conduct a Passenger Briefing (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1016	Perform Internal Load Operations (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-237-1054	Select Landing Zone/Pick-Up Zone/Holding Area (UH-60)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1000	Participate in a Crew Mission Briefing (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1016	Perform Internal Load Operations (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1054	Select Landing Zone/Pick-Up Zone/Holding Area (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AARs

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMPANY

TASK: CONDUCT AIR MOVEMENT OF NUCLEAR WEAPONS (01-2-5106.01-0NRC)
 FM 4-01.220(FM 55-220) (AR 50-5) FM 4-01.384(FM 55-384)
 (AR 95-1) (AR 50-6) (TM 38-250)
 FM 4-06.450(FM 55-450-2) (TC 3-15)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO, and the commander's guidance. Reports are being received through normal channels. The unit is required to transport nuclear weapons from a forward resupply position to a firing position. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The unit completed the loading, tie-down, movement, and unloading of nuclear weapons within the mission time constraints without injury or damage to personnel or equipment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The company commander conducts troop leading procedures. * 2. +The company commander conducts special coordination for the movement of nuclear weapons. a. Identified nuclear surety crews and backup aircraft. b. Coordinated with designated security elements. c. Ensured that a courier—officer or noncommissioned officer—for each movement was appointed in writing by the unit owning the weapon. 3. +The unit conducts the movement of nuclear weapons. a. Supervised the movement and ensured that nuclear safety and explosive compatibility standards were met. b. Maintained radio contact with security elements capable of responding to an assistance request. c. Supervised the loading and unloading of weapons. (1) Ensured that proper weapons tie-down procedures were followed. (2) Ensured that actions were performed according to established time constraints. d. Crew maintained two-man control when loading, transporting, and unloading munitions. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

“*” indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1000	Participate in a Crew Mission Briefing (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-240-1016	Perform Internal Load Operations (CH-47D)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/ Contamination with the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1018	React to a Nuclear Hazard or Attack
STP 21-24-SMCT	850-001-3001	Control Mission Safety Hazards

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0004	Supervise the Use of Aviation Maintenance Publications
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0006	Supervise the Aviation Maintenance Safety Program
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0022	Supervise Aircraft Readiness Reporting
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0023	Perform the Duties of an Aviation Maintenance Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0028	Compute Maintenance Man-Hour Estimates
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records
No STP and No MOS	091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: AVUM COMPANY
AVUM PLATOON

TASK: MAINTAIN QUALITY CONTROL OF PROGRAMS AND WORK COMPLETED BY
MAINTENANCE AND SHOP SECTIONS (01-2-7012.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (TB 43-0106) (TB 43-180)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the PC section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All inspections are conducted to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and internal operating procedures. Oil analysis and calibration programs are enforced according to applicable publications.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Aircraft maintenance technician/QC supervisor supervises operations of the QC section.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed QC inspections. b. Enforced shop safety standards. c. Monitored oil analysis program for compliance with TB 43-0106. d. Monitored calibration program for compliance with TB 43-180. e. Coordinated with PC section concerning final approval of performed maintenance. f. Provided technical assistance to supported units. g. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to company headquarters. <p>2. Quality control section inspects aircraft maintenance and shop procedures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed required inspections of aircraft, aircraft components, and related systems. b. Performed shop and flight line safety inspections according to applicable publications. c. Monitored MWOs to ensure proper application. d. Maintained aircraft time-change component schedules for company and operational readiness float aircraft. e. Provided PC section with component-change requirements for aircraft. f. Provided technical assistance during maintenance test flights and maintenance operational checks. g. Inspected equipment records for accuracy. h. Inspected reference library for current and applicable publications. i. Updated standard inspection procedures for new techniques and equipment for each shop. <p>3. QC section maintains technical publications.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established a publication library for all applicable technical publications. b. Posted changes to publications. c. Prepared recommended changes to publications. <p>4. QC section manages the AOAP within the unit.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established an oil analysis log. b. Monitored oil sample procedures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Submitted oil samples to oil analysis laboratory. d. Acted on oil analysis laboratory recommendations. e. Advised the chain-of-command of any adverse consequences in the AOAP. 5. Quality control section manages calibration program within the company. a. Established procedures for calibration support. b. Monitored all TMDE for calibration requirements. c. Monitored the maintenance request register for TMDE current status. * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C). NOTE: * INDICATES A LEADER TASK STEP.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0004	Supervise the Use of Aviation Maintenance Publications
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0006	Supervise the Aviation Maintenance Safety Program
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0014	Supervise the Operational Readiness Float Account (Automated)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0024	Supervise Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0038	Supervise the Test, Measurement, and Diagnostic Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0039	Supervise the Use and Care of Precision Measuring and Common Tools`
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0044	Monitor the Use of Different Types of Fuel and Oil Products Used in Army Aviation
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0049	Supervise the Use of Supply Publications

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: AVUM COMPANY
AVUM PLATOON

TASK: PERFORM HELICOPTER SYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS (01-2-7013.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (DA PAM 600-8) (DA PAM 738-751)
(STP 21-II-MQS)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the PC section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. An automated or manual system may be used. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All maintenance is completed and inspections are performed to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The commander/leader supervises maintenance operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established internal maintenance control system. b. Monitored internal maintenance control system. c. Enforced shop safety programs and procedures. d. Monitored maintenance of reference library publications. e. Conducted maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights. f. Coordinated with PC and QC sections on status and quality of maintenance being performed. g. Monitored PLL. <p>2. Company/Platoon headquarters control work flow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a maintenance request register. b. Maintained a balanced work flow. c. Maintained reference library. d. Maintained organic aircraft. e. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment. f. Forwarded maintenance status reports to the PC section. g. Maintained PLL. h. Monitored request for repair parts/components. i. Forwarded personnel and equipment status. <p>3. Helicopter repair sections perform aircraft maintenance and inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed required inspections. b. Repaired or replaced aircraft components and related systems. c. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment. d. Maintained tool kits, tool sets, and test equipment. e. Provided feedback on internal maintenance control system. f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status. <p>* 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0004	Supervise the Use of Aviation Maintenance Publications
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0006	Supervise the Aviation Maintenance Safety Program
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System-Aviation (ULLS-A)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0010	Coordinate Supply Functions With Supply Support Activities (SSA)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0020	Supervise Aircraft Component Replacement
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0021	Supervise Aircraft Unscheduled Maintenance
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0023	Perform the Duties of an Aviation Maintenance Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0024	Supervise Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0049	Supervise the Use of Supply Publications
No STP and No MOS	091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: AVUM COMPANY
AVUM PLATOON

TASK: PERFORM HELICOPTER SUBSYSTEM REPAIRS AND INSPECTIONS (01-2-7014.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (DA PAM 600-8) (DA PAM 738-751)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the PC section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All maintenance and inspections are performed to the standards stated in applicable technical publications and the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. Commander/leader supervises maintenance operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established internal maintenance control system. b. Monitored internal maintenance control system. c. Enforced shop safety programs and procedures. d. Monitored maintenance of reference library. e. Conducted maintenance operational checks and maintenance test flights. f. Coordinated with PC section on status and quality of maintenance being performed. g. Assembled maintenance teams and repair parts. <p>2. Company/Platoon headquarters control work flow.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained a maintenance request register. b. Maintained a balanced work flow. c. Maintained reference library. d. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment. e. Forwarded maintenance status reports to PC section. f. Monitored request for repair parts/components. g. Forwarded personnel and equipment status. <p>3. Helicopter repair sections perform power plant, aircraft structural, power train, rotor, electrical, hydraulics, and nondestructive maintenance and inspections.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed required inspections according to applicable publications. b. Performed repair to or replacement of aircraft components and related systems. c. Performed operator-level maintenance on organic equipment. d. Maintained tool kits, tool sets, and test equipment. e. Provided feedback to internal maintenance control system. f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status to platoon headquarters. <p>* 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0004	Supervise the Use of Aviation Maintenance Publications
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0006	Supervise the Aviation Maintenance Safety Program
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System-Aviation (ULLS-A)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0010	Coordinate Supply functions with Supply Support Activities (SSA)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0020	Supervise Aircraft Component Replacement
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0021	Supervise Aircraft Unscheduled Maintenance
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0023	Perform the Duties of an aviation Maintenance Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0024	Supervise Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0049	Supervise the Use of Supply Publications

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: AVUM COMPANY
AVUM PLATOON

TASK: PERFORM AIRCRAFT BATTLE DAMAGE ASSESSMENT AND REPAIR (BDAR)/RECOVERY OPERATIONS (01-2-7017.01-0NRC)

FM 3-04.500(FM 1-500) (DA PAM 600-8) FM 3-04.513(FM 1-513)
(STP 21-II-MQS)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. Reports are being received through normal channels. Maintenance requests are received from the PC section on a 24-hour maintenance-available basis. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Aircraft was recovered and evacuated, without further damage, within timelines specified by the commander or unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The AVUM contact team coordinates with the owning unit. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined unit identification and location. b. Determined type aircraft. c. Determined nature of damage. d. Received update on the OPFOR situation, security, and NBC considerations. e. Coordinated with commanders if recovery mission might interfere with tactical operations or compromise security. f. Designated pickup point if different from unit site. g. Designated route of approach. h. Coordinated for guides, if required. 2. The maintenance officer directs recovery operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined repair parts, tools, and equipment, if applicable. b. Determined BDAR team. c. Determined BDAR/recovery method. d. Briefed the BDAR/recovery team. e. Established security at the recovery site. f. Repaired on site if possible and permitted by the tactical situation. g. Used BDAR or field expedient methods, if required. h. Recommended COA to the commander if the aircraft was nonrepairable or could not be recovered. 3. The BDAR team performs aircraft recovery. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured unit equipment was removed and secured. b. Rigged/loaded the aircraft for evacuation.. c. Provided technical guidance and assisted recovering aircrew, if applicable. * 4. Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1302	Employ Downed Aircraft Recovery Team Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0034	Manage Aircraft Recovery Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0035	Supervise Aircraft Battle Damage Assessment and Repair

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: HHC

TASK: SUPPORT TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) OPERATIONS (01-2-7102.01-0NRC)
FM 3-22.6(FM 22-6) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has issued an OPORD/FRAGO to displace the AA. Advanced party operations have been accomplished and the battalion/squadron has closed on the new AA. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Administrative and logistics support to the TOC enabled uninterrupted C². Security of the TOC was not compromised as a result of inadequate support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +HHC/HHT commander facilitates establishment of the TOC. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Provided ground guides to direct the TOC to its location. Established local security as the TOC was established. Provided personnel to assist in setting up the TOC. 		
2. +HHC/HHT provides logistical support to the TOC. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Established resupply and a ration cycle according to the unit SOP. Established a water point. Established a back haul schedule for refuse. 		
3. +HHC/HHT provides maintenance support. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Ensured that daily PMCS on all wheeled vehicles were conducted. Conducted wheeled vehicle maintenance procedures. Ensured that daily PMCS on all ground support equipment was conducted. Provided maintenance support for all ground support equipment. 		
4. +HHC/HHT coordinates initial medical assistance to TOC personnel. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Conducted routine sick call. Evaluated and treated more serious problems. 		
5. +HHC/HHT assists the battalion S2 with TOC security according to the unit SOP.		
* 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0502	Supervise Company-Level Maintenance
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	091-357-0001	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
No STP and No MOS	091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: EVACUATE CASUALTIES (01-2-7707.01-0NRC)
FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has incurred simulated casualties. The AA is secure and the main CP and the battalion/squadron aid station are operational. The medical team is available to provide emergency medical aid and evacuation of casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Casualties receive immediate first aid when brought to the casualty collection point. Casualties are evacuated by the most expeditious manner available. All classified/sensitive documents are removed from casualties and secured.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander/first sergeant develops the casualty evacuation plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Alerted the medical treatment team of impending casualties. b. Determined assets needed to evacuate casualties. c. Confirmed primary and alternate evacuation routes, if by vehicle. d. Coordinated air evacuation, if tactical situation permits. e. Designated separate holding areas for contaminated and uncontaminated killed in action personnel. f. Designated a holding area and security plan for EPW casualties. g. Provided vehicles and/or aircraft to battalion/squadron, as required. h. Coordinated with higher headquarters for S5 support in case of civilian casualties. <p>2. +The medics process casualties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assessed the condition of casualties and prioritized injuries. b. Separated NBC contaminated casualties from uncontaminated casualties. c. Treated the most seriously wounded patients first. d. Stabilized patients to prevent further injury. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Stopped the bleeding. (2) Prevented/treated shock. (3) Splinted broken bones. (4) Administered painkillers. <p>3. +The unit personnel search casualties for sensitive or confidential information or equipment and secure it.</p> <p>4. +Company/troop personnel prepare for air evacuation, if tactical situation permits.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reported the number and status of casualties. b. Secured LZs. c. Guided inbound aircraft to the PZ. d. Assisted in loading casualties. e. Evacuated casualties with appropriate personal NBC equipment. <p>5. The unit forwards DA Forms 1155 and 1156 to battalion S1.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	031-503-1015	Protect Yourself From NBC Injury/Contamination With the Appropriate Mission-Oriented Protective Posture (MOPP) Gear
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1008	Perform First Aid for Heat Injuries
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1009	Give First Aid for Frostbite
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1016	Put on a Field or Pressure Dressing
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1017	Put on a Tourniquet
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding of an Extremity
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1042	Perform Mouth to Mouth Resuscitation
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1044	Perform First Aid for Nerve Agent Injury
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1045	Perform First Aid for Cold Injuries
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
No STP and No MOS	121-010-8001	Report Casualties
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: SUBMIT CASUALTY FEEDER REPORTS AND WITNESS STATEMENTS (01-2-7714.01-0NRC)

(DA PAM 738-751)

FM 4-25.11(FM 21-11)

FM 1-0(FM 12-6)

FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP and ALOC are operational and the staff sections are functioning. The company has simulated sustained casualties. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: DA Forms 1155 and 1156 are prepared without error and submitted to the S1 as soon as possible.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +Unit personnel report soldiers killed, wounded, or missing in action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Completed DA Form 1155. b. Completed DA Form 1156. c. Verified report (commander or 1SG). d. Attached a roster of names to DA Form 1156 in case of multiple casualties. e. Attached DA Form 1155 to DA Form 1156 and forwarded to the S1. 2. +Unit personnel coordinate for support with the battalion/squadron ALOC, as required. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Battalion/squadron aid station. b. GRREG. c. Personnel status and personnel reports. * 3. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 21-24-SMCT	121-030-3534	Report Casualties

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: MAINTAIN HELICOPTERS (01-2-7730.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.500 (FM 1-500) (DA PAM 738-751)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP and the aviation unit maintenance company/troop/platoon are operational and the staff sections are functioning. Maintenance personnel are available and repair parts, tools, and equipment are on hand. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Any degradation of unit OPTEMPO was not a result of poor or inadequate maintenance. All maintenance was completed and inspections were performed according to applicable technical publications. Safety procedures were followed throughout all maintenance activities.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander directs the unit helicopter maintenance program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that operational levels were maintained by reviewing aircraft status reports. a. Managed aircraft flying hour program to maintain required operational readiness rate and optimal bank time. b. Identified current or anticipated maintenance requirements. c. Coordinated with the AVUM commander for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Scheduled maintenance to support flight hours and mission schedule. (2) Constant phases or periodic maintenance service. d. Requested control substitution approval from higher headquarters, as required. e. Directed emergency field repairs with coordination with the AVUM commander. f. Verified material condition status reports. g. Requested maintenance contact teams to support forward deployed elements as necessary. <p>* 2. +Leaders supervise operator maintenance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored the performance of the PMCS. b. Monitored equipment repair parts status. c. Inspected aircraft and associated subsystems. d. Coordinated maintenance assistance with the AVUM commander. e. Requested approval for emergency field repairs. f. Maintained maintenance status of aircraft and subsystems. g. Provided input for the material condition status report. <p>3. +Platoon maintenance personnel repair organic equipment.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified a fault diagnosis and the category of maintenance. b. Acquired required repair parts. c. Repaired aircraft and subsystems. d. Assisted in the evacuation of aircraft and subsystems to higher echelon maintenance facilities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Corrected all unit level maintenance deficiencies. (2) Prepared the required documentation. e. Completed technical inspection of required repairs. f. Completed appropriate documentation to record completed work. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. +Maintenance personnel perform maintenance administrative and support functions, as applicable. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained the PLL, if applicable. b. Requested repair parts for unit aircraft and subsystems. c. Maintained the document registers. d. Maintained maintenance control records. e. Maintained publications, tools, and equipment. * 5. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0502	Supervise Company-Level Maintenance
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1100	Determine Aircraft Decontamination Levels and Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1300	Supervise Aviation Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1302	Employ Downed Aircraft Recovery Team Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0004	Supervise the Use of Aviation Maintenance Publications
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0005	Supervise Aviation Property Accountability
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0006	Supervise the Aviation Maintenance Safety Program
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System-Aviation (ULLS-A)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0).
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0020	Supervise Aircraft Component Replacement
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0021	Supervise Aircraft Unscheduled Maintenance
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0022	Supervise Aircraft Readiness Reporting
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0024	Supervise Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0033	Supervise Shipment of Army Aircraft
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0035	Supervise Aircraft Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0048	Supervise the Aircraft Pneudraulics and Hydraulic Maintenance Repair Operations.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0049	Supervise the Use of Supply Publications

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

ELEMENTS: CLASS III PLATOON
CLASS III SECTION

TASK: CONDUCT FORWARD ARMING AND REFUELING POINT (FARP) OPERATIONS (01-3-7726.01-0NRC)

FM 4-20.12(FM 10-67-1)

FM 3-04.11(FM 1-111)

FM 3-24.3(FM 20-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The Class III/V Platoon is deployed. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Aircraft and equipment were properly serviced to meet mission support requirements for Class III/V within the time constraints specified in the OPORD/FRAGO and the unit's SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The platoon/section refuels and/or rearms aircraft. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Refueled and rearmed aircraft with minimal delay. b. Kept radio traffic to a minimum. c. Performed minor armament repairs. d. Controlled aircraft traffic. 2. +The platoon/section operates the forward area refueling equipment system. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tested a sample from each nozzle. b. Before refueling any aircraft, personnel circulated the fuel in the system using another 500-gallon drum. c. Aircraft with the closed-circuit system used the closed-circuit nozzle unless directed otherwise. d. Took all safety precautions before and during refueling operation. e. Used a filter or separator during all aircraft refueling operations. f. Maintained FARE components to ensure that pump and filter systems are operational. g. Protected the fuel from contamination. h. Followed procedures established in unit SOP to prevent and report hazardous waste spillage. 3. The platoon/section accounts for fuel and ammunition usage. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained an accurate account of the fuel and ammunition on hand and of the fuel dispensed to each aircraft, vehicle, or piece of equipment. b. Provided consumption statistics as per SOP. c. Coordinated for resupply. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.
No STP and No MOS	011-420-1700	Employ the Army Safety Program
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: SUPPLY SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE UNIT SUPPLY SUPPORT (01-4-0320.01-0NRC)
(AR 710-2) (DA PAM 710-2-1)

FM 4-0(FM 100-10)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the ALOC are operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate supply support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander directs supply operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored operations by reviewing supply records and status. b. Directed inventories of supplies and equipment to calculate assets on hand. c. Inspected storage of unit equipment, weapons, ammunition, and rations. d. Directed issue of supplies and equipment. e. Calculated field service requirements. * 2. +The supply sergeant supervises unit supply. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assessed the supply status to determine total assets. b. Conducted inventories to calculate assets on hand. c. Developed a supply storage plan. d. Monitored supply procedures by reviewing supply transactions. e. Directed control of weapons, ammunition, and rations. f. Provided input to the materiel condition status report regarding equipment on hand. 3. The supply section requests supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Calculated resupply requirements. b. Coordinated requirements with platoons and elements. c. Recorded the requests on the appropriate document register. d. Submitted requests for resupply. 4. The supply section receives supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected incoming supplies for quantity and condition. b. Recorded receipt on the appropriate document register. c. Stored supplies according to storage plans. d. Notified the requesting platoon or element that supplies were available for issue. 5. The supply section issues supplies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Processed supply requests. b. Prepared transaction documents. c. Maintained prescribed copies of transactions. 6. The supply section maintains small arms and ammunition. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Controlled stored weapons and ammunition. b. Requested ammunition resupply. c. Performed organizational maintenance on small arms and crew-served weapons. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
d. Forwarded weapons beyond unit repair capabilities to the supporting maintenance unit.		
* 7. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0002	Supervise Supply Activities in a Unit
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0003	Supervise Supply Operations at the Company Level

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

ELEMENTS: AUTO MAINT SEC
 AUTO MAINT SEC (BN)

TASK: PERFORM VEHICLE RECOVERY OPERATIONS (01-4-1029.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-20.15(FM 17-15)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit maintenance collection point receives a mission that requires a vehicle or equipment be recovered. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Vehicle/equipment was recovered and evacuated, without further damage, within timelines specified by the commander or unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The maintenance section coordinates with the owning unit. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined repair parts, tools and equipment. b. Determined BDAR/recovery team composition. c. Determined nature of damage. d. Received update on the OPFOR situation, and NBC conditions. e. Coordinated with commanders if recovery mission might interfere with tactical operations or compromise security. f. Designated pickup point if different from unit site. g. Designated route of approach. h. Coordinated for guides, if required. * 2. +The motor officer directs the recovery operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined repair parts, tools, and equipment, if applicable. b. Determined tools/equipment, if applicable. c. Determined BDAR/recovery method. d. Briefed the BDAR/recovery team. e. Dispatched the BDAR/recovery team. f. Established security at the recovery site. g. Repaired on site if possible and permitted by the tactical situation. h. Used BDAR or field expedient methods, if required. i. Recommended COA to the commander if vehicle/equipment was nonrepairable or could not be recovered. 3. +The recovery team recovers the vehicle/equipment. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured unit equipment was removed and secured. b. Rugged/loaded vehicle/equipment for evacuation. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE / EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0502	Supervise Company-Level Maintenance
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations
STP 21-24-SMCT	091-309-0711	Direct Vehicle/Equipment Recovery Operations
No STP and No MOS	091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: FOOD SERVICE SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE FOOD SERVICE SUPPORT (01-4-7708.01-0NRC)
 FM 4-20.2(FM 10-23) FM 4-20.51(FM 10-23-1) FM 3-11.3(FM 3-3)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The unit is occupying an AA. The field kitchen area has been set up and rations and water have been drawn. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no health problems associated with poor food preparation or sanitation procedures. Unit morale and health were enhanced due to proper food service support.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The food service sergeant plans food service support. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Verified strength of supported units. b. Requested subsistence. c. Prepared personnel work schedules. d. Assigned duties to food service personnel. e. Prepared food production schedule. f. Coordinated distribution of food with supported units. g. Developed NBC decontamination procedures for equipment, supplies, and personnel. h. Coordinated defensive duties with company/troop headquarters. * 2. +The food service sergeant supervises field kitchen operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored area security. b. Established operational hours. c. Assigned work schedules. d. Monitored equipment operations, maintenance, and safety. e. Coordinated supply requests with the supply section. f. Forwarded personnel and equipment status reports. g. Performed periodic inspections of personnel and equipment. h. Monitored employment of preventive medicine countermeasures. i. Supervised decontamination of contaminated equipment, supplies, and personnel. j. Provided field kitchen status update to the company/troop commander. 3. +The food service personnel pick up subsistence items. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected vehicle for cleanliness and proper dunnage. b. Inspected subsistence items for condition and quantity. c. Prepared shortages, overages, and unserviceable listing. d. Prepared required documentation. e. Transported subsistence items from Class I point to the AA. f. Reported shortages and overages to supervisor. g. Stored subsistence items. 4. +The food service personnel prepare meals. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected field kitchen equipment. b. Employed personal hygiene measures. c. Prepared menu items according to production schedule. d. Performed preliminary food preparation procedures. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Employed preventive medicine countermeasures. f. Prepared food for transport.</p> <p>NOTE: Use the following task step when the commander's guidance calls for the use of logistics package.</p> <p>5. +The food service personnel issue Class I to company representative (1SG/supply sergeant). a. Verified head count provided by 1SG/supply sergeant—in case of recent attachments/detachments. b. Issued sanitized serving utensils.</p> <p>6. The food service personnel/unit personnel—depending on method of feeding—serve meals. a. Employed personal hygiene measures. b. Placed all items on the serving line. c. Ensured that mess gear was sanitized before serving. d. Employed portion control. e. Maintained food at proper temperature. f. Replenished food items. g. Washed packaged or canned food after NBC attack. h. Destroyed opened food after NBC attack. i. Tested water sources after NBC attack.</p> <p>7. The food service personnel maintain equipment. a. Performed before-operations PMCS on assigned equipment. b. Maintained proper temperature of wash and rinse water on wash line. c. Cleaned cooking equipment. d. Sanitized cooking equipment. e. Stored clean equipment to allow air-drying. f. Performed during and after-operations PMCS on assigned equipment.</p> <p>8. The field kitchen personnel perform waste disposal. a. Disposed of liquid waste. b. Transported solid waste to Class I point. c. Cleaned vehicle before loading rations. d. Sanitized vehicle before loading rations. e. Employed preventive medicine countermeasures.</p> <p>* 9. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9023	Enforce Preventive Medicine Measures for Protection Against Disease and Nonbattle Injuries
No STP and No MOS	091-357-0001	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0002	Supervise Supply Activities in a Unit

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: MEDICAL TREATMENT TM
 MEDICAL TREATMENT SQD

TASK: ESTABLISH MEDICAL SUPPORT (01-4-7720.01-0NRC)
 FM 4-02.92(FM 8-10-4) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)
 FM 4-02.55(FM 8-55)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and ALOC are operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All units received high quality health care as a result of the established medical support plan. The battalion/squadron aid station was established within the time constraints specified in the unit SOP. All medical services were provided in a timely and effective manner. All medical records and flight clearances were maintained according to the unit SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The medical team leader develops a medical support plan.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided for effective medical treatment for all supported units. b. Maximized efficient use of available resources. c. Provided for aidmen support for companies/troops. d. Established evacuation procedures and area evacuation support. e. Designated separate holding/processing area for killed-in-action personnel. f. Coordinated with appropriate staff elements and supported companies/troops to include evacuation routes and collection points. g. Established a medical support SOP. <p>2. +The medical treatment team establishes the battalion/squadron aid station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected a site for the aid station that would support tactical operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured the aid station site was not located near targets of opportunity, such as— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Ammunition. (b) POL distribution points. (c) Targets that may be considered lucrative by the opposing force—such as bridges, fording sites, road junctions, firing positions. (2) Ensured that the aid station had access to— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Evacuation routes. (b) Supporting and supported units. (c) Helicopter PZ. (3) Established that the proposed helicopter PZ was— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Placed on a solid surface. (b) Free of dust. (c) Free of wire and other hazards. (d) Flat—slope did not exceed 3 degrees. (e) Within reasonable litter-carrying distance from the aid station. (f) Properly marked and lighted. b. Erected the aid station according to appropriate TMs. c. Ensured that the aid station was camouflaged according to the unit SOP. d. Unloaded equipment and supplies expeditiously without damage or excessive handling. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Reported opening time and location to higher headquarters and supporting medical treatment facility. 3. The medical treatment team moves the aid station. a. Packed equipment according to packing lists, manufacturer's instructions, and unit SOP. b. Struck shelters, if erected, according to appropriate TMs. c. Loaded equipment/supplies according to unit loading plans to permit immediate use en route or at the relocation site. d. Policed immediate area to remove potential sources of intelligence. e. Evacuated patients, as required. f. Notified supporting medical unit/facility of movement, new coordinates, and planned time to be operational at new site, if known. * 4. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in the troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: MEDICAL TREATMENT TM
 MEDICAL TREATMENT SQD

TASK: CONDUCT MEDICAL SUPPORT ACTIVITIES (01-4-7721.01-0NRC)
 FM 4-02.92(FM 8-10-4) (AR 40-8) (AR 600-105)
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 4-25.11(FM 21-11) FM 3-21.38(FM 57-38)
 FM 4-02.2 (FM 8-10-6) FM 4-02.285(FM 8-285)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)
COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The battalion/squadron aid station is established to support battalion/squadron operations. Subordinate elements are deployed to remote sites and require medical support. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All soldiers with health problems were evaluated, treated or evacuated within time periods specified in the unit SOP. The patient receiving and disposition log was maintained with no errors. Unit field sanitation measures were enhanced as a result of medical team instruction.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The team performs actions at the battalion/squadron aid station. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Scheduled and conducted sick call. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Examined patients on a subjective priority basis. (2) Treated and returned patients with minor illness or injury to duty as soon as possible. (3) Initiated DD Form 1380 (U.S. Field Medical Card). (4) Transcribed basic patient information from DD Form 1380 into the aid station Receiving and Disposition Log. (5) Monitored personnel, when necessary, for NBC contamination prior to medical treatment. (6) Coordinated for NBC decontamination teams, as required. (7) Notified the S1 of all patients processed through the aid station, giving identification and disposition. b. Evacuated patients requiring treatment or diagnostic services beyond the immediate capability of aid station personnel to an appropriate higher echelon medical treatment facility. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Submitted standard nine-line MEDEVAC request, as required. (2) Stabilized patients prior to evacuation. (3) Verified information contained on the FMC of all patients prior to evacuation. (4) Monitored evacuation of patients. (5) Disposed of ammunition and individual weapons belonging to evacuated patients according to the unit SOP. (6) Disposed of excess equipment collected at the aid station according to the unit SOP. (7) Evacuated patients requiring dental care to the supporting medical company. (8) Briefed drivers and/or flight crews on locations, routes, departure times, and destinations. (9) Evacuated casualties with appropriate personal NBC equipment. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 2. +The team leader monitors medical clearances for flying.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Complied with procedures to ensure that newly assigned aircrew members were screened by a flight surgeon prior to receiving flight clearances. b. Reviewed temporary medical restrictions or suspensions. c. Ensured the commander's removal of restrictions or suspensions, when appropriate. <p>3. +The team performs remote site actions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected sorting teams with appropriate skills. b. Established the sorting point, patient treatment, and evacuation priority groups upon arrival at the site. c. Sorted patients according to the unit SOP. d. Provided life-sustaining treatment concurrently with sorting activities. e. Supervised the loading of patients. f. Prepared and marked the helicopter LZ, if helicopter evacuation was required. g. Provided continuing care of the sick or injured during their evacuation to an established treatment facility. <p>* 4. +The team provides en route medical care during unit movement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected and briefed personnel responsible for en route medical care during unit movement. b. Issued individual medical equipment before departure. c. Provided routine medical treatment to sick or injured during halts. d. Established priority of treatment based on severity of the problem. e. Prepared an FMC to record treatment provided or prescribed for each patient. f. Packed and loaded supplies and equipment separately for sick call and emergency treatment where they were immediately available. g. Evacuated patients requiring definitive treatment to specific medical treatment facilities when available. <p>* 5. The team leader monitors care provided by aidmen.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Observed the quality and completeness of care provided to soldiers. b. Checked to ensure treatment was properly conducted. c. Provided support to company/troop aidmen, as required. d. Ensured that FMC was filled out accurately. e. Solicited comments from company and platoon level personnel. f. Advised aidmen on deficient areas. <p>6. The team provides training to field sanitation teams.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Conducted periodic training for company/troop personnel to enhance field sanitation procedures. b. Assisted field sanitation teams with required inspections. <p>* 7. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1000	Evaluate a Casualty
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding of an Extremity
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1044	Perform First Aid for Nerve Agent Injury
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1045	Perform First Aid for Cold Injuries
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1008	Perform First Aid for Heat Injuries
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
STP 21-1-SMCT	081-831-1042	Perform Mouth to Mouth Resuscitation

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: AUTO MAINT SEC

TASK: PERFORM UNIT-LEVEL MAINTENANCE (01-4-7723.01-0NRC)
(FM 4-30.3) (DA PAM 738-750)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The main CP and the ALOC are operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Unit vehicle and equipment maintenance status met or exceeded DA standards.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. The motor officer directs unit maintenance program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Monitored implementation of unit maintenance program. b. Monitored unit operational levels by reviewing vehicle and equipment status reports. c. Identified current or anticipated maintenance problems. d. Coordinated resolution of maintenance problems with higher headquarters. e. Requested control substitution approval from higher headquarters. f. Approved emergency field repairs. g. Prepared material condition status reports. h. Monitored the AOAP i. Monitored the maintenance QC program. j. Monitored the safety program. * 2. +Platoon/section leaders supervise operator maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Supervised performance of PMCS. b. Monitored the status of equipment repair parts. c. Inspected vehicles, weapons, and equipment. d. Coordinated maintenance assistance with unit maintenance section. e. Requested approval for emergency field repairs from the company commander. f. Monitored the maintenance status of vehicles, weapons, and equipment. g. Provided input to the materiel condition status report. 3. +Unit personnel perform operator maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Performed PMCS. b. Performed operator's adjustments according to appropriate TM. c. Notified supervisor of maintenance problems beyond operator's capabilities. d. Performed emergency field repairs. * 4. +Motor sergeant supervises unit-level maintenance. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Organized unit maintenance personnel. b. Assigned equipment to appropriate maintenance area. c. Ensured tools, personnel, and repair parts are available. d. Supervised BDAR procedures. e. Supervised Class IX requisition procedures. f. Supervised recovery operations. g. Coordinated maintenance status with platoon/section leaders. h. Requested controlled substitution approval from commander. i. Provided unit maintenance status update to the commander. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
5. +Maintenance personnel repair organic equipment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Inspected equipment. b. Determined level of maintenance. c. Performed corrective actions. d. Performed final inspection of completed work. e. Completed maintenance forms. f. Notified platoon/section upon completion of repairs. 6. Maintenance personnel conduct transactions with maintenance support activity. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the category of maintenance. b. Corrected all unit-level maintenance deficiencies. c. Prepared required documentation. d. Prepared vehicles for evacuation. e. Evacuated equipment to support maintenance. f. Picked up equipment upon notification. g. Verified completion of repairs. 7. +Maintenance personnel perform maintenance, administrative, and support functions. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained PLL. b. Requested repair parts for unit equipment. c. Maintained document registers. d. Maintained maintenance control records. e. Maintained publications, tools, and equipment. f. Maintained power generators. * 8. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1301	Supervise Ground Maintenance Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0007	Supervise Unit Class IX Repair Parts Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0008	Supervise the Unit Level Logistics System-Aviation (ULLS-A)
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0016	Monitor the Standard Army Retail Supply System (SARSS1-0).
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0024	Supervise Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0029	Supervise the Preparation of Maintenance Forms and Records

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-540-0049	Supervise the Use of Supply Publications
No STP and No MOS	091-090-0005	Report Unit Combat Readiness Status
No STP and No MOS	091-257-0002	Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
STP 21-24-SMCT	091-309-0710	Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services
STP 21-24-SMCT	091-309-0711	Direct Vehicle/Equipment Recovery Operations
No STP and No MOS	091-670-0003	Supervise Unit Maintenance Operation
No STP and No MOS	091-900-0006	Direct Unit Maintenance Operations

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: MINISTRY TEAM

TASK: IMPLEMENT THE COMMAND RELIGIOUS SUPPORT PROGRAM (01-5-1110.01-0NRC)
FM 1-05(FM 16-1) FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Religious support programs enhanced unit morale, welfare, and combat effectiveness.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The chaplain implements the unit's religious support program.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assessed the needs of the command. b. Coordinated unit, area, and denominational coverage throughout the battalion/squadron. c. Established ministry objectives for the battalion/squadron and measured the results. d. Prepared a religious support plan for inclusion in the OPOD/FRAGO, and supervised its execution. e. Reviewed casualty data. f. Maintained authorized equipment. <p>* 2. +The chaplain provides pastoral ministry.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided pastoral care to all members of the battalion/squadron and to collocated elements having no assigned chaplain. b. Ministered to casualties and hospitalized or confined personnel. c. Provided pastoral counseling to members of the command. d. Conducted appropriate memorial ceremonies and worship services to honor the dead and wounded. <p>* 3. +The chaplain advises the commander and staff on religious matters.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Advised on religious, moral, morale, ethical, and humanitarian aspects of policies and leadership affected by religion to ensure high standards. b. Advised on specific religious requirements of soldiers. c. Assessed the training that soldiers receive in moral and ethical decision making. d. Established liaison with chaplains of higher and adjacent units, and with chaplains of other services and allied nations. e. Advised the commander and staff on the effect of host country religion on U.S. interests and operations. f. Provided ecclesiastical supplies to subordinate unit ministry teams. <p>* 4. +The chaplain provides ministerial support in the treatment of battle fatigue.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided immediate support for battle fatigue. b. Provided care and counseling. c. Provided additional skill training on the initial treatment of battle fatigue. <p>* 5. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1260	Counsel Subordinates
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader, or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1385	Implement Measures to Reduce Operational Stress

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMMAND SECTION

TASK: COMMAND AND CONTROL (C²) BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS (01-1-1001.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

(DA PAM 600-41)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

(DA PAM 350-2)

(DA PAM 600-8)

FM 6-22(FM 22-100)

(DA PAM 385-1)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO, and guidance from higher headquarters. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All assigned missions were successfully conducted in compliance with higher commander's intent as a result of positive C² measures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 1. +The commander participates in the staff planning process. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Received staff estimates and recommendations. Conducted the military decision making process. Developed the commander's estimate, to include decision and guidance for the operation; managed risks; and allocated time and resources. Reviewed prepared plans and orders. Approved plans and orders. 		
* 2. +The commander directs operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Established goals and objectives and provided continuous guidance. Analyzed all SITREPs and status updates. Directed the actions of subordinate commanders and staff to ensure compliance with established plans, orders, and procedures. Evaluated unit, section, and personnel performance. 		
* 3. +The commander performs command safety duties in the planning and direction of missions and operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Identified and controlled hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. Ensured implementation of the command safety and occupational health program according to DA PAM 385-1 to meet the next higher commander's accident prevention guidance. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMMAND SECTION

TASK: DIRECT THE STAFF (01-1-1002.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the ALOC are operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The staff is planning and coordinating combat, CS, and CSS operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All assigned missions were successfully completed according to the commander's intent as a result of complete staff planning and coordination. Subordinate units were allowed adequate time to plan operations because of timely information and coordination by the staff.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The XO directs and supervises the primary and special staffs. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that established staff operating procedures were adhered to and enforced. b. Determined staff priorities and set standards. c. Established timelines. d. Informed the commander and staff of all matters that affected the battalion/squadron. e. Ensured a constant flow of information. f. Coordinated staff estimates and recommendations. g. Developed presentations for the commander. h. Coordinated the development and issuance of plans, orders, and procedures. i. Ensured that required liaison was established and maintained. j. Supervised execution of the military decision making process. k. Supervised implementation of the commander's guidance and directives. * 2. The XO coordinates the administrative and logistics support of the battalion/squadron. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated personnel management with the S1. b. Coordinated logistics management with the S4. c. Supervised the establishment of the ALOC. d. Supervised the special staff. * 3. +The XO supervises risk management integration with the entire staff according to the responsibilities and standards in Appendix C. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader
No STP and No MOS	171-630-0015	Supervise the Flow of Information in a Battalion Tactical Operations Center (TOC)

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: PLAN AND CONDUCT STABILITY AND SUPPORT OPERATIONS (SASO) (01-1-1017.01-0NRC)

FM 3-57(FM 41-10)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 3-07(FM 100-20)

FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)

FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)

FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—SASO environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The staff has been briefed on METT-TC, C² relationships, and ROE. Operations may require offensive and/or defensive operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The battalion/squadron established immediate physical security for personnel and equipment. All personnel received comprehensive briefings on the mission, command relationships, situation/threat, and ROE. Battalion/squadron operations minimized adverse impacts on civilian populations and resources.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3, with assistance from the S2, plans for force protection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared and implemented physical security and operational security plans that included measures to minimize vulnerability to terrorism and nonhostile factions. <p>2. +The staff recommends policies and procedures to guide operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the legal mandate, geographic boundaries, and other limitations upon both the support/peacekeeping/peace-enforcing force and the belligerent forces, as required. b. Identified pertinent demographic and economic issues. c. Reviewed local customs and laws. d. Observed and analyzed trends in public opinion. e. Sought input from local leaders. f. Planned positive community relations programs. g. Defined the commander's obligation to civil and military authority. <p>3. +The staff maximizes interagency, joint, multinational, and local civil coordination and cooperation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified applicable agencies, their missions, and areas of responsibility. b. Established contact/liaison with all appropriate agencies. c. S3 coordinated to determine local flight rules and procedures. d. S3 coordinated to obtain interpreters as necessary for mission planning and in-flight operations. e. Reviewed and supervised the implementation of ROE. <p>* 4. +The S3 determines and plans the unit mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Oriented on the area, its culture, and the nature of the situation. b. Planned operations to complement those of government and private agencies. c. Planned operations within the framework of the overall mission, with primary focus on SASO. d. Planned for transition to civilian agencies as soon as feasible. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 5. +The commander emphasizes civil affairs and information operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured soldiers at all levels understood the consequences of releasing inaccurate, unsubstantiated or poorly timed information. b. Information released was authoritative and reflected the degree of accuracy known at the time. <p>6. +The unit conducts support, antiterrorism, counter-terrorism, and force-on-force operations, as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Accommodated the culture, values, and methods of operations of the other participants. b. Accommodated the political, economic, and social situations, including demographics, of the population. c. Prioritized efforts and allocated resources to achieve the greatest essential support to the largest number of people possible. d. Displayed preparedness—capability to apply force without threatening—consistent with mission constraints, by conducting demanding combined arms training routinely in the AO, as appropriate. e. Used warfighting doctrine, with suitable modification, to accommodate the situation. f. Transitioned quickly between support, peacekeeping/peace-enforcing operations, and offensive/defensive operations, as required. g. Applied force that was consistent with and adequate to assigned objectives, employing combat power selectively according to assigned missions and prescribed ROE. <p>* 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0021	Employ Fundamentals of Army Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE DOWNED AIRCREW RECOVERY OPERATIONS (01-1-1020.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) (JOINT PUB 3-50.21)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The unit is preparing to conduct missions throughout the AO. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Coordination was complete, accurate, and timely and met all criteria established by the commander.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The unit develops SOP for CSAR operations that included— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Isolation preparation packets. b. Evasion plans of actions. c. Signaling procedures. d. CSAR alert procedures (horizontal/vertical). e. Task organizing procedures (attachments/detachments). f. Threat update procedures. g. Search techniques. h. Reporting requirements. i. Notification/authentication techniques. j. Recovery procedures. 2. The unit coordinates with RCC. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Prepared for intra-service support. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured unit was aware of all CSAR capabilities, both air and ground. (2) Ensured unit was knowledgeable of parameters within which CSAR forces will operate according to RCC guidance. (3) Ensured unit personnel were knowledgeable of procedures for requesting CSAR. b. Prepared for joint CSAR operations. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Provided mutual support to other services when tasked by the joint search and rescue center. (2) Ensured that unit personnel augmenting joint CSAR operations were familiar with appropriate publications and regulations. 3. +The unit plans for self-recovery. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Task organized recovery aircraft, armed aircraft, and security forces b. Specified immediate actions for isolated personnel. c. Specified signaling procedures. d. Specified actions upon contact with isolated personnel. * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A or TPC
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0026	Coordinate Combat Search and Rescue (CSAR) Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: COORDINATE THE SAFETY PROGRAM (01-1-1024.01-0NRC)
 (AR 385-95) (AR 385-10) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no personnel injuries or damage to equipment resulting from poor safety procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The safety officer and/or NCO, in coordination with the S3, monitors and assists in executing the safety program. The program includes the areas of safety and occupational health, risk management, and accident prevention for aviation and ground operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Served as the principal safety and risk management advisor, trainer, planner, and evaluator for the commander. b. Investigated, reported, and analyzed unit accidents. Identified cause factor trends and recommended corrective action. c. Monitored execution of safety and risk management procedures in the readiness and tactical SOP, including the aircraft preaccident crash rescue plan. d. Evaluated and reported on unit success in meeting the commander's safety goals, objectives, and priority actions. e. Provided safety and risk management training for unit personnel to correct observed shortcomings. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-1700	Implement the Army Safety Program
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (ASO) (01-1-1028.01-0NRC)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) (AR 385-10) (AR 385-95)
 FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: For the METT-TC factors of the pending mission/operation, all hazards not adequately controlled were identified and correctly risk managed according to responsibilities and procedures specified in Appendix C. For the selected COA, the commander made an informed risk decision that was consistent with the brigade commander's risk guidance. Mission/operation accomplishment was not degraded by losses from accidents that resulted from inadequate risk management.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>NOTE: The S3 exercises staff coordinating responsibilities for the safety functional area.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The aviation safety officer performs risk management tasks. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Collected METT-TC information from each staff member about hazards and control measures for each functional area. b. Used collected information to prepare a risk assessment and controls product (see Figure C-12, Appendix C). c. Coordinated the risk management product with the staff. d. Provided the risk management product, with recommendations, to the S3. 2. +The ASO conducts risk management tasks during and after mission execution. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Collected information from each staff member about the effectiveness of the control measures used and any changes needed. b. Recommended to the S3 any changes needed to existing controls or new/additional controls for future missions. * 3. +The ASO performs risk management tasks after mission execution. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assessed unit's risk management performance during mission planning and execution. b. Prepared a risk management performance assessment product, with recommendations for improvement, and presented it to the S3 for use during the AAR (see Figure C-13, Appendix C). 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S1 SECTION

TASK: PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S1) (01-1-1101.01-0NRC)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) (DA PAM 600-67) (DA PAM 600-8-20)
 FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and the ALOC are operational and all staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. PSS systems are in effect. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its respective staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders for the commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The personnel staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed time frame.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The S1 conducts mission analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations. b. Identified essential tasks to be done. c. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3. d. Evaluated planning guidance. e. Identified the status of personnel. f. Identified personnel support tasks required for operations to include strength management, replacement and casualty operations, and services. g. Forecasted personnel requirements. h. Supervised S1 section activities. * 2. +The S1 prepares the personnel estimate. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Indicated the unit strength maintenance posture. b. Identified critical replacement requirements. c. Indicated the impact of EPW, non-U. S. augmentation, and civilians possibly available for labor requirements. d. Reported the status of unit health, welfare, and morale; included factors that affected the climate, commitment, and cohesion of the unit. e. Identified deficiencies in personnel services that may have affected operations. f. Analyzed courses of action considering personnel factors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Compared COA to evaluate deficiencies from a personnel aspect. (2) Determined advantages and disadvantages of each COA. (3) Recommended best COA. g. Submitted the personnel estimate to the XO. h. Conducted personnel status briefings, as required. i. Maintained a current personnel estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff elements. 3. +The S1 Section prepares plans and orders. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated the preparation of the service support annex with the S4 and the support organization. b. Developed the personnel portion of the OPORD, to include, as a minimum, the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Replacement and casualty operations. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(2) Medical evacuation and hospitalization. (3) PSS. (4) Health, welfare, and morale activities. * 4. +Performs risk management for the personnel functional area according to the responsibilities and task standards specified in Appendix C—for example, the identification of critical shortages of specialized personnel that would constitute a hazard to a particular mission.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMMAND SECTION

TASK: PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (CSM) (01-1-1120.01-0NRC)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Battalion/squadron planning, coordination, and operations are enhanced as a result of timely assistance and advice from the CSM.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
1. +The CSM performs duties and responsibilities that vary according to the commander's specific desires and the unit's type, size, and mission. * 2. +The CSM conducts mission analysis. a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations. b. Identified essential tasks to be done and reviewed the concept of operation with the S3. c. Identified support tasks required for the operation. d. Evaluated planning guidance. e. Supervised local security operations, as directed. * 3. +The CSM provides advice and recommendations to the commander and staff in matters pertaining to enlisted personnel preparedness. * 4. +The CSM provides input in the detailed planning of operations that are directly under his control, for example, convoy operations and quartering party operations. * 5. The CSM monitors and reports on unit performance and progress in support of the mission. * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1240	Communicate Effectively as a Leader

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S2 SECTION

TASK: PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S2) (01-1-1201.01-0NRC)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 2-0(FM 34-1) FM 2-01.3(FM 34-130)
 FM 2-00.21(FM 34-2-1)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Intelligence support systems are operational. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its respective staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The intelligence estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed time frame. Mission accomplishment was not degraded by inadequate intelligence planning and analysis.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S2 conducts mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations. b. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3. c. Identified PIR based on the commander's initial guidance. d. Supervised S2 section activities. <p>2. +The S2 section conducts IPB.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed the brigade/regimental S2's intelligence estimate and intelligence summary. b. Extracted pertinent METT-TC information. c. Furnished information to the staff to assist in planning. d. Consolidated significant aspects of the AO and current enemy situation. e. Prepared templates showing enemy formations and activity. f. Recommended changes to the CCIR. g. Analyzed enemy COA. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Compared current enemy dispositions and composition with estimates of COA. (2) Validated/updated estimates of the enemy COA. h. Evaluated the area of interest considering width, depth, height, and time. i. Developed a terrain analysis of the AO. j. Conducted a weather analysis to determine the effects of the weather on terrain, trafficability, flight, and friendly and enemy operations. k. Conducted a comparative evaluation of threat forces to facilitate threat integration into the planning. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Developed and maintained threat data relevant to mission, OB, friendly capabilities, and higher headquarters analysis. (2) Developed a doctrinal template. (3) Developed enemy OB or situational templates. l. Provided event analysis input—matrix or other form. m. Recorded results, together with the S3, in the form of a decision support template and matrix. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>n. Ensured that identified decision points, decision lines, and decision events were included in an updated collection plan.</p> <p>* 3. +The S2 section prepares the intelligence staff estimate.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Obtained and analyzed information. b. Described the AOs to include weather, terrain, and other characteristics. c. Described the enemy situation. d. Described probable enemy courses. e. Created a situational template. f. Described the effects of the AOs and enemy situation on friendly COAs. g. Compared COA to— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Evaluate deficiencies from an intelligence aspect. (2) Analyze advantages and disadvantages. h. Indicated whether the mission could be supported and which prescribed COA could be supported from an intelligence aspect. i. Submitted the intelligence estimate to the XO and briefed, as required. j. Maintained a current intelligence estimate of the situation together with other staff elements. <p>* 4. +The S2 section conducts staff coordination.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided the staff with an overview of the current enemy situation to assist in the staff planning process. b. Provided input to the staff's mission analysis. c. Determined the capability of friendly intelligence assets to support the mission. d. Assisted the TOO in identifying aircraft survivability measures. <p>5. +The S2 section prepares the intelligence annex.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed the intelligence annex, which included— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Summary of the enemy situation. (2) Essential elements of information. (3) Intelligence acquisition tasks. (4) Measures for handling EPW documents and material. (5) Counterintelligence. (6) Reports and distribution. b. Issued the intelligence annex and accompanying appendixes with overlays. <p>6. +The S2 section develops the R&S plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed R&S plans from the companies/troops. b. Determined the battalion/squadron R&S requirements. c. Reviewed R&S plans from brigade/regiment. d. Considered fire support, maneuver, engineer augmentation, and C². e. Determined limits of responsibility. f. Coordinated the plan with the S3 and higher headquarters. g. Prepared R&S annex for the OPORD. h. Maintained continuous update of the R&S plan. <p>* 7. +Performed risk management for the intelligence functional area according to the responsibilities and task standards specified in Appendix C, such as identification and control of enemy AD assets in the AOs.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0307	Perform IEW Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0704	Plan Intelligence Reconnaissance/ Surveillance Missions
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S3) (01-1-1301.01-0NRC)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) (DA PAM 385-1) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)
 FM 3-0(FM 100-5) FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its respective staff estimates and recommendations, plans, and orders. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The operations staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed time frame. Subordinate units were allowed 2/3 of the available planning time as a result of proper planning techniques. The OPORD/FRAGO met all requirements outlined in FM 5-0(FM 101-5). Adequate planning enhanced Mission accomplishment.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The S3 conducts the mission analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations. b. Identified all specified tasks from the higher headquarters OPORD/FRAGO. c. Determined implied tasks. d. Identified essential tasks required for operations. e. Coordinated essential tasks with appropriate staff sections. f. Identified friendly vulnerabilities and limitations. g. Restated the mission. h. Issued a WARNORD to subordinate units. i. Supervised the S3 section. * 2. +The S3 prepares the operations staff estimate. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the relative combat power. b. Developed friendly COA. c. Provided COA to other staff sections. d. Analyzed COAs with other staff sections. e. Determined advantages and disadvantages of each COA with other staff sections. f. Recommended the most advantageous COA. g. Recommended the optimum task organization to accomplish the mission based on unit capabilities and the commander's intent. h. Submitted the operations estimate to the commander or XO. i. Conducted command briefings as required. j. Maintained a current operations estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff sections. 3. +The S3 section prepares plans and orders. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established a planning cell within the CP in coordination with the staff. b. Developed the OPORD/FRAGO with supporting annexes, appendixes, and overlays. c. Distributed the OPORD/FRAGO to all pertinent units. * 4. +The S3 executes staff coordinating responsibilities for the safety functional area. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Performed mission risk management duties in planning, coordinating, and controlling tactical operations according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. b. Coordinated the implementation of the command safety and occupational health program (according to DA PAM 385-1) to meet the commander's guidance.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion Opord
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL OPERATIONS CENTER (TOC) (01-1-1302.01-0NRC)

FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The tactical situation dictates movement of the TOC. Units have been deployed tactically and are conducting operations. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Communication between the TOC and higher and lower headquarters was not disrupted. The C² of tactical operations was not disrupted. Tactical information was received, analyzed, and disseminated in an effective manner on a continuous basis.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S3 establishes the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected the staff elements to be represented based on the situation and the commander's guidance. b. Established procedures to minimize the time required to process information. c. Established procedures to facilitate immediate information exchange between internal and external staff sections. d. Maintained the status of the current situation. e. Prepared and disseminated orders, requests, and reports necessary for current operations. f. Recommended the employment of organic and attached resources. g. Established an internal TOC security plan. h. Began planning for future operations. <p>2. +The S3 section operates the TOC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained communications with higher and lower headquarters throughout the movement and TOC establishment. b. Received and processed required operational reports promptly. c. Prepared situation maps and updated them immediately upon receipt of tactical information. d. Maintained a staff journal. e. Maintained flight records for aircrew members, as required. f. Provided recommendations to the commander. <p>3. +The communications section operates a net control station.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Opened and closed the net. b. Used challenge and authentication. c. Controlled entry and departure from the net. d. Monitored the net and corrected errors in operating procedures. e. Imposed and lifted station and net restrictions. f. Controlled a direct net. g. Passed all MIJI reports to the officer in charge as soon as possible. h. Used blind broadcast procedures, when appropriate. i. Used a crypto net control device, as appropriate. <p>4. The S3 displaces the TOC to support current or planned operations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Established a forward TOC to control immediate operations according to the unit SOP. b. Moved the TOC to an area where C ² of ongoing present or planned operations were easily facilitated. c. Established TOC security. d. Maintained communications with all elements. e. Ensured that the displaced TOC was operational before the main TOC displaced. f. Moved the main TOC to the new site and resumed C ² responsibilities. * 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1052	Operate Sincgars Equipment
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1059	Operate the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1060	Extract Data From Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
No STP and No MOS	011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment.
No STP and No MOS	071-990-0003	Control Entry Into a Restricted Area
No STP and No MOS	113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
No STP and No MOS	113-571-1019	Establish, Enter, and Leave a Radiotelephone Net
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-573-0002	Conduct Operations Security (OPSEC) Procedures
STP 1-93C1-SM	113-573-8008	Use Signal Operating Instructions (SOI) Extract
No STP and No MOS	301-336-1009	Process Combat Information
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: PLAN, COORDINATE, AND CONTROL TACTICAL OPERATIONS (01-1-1303.01-0NRC)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)
 FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112) FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113) FM 3-04.114(FM 1-114)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO. The commander has issued a WARNORD and commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The XO is coordinating staff actions with the S3. Time is available for planning. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The S3 section prepared and issued the OPORD/FRAGO, allowing subordinate units two-thirds of the time available for planning and issuing orders. The OPORD/FRAGO was clear, concise, and completely coordinated with other staff and supporting agencies. Control of tactical operations was maintained 100 percent of the time.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The S3 section prepares the OPORD/FRAGO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the mission, commander's intent, and concept of operation were stated clearly and concisely. b. Ensured that assets were task-organized for optimum employment, considering the factors of METT-TC. * 2. +The S3 section coordinates with other staff sections. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that coordination supported the development of plans and orders. b. Integrated staff input into the OPORD/FRAGO. * 3. +The S3 publishes and issues the OPORD/FRAGO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Ensured that the OPORD/FRAGO and annexes excluded repetition, SOP items, and unnecessary information that normally involved staff coordination. b. Ensured that graphic control measures supported the concept of operation statement. c. Ensured that graphic control measures allowed subordinate commanders the maximum flexibility consistent with the factors of METT-TC. d. Issued the OPORD/FRAGO so that subordinates had a minimum of two-thirds of the available time to conduct reconnaissance, plan, and issue orders. * 4. +The S3 controls the tactical operation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained and coordinated with other staff sections the status of the operational situation. b. Coordinated with other maneuver, CS, and CSS assets to ensure successful mission accomplishment. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Integrated air and ground schemes of maneuver, if required. (2) Consolidated air and ground control measures. (3) Coordinated air and ground direct fire planning, if required. (4) Coordinated logistics support. (5) Confirmed communication and communication security requirements. c. Continued planning and coordination for future operations. d. Kept the commander apprised of the situation. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3052	Manage TOC Operations Using the Aviation Mission Planning System (AMPS)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0011	Implement Fundamentals of Air-Ground Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion Opord
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	071-332-5000	Prepare an Operation Overlay
No STP and No MOS	071-332-5001	Prepare, Assemble, and Distribute an Operation Plan/Operation Order/Annex
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5002	Prepare a Fragmentary Order
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5004	Prepare a Warning Order
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5022	Prepare a Battalion Situation Report (SITREP)
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	171-630-0015	Supervise the Flow of Information in a Battalion Tactical Operations Center (TOC)
No STP and No MOS	171-630-0041	Assist in Developing an Operations Estimate at Battalion/Squadron Level
No STP and No MOS	301-336-1009	Process Combat Information
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: ESTABLISH AND MAINTAIN A TACTICAL COMMAND POST (TAC CP) (01-1-1306.01-0NRC)
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The tactical situation dictates the establishment of a TAC CP. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The operation of the TAC CP allowed the commander or S3 to control tactical operations continuously. Site selection of the TAC CP allowed uninterrupted communications. No pertinent combat information was missed as a result of inadequate communication in the TAC CP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>1. +The S3 section establishes a TAC CP.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Selected appropriate TAC CP personnel based on METT-TC and the commander's guidance. b. Selected and coordinated mode of transportation for TAC CP (airborne or ground). c. Conducted reconnaissance of the proposed new location. <p>NOTE: The situation and/or time may dictate a map reconnaissance. Reconnaissance should include security and communication requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> d. Established an internal TAC CP security plan. e. Maintained continuous communications with higher, lower, and adjacent units. <p>2. +The S3 section displaces the TAC CP to support current or planned operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Moved the TAC CP to an area where C² of ongoing or planned operations were facilitated. b. Maintained continuous communications with higher, lower, and adjacent units. c. Ensured that the displaced TAC CP was operational and controlled all operations before the main tactical operations center displaced. d. Moved the main TAC CP to a position where C² responsibilities could be resumed. e. Conducted flight-following operations, as required. f. Received and processed required operational reports in a timely manner. g. Prepared and updated situation maps immediately upon receipt of tactical information. h. Maintained a staff journal. <p>* 3. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1050	Transmit Flight Movement Messages
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1052	Operate Sincgars Equipment
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1060	Extract Data From Signal Operation Instructions (SOI) Extract
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
STP 21-24-SMCT	071-326-0515	Select a Movement Route Using a Map
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
No STP and No MOS	113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
STP 1-93C1-SM	113-573-8008	Use Signal Operating Instructions (SOI) Extract
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	301-336-1009	Process Combat Information
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S3 SECTION

TASK: INTEGRATE BATTALION/SQUADRON OPERATIONS INTO THE ARMY AIRSPACE COMMAND AND CONTROL (A²C²) PLAN (01-1-1308.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-100.1(FM 100-103) (FM 3-100.2) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)
 FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 3-04.300(FM 1-300)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: There were no friendly aircraft losses resulting from poor or inadequate integration of operations into the A²C² plan.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. +The S3 section reviews the A²C² plan. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Identified the areas for which the commander was responsible. b. Identified U.S. and allied airspace users. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Army aviation. (2) Other aviation forces. (3) Civil aviation. (4) Unmanned aerial vehicles. (5) Fire support assets. (6) AD assets. (7) Air traffic control. c. Determined A²C² measures imposed by higher headquarters. d. Determined A²C² priorities established by higher headquarters. 2. +The S3 section considers the A²C² plan while developing COA. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Consolidated airspace user requirements for each COA. b. Identified conflicts with airspace usage. c. Determined control measures to resolve conflicts. d. Evaluated the effects of control measures on each COA. e. Recommended a specific COA. 3. +The S3 section develops the battalion/squadron A²C² annex. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Incorporated the commander's airspace priorities. b. Developed the concept of the operation. c. Defined front, rear, left, right, and upper limits of the airspace subsector. d. Outlined the authority (by echelon) designated in higher headquarters' A²C² annex. e. Established control measures. f. Determined the type of control required (positive/procedural). g. Defined information affecting more than two users. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Procedural control measures/restrictions/information not on the overlay. (2) Flight rules (visual and IMC). (3) Airspace control order issuance times. (4) High density airspace control zone and other potentially congested areas. (5) Friendly EW operations that effect airspace users. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(6) FARP locations (active and planned). (7) Airfield locations and operations. (8) Navigational aid locations and times of operation (active and planned). (9) Flight operations center and flight coordination center locations/operations. (10) Control reporting center and control and reporting element (U.S. Air Force). (11) Inadvertent IMC procedures. 4. +The S3 section establishes A ² C ² control measures to support the operation. a. Coordinated requirements with brigade/regiment. b. Adjusted plans and orders, as required. c. Disseminated A ² C ² measures and plans to staff and subordinate elements. * 5. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-3008	Coordinate Aircraft Movement and Identification With Local Air Defense Units
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-4003	Implement Airspace Management Procedures (NAS)
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-5059	Identify Airspace Control Measures
STP 1-93C24-SM-TG	011-143-5062	Determine Army Airspace Command and Control Procedures
STP 1-93C1-SM	011-143-7000	Implement Basic Airspace Command and Control Procedures
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0018	Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0018	Plan Army Airspace Command and Control
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Debriefed the supported commander or S3 on mission execution and lessons learned. b. Debriefed the parent unit commander or S3 on mission execution and lessons learned. * 4. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-3012	Extract Critical Information From Joint Airspace Documents
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After-Action Review
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0310	Perform Duties of Aviation Liaison Officer
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Coordinated for linguist support, as required.</p> <p>b. Established liaison with local officials and NGO.</p> <p>c. Determined area resources available for the mission.</p> <p>(1) Identified civilian requirements.</p> <p>(2) Identified total resources available.</p> <p>d. Briefed the commander and staff on the results of the area assessment and the most supportable COA.</p> <p>e. Completed the host-nation resource estimate.</p> <p>* 4. + The S5/civil affairs officer prepares the civil affairs annex to the OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>a. Provided guidance to the tactical support team.</p> <p>b. Supervised preparation of the civil affairs plan according to the selected COAs and the commander's guidance.</p> <p>c. Coordinated with the higher headquarters civil affairs cell/headquarters for further civil affairs assets, as needed.</p> <p>d. Developed primary and alternate CONPLAN and emergency plans.</p> <p>e. Included anticipated changes to the CMO mission in appropriate CONPLANS.</p> <p>f. Briefed the civil affairs plan to the commander and staff.</p> <p>g. Coordinated for administrative and logistics support of the tactical support team and civil affairs elements.</p> <p>h. Ensured establishment of operational communication between attached civil affairs element and the unit.</p> <p>* 5. +The S5 executes CMO portions of the OPORD.</p> <p>a. Issued a WARNORD to the tactical support team.</p> <p>b. Briefed the tactical support team leaders and other key personnel on the OPORD.</p> <p>c. Issued maps, overlays, and other materials.</p> <p>d. Ensured the establishment of operational communications and a journal.</p> <p>e. Provided additional guidance, as required.</p> <p>6. +The civil affairs team maintains an information field (CMO database).</p> <p>a. Maintained area assessment and study and resource file database input from the tactical support team.</p> <p>b. Maintained copies and working knowledge of existing treaties, SOFA, international law and agreements applicable to the AO.</p> <p>c. Requested information necessary to satisfy the PIR from applicable sources, to include foreign nation information through the tactical support team.</p> <p>d. Modified previously developed estimates and plans according to the latest information available.</p> <p>e. Notified the tactical support team leader of modified estimates and plans.</p> <p>f. Updated the CCIR resulting from modified estimates and plans.</p> <p>* 7. The S5/civil affairs team maintains operational presence in main CP with updated situation map—foreign national resources, DC information, protected targets, unit and incident locations.</p> <p>* 8. +The S5 establishes a CMOC or HACC.</p> <p>a. Coordinated with civil affairs elements to establish a CMOC or HACC.</p> <p>b. Coordinated administration, logistics, and security support through appropriate military channels.</p> <p>c. Reported any information of operational importance gathered by the tactical support team leader.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Ensured OPSEC was maintained in CMOC or HACCC.</p> <p>* 9. The S5/civil affairs team establishes relations with other U.S. government agencies with a responsibility toward the civilian community in the AO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Secured list of agencies operating in AO. b. Established points of contact within other agencies. c. Determined mission and area of responsibility of agencies. d. Maintained contact with other pertinent agencies. <p>*10. +The S5 provides liaison to subordinate units, as required.</p> <p>*11. +The S5/Staff SJA advises the commander of legal obligations and moral considerations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the impact of the mission on the civilian populace. b. Identified civilian casualty figures, property destruction, and infrastructure dislocation. c. In conjunction with the SJA, reviewed foreign nation/host nation agreements, international law, applicable treaties, U.S. policies, and the legal and moral limits on military operations. d. Briefed and recommended changes to the commander, if required. <p>*12. +The S5 validates requests for foreign nation resource or support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Facilitated foreign nation resource acquisition in coordination with the S4. b. Validated legitimacy by ensuring that the requester had exhausted available resources. c. Requested contracting officer assistance, if needed, and assisted in agreement process and acquisition. <p>*13. +The S5/civil affairs team assists in disaster relief operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tasked tactical support team to conduct a hasty site survey to identify emergency or disaster relief requirements. b. Assessed the type and amount of welfare supplies needed for emergency relief. c. Planned and coordinated for the use of U.S. military assets, if needed. d. Conducted hand-off to the specialty team, foreign nation/host nation element or relief organization and continued to monitor. e. Directed a limited operation with tactical support team, if unassisted. f. Monitored the process to completion. <p>*14. +The S5 assists in civil defense operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Tasked tactical support team to assess the existing civil defense structure. b. Assessed the possible use of military assets to assist in the shortfalls of the civilian plan. c. Coordinated plans for U.S., foreign nation/host-nation, or NGO/PVO support. d. Coordinated for military assets in accomplishing civil defense. <p>*15. +The S5 assists in noncombatant evacuation operations.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the commander, staff and the higher headquarters S5/G5 during predeployment, planning, and preparation. b. Conducted liaison with the embassy, NGO/PVO, and involved U.S. and local civilians. c. Coordinated with the SJA to inform the commander of any current status of forces agreement effecting the noncombatant evacuation operations. d. Provided area or country orientation briefings to all personnel involved in the operation. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Assessed the situation with the use of the tactical support team and coordinating staff to—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Identify requirements for linguists and interpreters. (2) Identify numbers, condition, and locations of evacuees. (3) Assess current intelligence data. <p>f. Assisted in the development of the noncombatant evacuation operations plan.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Established a screening and identification system with all participating entities. (2) Planned for the security, health, and welfare of evacuees. (3) Coordinated for evacuee movement, transportation, collection points, AAs, marshalling areas (immediate evacuation points), and staging bases. (4) Considered the effects of the local climate. (5) Identified conflicts between plans of the other U.S. agencies. <p>*16. +The S5 assists in civic action operation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined security requirements. b. Monitored force protection measures. c. Coordinated with the higher headquarters S5/G5, tactical support team, specialty teams, and local officials in development of a plan to reinforce and restore the functional area needing assistance. d. Coordinated the military support of the operation as planned for and/or requested. e. Tasked the tactical support team to coordinate with NGO/PVO and civilian agencies for support. <p>*17. +The S5 coordinates with the higher headquarters S5/G5 for further civil affairs assets, such as functional specialty teams and resource needs.</p> <p>*18. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Battlefield (IPB)

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	101-515-0002	Plan Mortuary Affairs Support Functions
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1183	Identify Duties, Responsibilities and Authority of Officers, Warrant Officers, Noncommissioned Officers, and Civilians
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S5 SECTION

TASK: LIMIT LOCAL POPULATION INTERFERENCE WITH U.S. MILITARY OPERATIONS (01-1-1344.01-0NRC)

FM 3-57(FM 41-10)	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)
FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)
FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)	

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance to prepare for operations. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Correct assessment of the local civilian population and its relationship to military operations resulted in minimal interference with friendly forces. All potential problem areas were identified and addressed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. The S5 develops an area survey concerning the important characteristics of the DC within the battalion/squadron AO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed current intelligence information. b. Estimated the number of DCs, their points of origin, and anticipated direction of movement. c. Determined the number of personnel in each collection camp, AA, and DC camp within the AO. d. Determined the health status of DCs. e. Determined the transportation means of DCs. f. Determined the DC direction of travel. g. Identified who was in charge of the DC camps. h. Estimated the increase or decrease of DCs within the next 48 hours. <p>* 2. +The S5 establishes a plan to eliminate civilian interference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the S1 for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Allocation of MP assets to support local officials. (2) Availability of medical supplies, resources, and personnel that could augment the civilian community. (3) Policies on relations between the civilian community and military personnel. b. Coordinated with the S2 for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Intelligence collection operations. (2) Assistance in determining the capabilities of host-nation government agencies. (3) Procedures for screening civilian traffic to uncover agents and saboteurs. c. Coordinated with the S3 for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Psychological operations support. (2) Identification of alternative elements to perform, CMO missions. (3) Establishment of priorities for allocation of resources. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> (4) Advice on the availability of units and personnel to function in an advisory or assistance role. (5) Information on the tactical situation, boundaries, and plans for future operations. (6) Tactical requirements for control of civilian traffic. (7) Recommendations of routes to use for evacuation of personnel. (8) Recommendations concerning need for evacuation of refugees. d. Coordinated with the S4 for— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Availability of logistics support, priorities and allocations of supplies, and equipment for civilian assistance. (2) Mass sanitation efforts, to include appropriate solid and human waste disposal. (3) Release of civil affairs stocks (Class X). (4) Routes that were reserved for logistics reasons, and ensuring that civilian movement was coordinated with the traffic control plan. (5) Recommendations concerning the use of military transportation for movement of DCs. e. Coordinated with host-nation officials—such as, the mayor, other elected officials, and police and fire chiefs, to limit/control civilian movement. f. Coordinated with the SJA for advice on legal aspects of the civilian population. g. Coordinated with the provost marshal's office for assistance in developing the civilian traffic control plans; planning the location of signs, roadblocks, patrols and checkpoints; and enforcing civilian traffic control, as required. h. Coordinated with subordinate commanders for estimates of civilian interference problems in their appropriate sectors. * 3. The S5 briefs the commander on the proposed plan to minimize civilian interference with U.S. military operations. * 4. +The S5 incorporates the plan in the OPORD. * 5. +The S5 monitors implementation of the plan to ensure that— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Relief supplies reached the DC camps. b. Transportation assets were used to move DCs, particularly the sick, injured, pregnant, and children. c. MP assets were available. d. The S2 screened civilian traffic. e. Psychological operations assets were able to assist in media production and dissemination, if needed. f. The surgeon was kept informed of the health status of civilians and of possible medical assistance, if needed. g. Civil affairs stocks (Class X) were available. * 6. +The S5 informs the commander of current or projected civilian interference with U.S. military operations and recommends actions to limit the impact on U.S. forces. * 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C. 		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0004	Plan for Aviation and Ground Combat Service Support.
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/ Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	101-515-0002	Plan Mortuary Affairs Support Functions
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1183	Identify Duties, Responsibilities and Authority of Officers, Warrant Officers, Noncommissioned Officers, and Civilians
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-336-1009	Process Combat Information
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: PROVIDE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSISTANCE (01-1-1345.01-0NRC)

<u>FM 3-57(FM 41-10)</u>	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)
FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)
FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)	FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)
FM 3-04.113(FM 1-114)	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)	FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability and support operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The unit has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance to provide personnel and support to an environmental assistance operation. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Local security, base camp, and area security operations are ongoing. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. The higher commander's intent is to conduct environmental assistance operations until ordered to hand off to another organization. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The effects of an environmental emergency or disaster were contained. Manpower, engineering assets, communications, and logistics support were allocated within the specified time frame.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Ensured collection, collation, and distribution of information, based on the commander's critical information requirements pertaining to the condition of refugees/displaced persons, their urgent and emergency needs and other humanitarian assistance requirements to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reduction of immediate threats to life. b. Mitigation of suffering, hunger, disease, or privation. c. Improvements to the quality of life. d. Local government capability. * 2. +The S5 processes information gained through civil affairs and civil-military operations activities. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided updated information to the S2 to include— <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Number and makeup of local population. (2) Refugee status—movement into and out of area. (3) Status of essential health and public services. (4) Status of food supplies. (5) Status of law and order. (6) Agricultural situation. b. Provided information to the S4 concerning logistical requirements. c. Established liaison with local civil, police, and military authorities to facilitate the positive and mutual understanding about the environmental assistance effort, if in host nation. d. Briefed the commander and staff, as required. * 3. +The commander and staff prepare an OPORD. Planning addressed the following: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Requirements for manpower, engineering assets, communications assets, power generation, protection of property, and logistics support. b. Requirements for fire fighting, hazardous materials containment, construction, restoration and demining operations, if order dictates. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Organization and support for a disaster coordination element.</p> <p>d. The establishment of an environmental coordinating center—the use of the TOC may be an option.</p> <p>e. Liaison personnel and support requirements.</p> <p>f. Support for incoming liaison personnel.</p> <p>g. Support for visits by media and other agencies.</p> <p>h. Impact on force sustainment.</p> <p>i. Use of contract services.</p> <p>j. Resource shortfalls and assets required from brigade/regiment and higher.</p> <p>k. Other considerations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Information gathering requirements. (2) Distribution of relief aid/supplies. (3) Transportation of personnel for transfer/evacuation. (4) Emergency medical treatment. (5) Transportation of medical personnel and supplies. (6) Preventive medicine and veterinary support. (7) Investigation of missing persons. (8) Handling of human remains. (9) Recovery of property. (10) Protection of property/relief aid supplies. (11) Priorities for protection of civil/military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain. (12) Availability and use of local installations or facilities. <p>* 4. +The S1 develops the personnel estimate.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Advised the commander and staff on the availability of personnel support. b. Prepared changes to the service support annex. c. Requested legal advice from the detailed judge advocate, as required. <p>* 5. +The S4 develops the logistics estimate.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated with the S5 and received update on local civil/military situation. b. Advised the commander and staff on the availability of logistics support. c. Prepared changes to the service support annex. <p>* 6. +The S3 coordinates the operation.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established and directed the TOC or environmental coordinating center. b. Organized and directed the departure of the disaster coordination element and other liaison personnel. c. Established liaison with the civil/military disaster coordination center and other relief agencies. d. Ensured all task requests were processed through the coordinating center. e. Tasked subordinate elements, as required. f. Monitored and tracked all command group and subordinate element activities. g. Conducted briefings, as required. h. Prepared, consolidated, and submitted reports to higher headquarters. <p>* 7. +The XO supervises staff adjustments to the CS/CSS plans.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. War-gamed the environmental support plan with the CSS staff. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Ensured that the force was sustained. (2) Ensured that the CSS plan supported the commander's concept. b. Monitored the operation of the environmental coordination center. <p>8. The battalion/squadron task forces and other elements conduct the operation:</p> <p>NOTE: List is not all-inclusive and is primarily dictated by METT-TC.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established subordinate coordinating centers. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Performed information-gathering missions. c. Established distribution and assistance sites. d. Distributed relief and aid supplies. e. Provided engineering assets. f. Established communications. g. Provided water production, purification, and distribution. h. Provided fire fighting assets. i. Provided power generation assets. j. Performed debris removal. k. Protected and restored properties and facilities. l. Provided emergency medical treatment. m. Provided preventive medicine and veterinary support. * 9. +The commander and staff maintain C ² . a. Positioned the CP to sustain constant monitoring and tracking of subordinate units. b. Maintained detailed journals and prepared written reports. c. Prepared a media plan. *10. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
STP 21-24-SMCT	081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	081-831-9000	Implement Preventive Medicine Measures
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader, or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assessed the impact of the humanitarian support on logistics support capabilities. b. Prepared logistics staff estimates. c. Briefed the commander and staff on logistics support capabilities. d. Prepared the CSS annex to the OPORD. <p>* 4. +The commander and staff conduct the military decision making process and develop the OPORD with special emphasis on—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed the nature of the conflict or natural disaster and the environment—permissive, semipermissive, or hostile. b. Conducted liaison with the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Higher headquarters. (2) Civil affairs/CMO elements. (3) Local civil, military, NGOs, PVOs, and international organizations. c. Determined requirements for the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Manpower to support the operation. (2) Engineering and communication assets required to support the operation. (3) Facilities and power generation requirements. (4) Required protection for civilian personnel and property. (5) Legal requirements. (6) Fire fighting, construction, restoration, and demining requirements. (7) Hazardous material containment. d. Organization and support for an HACC. e. Media and other agencies support requirements. f. Contract services availability. g. Prioritization of protection requirements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Civil/military personnel. (2) Relief/aid supplies. (3) Facilities/installations. (4) Key terrain. h. ROE guidance. i. Information gathering requirements. j. Distribution of relief aid/supplies. k. Transportation of personnel. l. Emergency medical treatment. m. Transportation of medical personnel and supplies. n. Preventive medicine and veterinary support. o. Assistance with the investigation of missing persons. p. Re-settlement and rehabilitation of the population. q. Repatriation of human remains. r. Repatriation of prisoner of war. s. Availability and utilization of local existing facilities. <p>5. +The battalion/squadron provides humanitarian support.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established the coordinating center under the direction of the S5—HACC, if directed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Coordinated humanitarian support activities. (2) Performed liaison with appropriate organizations. (3) Determined all requirements for humanitarian assistance. (4) Recommended priorities of service and distribution of assets. (5) Established subordinate coordination centers. b. Established distribution and assistance sites. c. Performed information-gathering missions. d. Transported aid supplies and personnel. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
e. Provided emergency medical treatment. f. Assisted in the investigation of missing persons. g. Resettled and rehabilitated the population. h. Repatriated human remains. i. Repatriated prisoners of war. j. Provided preventive medicine and veterinary support. * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1061	Prepare a Situation Map
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0012	Employ Air Movement Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0900	Implement the Principles of Medical Evacuation
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0901	Integrate Unit Medical Support
No STP and No MOS	081-831-1047	Supervise the Implementation of Preventive Medicine Policies
No STP and No MOS	101-92Y-0001	Supervise Supply Activities
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: ESTABLISH BASE OPERATIONS (01-1-1348.01-0NRC)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)	FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14)	FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)
FM 3-07(FM 100-20)	FM 3-0(FM 100-5)	FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)
FM 3-04.112(FM 1-112)	FM 3-04.113(FM 1-113)	FM 3-04.120(FM 1-120)
FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)		

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability and support operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The battalion/squadron has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance to establish a base of operations within its assigned AO. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. Area security operations are ongoing. Environmental, construction, and restoration constraints have been determined within higher headquarters orders. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: Base installations/facilities were constructed/restored within environmental and fiscal constraints. Security was maintained on a 24-hour basis. Minimal disruption occurred to peace operations, humanitarian assistance, and other relief operations. There were no violations of the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The S3 determines site suitability. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Directed the reconnaissance of proposed sites. b. Prioritized sites based on suitability, civil/military impact, and other staff input. c. Developed site recommendations, in coordination with the S2 and S5. d. Deconflicted proposed terrain and site assignments. e. Briefed the commander and staff. * 2. +The S5 analyzes intelligence received through civil affairs and CMO activities. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established liaison with local civil, police, and military authorities to determine availability of installations, facilities, terrain sites, and civilian labor force. b. Developed recommendations for use of civil/military installation/facilities or other sites and the civilian labor force. * 3. +The commander and staff develop an OPORD/FRAGO. Planning considers the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assignment of subunit sectors. b. Assignment of contiguous or noncontiguous AOs. c. Composition, location, and size of base camps/installations. d. Distances from urban areas. e. Priorities for protection of civil/military, personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain. f. Visibility of forces to establish force presence. g. Use of static and mobile security assets. h. Security measures. i. Availability of host-nation support. j. Civil affairs/CMO activities. * 4. +The XO supervises the staff in the development of staff estimates addressing base operations requirements. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Planned for integration of other forces operating in the AO.</p> <p>b. Planned for the integration of ground maneuver and CS/CSS assets, as directed.</p> <p>c. Began update of annexes for all CS/CSS systems.</p> <p>5. +The S3 section publishes the OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>* 6. +The S1 plans administrative support for non-U.S. civilian augmentees.</p> <p>* 7. +The S4 develops the logistics estimate, including—</p> <p>a. Requested assistance in planning of contract requirements for logistics/base camp development.</p> <p>b. Planned for the construction of facilities and installations.</p> <p>c. Coordinated procurement and contracting within the battalion/squadron.</p> <p>d. Planned facilities engineering requirements.</p> <p>8. Battalion/squadron forces establish base operations.</p> <p>a. Performed detailed reconnaissance of proposed base camp/installation sites. Considerations must be given to—</p> <p>(1) Requirements established in peace agreements.</p> <p>(2) Environmental constraints.</p> <p>(3) Distances and makeup of urban concentrations.</p> <p>(4) Nature and makeup of the local civil/military population.</p> <p>(5) Priorities for protections of civil/military personnel, facilities, installations, and key terrain.</p> <p>(6) Visibility of forces to establish force presence.</p> <p>(7) Defensive characteristics of the terrain.</p> <p>(8) Communication requirements.</p> <p>(9) Proximity to LOC.</p> <p>b. Conducted mobility operations to clear proposed sites.</p> <p>c. Occupied base camp/installations sites.</p> <p>d. Updated communications plans to support basing plans.</p> <p>e. Established quick reaction forces.</p> <p>f. Began base camp/installation construction, fortification, and other required improvements.</p> <p>g. Began planning for improvement of LOC.</p> <p>9. +The battalion/squadron complies with peace agreement guidelines, higher headquarters directives, and environmental constraints.</p> <p>*10. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.</p>		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1047	Process Information During Tactical Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0004	Employ Combat Service Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0009	Employ Rear Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0024	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion Opord
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0306	Perform Personnel/Administration Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0704	Plan Intelligence Reconnaissance/Surveillance Missions
No STP and No MOS	052-250-1001	Comply With the Host Nation, Federal, State and Local Environmental Laws and Regulations
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6465	Employ the Risk Management Process During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures
STP 21-1-SMCT	301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: DEVELOP A MEDIA PLAN (01-1-1351.01-0NRC)
 FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-0(FM 100-5) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)
 FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is conducting stability and support operations in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. An incident or event has occurred that requires media coverage. The unit has received a directive to host the media event and has received the commander's guidance. Higher headquarters has provided PAO augmentation for this event. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: All aspects of the media event were addressed as a result of accurate planning. The event was completed according to the specified timelines. Key personnel were kept aware of all important details.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander issues initial guidance and directs the staff to assess the nature and impact of the media event in the following areas: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed the effect of the event/incident on the public. b. Determined the public factions most affected by the event/incident. c. Evaluated the impact on unit operations. * 2. The S5 and PAO conduct mission analysis. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the methods of media coverage, in coordination with higher headquarters. b. Determined if media personnel would be isolated or allowed to move through the area under escort. c. Verified higher headquarters clearances. d. Selected tentative locations for the event considering security, weather, accessibility, communications, and power requirements. e. Verified timelines and tie-ins with local events and calendar for impact on host country sensitivities. * 3. +The XO directs staff preparation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Developed and published the itinerary of events and adjusted milestones, as required. b. Established final coordination with key personnel. c. Ensured that all presentations were rehearsed prior to the event. d. Ensured that all key people were briefed prior to the event. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Checked attendance lists. (2) Developed a troubleshooting contact list. e. Obtained advance clearances for media personnel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Provided a media list to gate guards and military police. (2) Provided instructions on how to handle media personnel who had not received advance clearances. (3) Developed a plan to place PAO representatives at the arrival area to verify credentials and issue badges. f. Planned transportation and support requirements. g. Provided the commander with progress reports. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
4. +The battalion/squadron conducts the media event. a. Registered all media representatives. b. Provided badges and press kits. c. Introduced escorts, if required. d. Ensured that all facets of the event were monitored and all problems were solved quickly and quietly. e. Monitored all presentations. * 5. +The commander and staff complete follow-up actions. a. Debriefed key personnel. b. Monitored print media, radio, and television coverage. c. Prepared an after-action report. * 6. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0304	Conduct Battalion/Brigade Rehearsal
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0305	Conduct Battalion/Brigade After Action Review
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1183	Identify Duties, Responsibilities and Authority of Officers, Warrant Officers, Noncommissioned Officers and Civilians
No STP and No MOS	224-300-1000	Participate in a Media Interview
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1051	Enforce Personnel Security Policies

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: BATTALION

TASK: CONDUCT MEDIATION AND NEGOTIATION (01-1-1354.01-0NRC)

FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100)

FM 3-07.7(FM 100-19)

FM 3-07(FM 100-20)

FM 3-0(FM 100-5)

FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

FM 3-100.71(FM 71-100)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—peacekeeping environment. An incident has occurred with the local population that requires mediation and negotiation. The battalion/squadron commander is the ranking peacekeeping military officer in the area. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. An S5 and civil operations team have been attached to assist. This task should not be trained in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The process enabled agreements to be reached and promoted the process of conciliation. The solutions were peaceful, agreeable, and lasting.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The commander and staff produce an OPORD/FRAGO. * 2. +The commander selects a mediator. * 3. +The commander, staff, and selected mediator analyze the situation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined the main issues and oriented on defining the problem, not the solution. b. Reviewed existing agreements or understandings. c. Identified common ground on which to build meaningful dialogue. d. Selected and provided a common map edition and scale for all sides. e. Defined a strategy with clear goals and objectives. 4. +The staff recommends a site for the mediation/negotiation that is secure, neutral, and agreeable parties. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Specified number and rank of attendees. b. Determined protocol. c. Identified interpreter requirements. d. Identified and tasked security elements. * 5. +The mediator conducts the mediation/negotiation. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Provided each side with an opportunity to express its view without interruption. b. Corrected false information with appropriate evidence. c. Allowed the parties to arrive at a mutually agreed solution in compliance with peacekeeping directives. d. Presented a force-preferred solution and encouraged acceptance by all sides if an agreement could not be reached. e. Concluded the meeting with a summary of the dialogue. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Summarized the meeting in writing and obtained signatures from all parties. (2) Recommended a time and location for future negotiations. f. Reported the outcome of the meeting to the commander, staff, and higher headquarters. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. +If authorized, the commander directs immediate implementation and monitoring of the agreement. If not authorized, permission to implement is requested.		
* 7. +Identify and control hazards according to risk management procedures in Appendix C.		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5		TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-420-0027	Implement Stability and Support Operations
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0302	Prepare a Battalion OPORD
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0304	Conduct Battalion/Brigade Rehearsal
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1110	Apply the Essential Elements of Army Leadership Doctrine to a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1134	Resolve an Ethical Dilemma
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1140	Communicate Effectively in a Given Situation
No STP and No MOS	158-100-1331	Apply Ethical Decision Making Process as a Commander, Leader or Staff Member
No STP and No MOS	191-000-0002	Employ Physical Security Measures
No STP and No MOS	224-300-2000	Implement a Public Affairs Plan
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1000	Report Intelligence Information

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: S4 SECTION

TASK: PARTICIPATE IN THE STAFF PLANNING PROCESS (S4) (01-1-1401.01-0NRC)
 FM 5-0(FM 101-5) FM 3-100.14(FM 100-14) FM 1-02(FM 101-5-1)
 FM 3-04.100(FM 1-100) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP and ALOC are operational. CSS assets are in place and operational. The XO has directed each staff section to prepare its respective staff estimate and recommendation, plans, and orders. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The logistics staff estimate, recommendations, plans, and orders were prepared with no errors within the prescribed time frame. Mission accomplishment was not degraded as a result of inadequate logistics planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The S4 conducts a mission analysis.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Reviewed known enemy and friendly situations. b. Reviewed the concept of the operation with the S3. c. Determined the logistics situation, to include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Maintenance. (2) Supply. (3) Services available. (4) Transportation. (5) Labor. (6) Facilities and construction. (7) Civil support. d. Evaluated planning guidance. e. Directed and supervised S4 section activities. <p>2. +S4 Section determines logistics requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Determined subordinate unit logistics requirements. b. Submitted logistics requirements to higher headquarters and appropriate organizations. c. Provided guidance for specific requirements not addressed in the unit SOP. d. Determined supportability of FARP locations through a review of the S2 trafficability analysis. <p>3. +S4 Section prepares the logistics staff estimate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Analyzed COA, to include— <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Sufficiency of AO. (2) Materiel and services. (3) Advantages and disadvantages. b. Indicated whether the mission could be supported from a logistics aspect. c. Recommended which COA, from a logistics aspect, could be best supported. d. Submitted the logistics estimate to the XO. e. Conducted briefings, as required. f. Maintained a current logistics estimate of the situation in coordination with other staff sections. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 4. +The S4 prepares plans and orders. a. Developed administrative movement plans as required. b. Developed the service support annex in coordination with S1. Addressed, as a minimum: (1) Personnel administration. (2) Materiel and services. (3) Medical evacuation and hospitalization. (4) Civil-military cooperation. c. Issued the service support annex and accompanying appendixes to include the overlay. * 5. +Performed risk management for the logistics functional area according to the responsibilities and task standards specified in Appendix C (for example, identify and control hazards associated with night refueling operations at the FARP).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0004	Control Battle Staff Functions Within a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0309	Perform Logistics Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	071-331-0820	Analyze Terrain
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	155-197-0010	Apply the Principles of War During Mission Planning
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 9. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C)..		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0303	Conduct Operations Missions Briefing/ Debriefing
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0308	Conduct Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0504	Prepare a Company-Level Operations Order (OPORD)
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0505	Conduct Company-Level Rehearsals/AAR's
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5002	Prepare a Fragmentary Order
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	071-332-5004	Prepare a Warning Order
No STP and No MOS	154-385-6263	Conduct a Risk Assessment
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1100	Integrate Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) Process Into Mission Planning

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENTS: COMPANY
TROOP

TASK: CONDUCT HASTY ASSEMBLY AREA DISPLACEMENT (01-2-7039.01-0NRC)
FM 3-21.20(FM 7-20) FM 3-04.111(FM 1-111) FM 4-02.2(FM 8-10-6)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in a simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The company/troop has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. The company/troop is directed to conduct a hasty displacement when contact with threat forces has been broken. Indirect fire and smoke support will be provided to cover the move. Initial movement preparations have been made. Simulated destruction of supplies, documents, and equipment has been coordinated with the battalion/squadron CP. Simulated emergency burials have been authorized by the battalion commander. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: The company/troop relocated within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. No serviceable supplies, equipment, or recognizable documents of military value were left behind.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>* 1. +The commander or first sergeant supervises hasty displacement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Assembled soldiers at designated area. b. Briefed troops on the hasty displacement plan. c. Assigned tasks to sections or platoons. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Burial of casualties. (2) Destruction of supplies, equipment, and documents. (3) Load out. (4) Security of the unit during evacuation of the AA. d. Designated vehicles to transport wounded soldiers. e. Coordinated indirect fire and smoke support. f. Briefed stay-behind security force. g. Forwarded SITREP to the battalion/squadron CP. <p>2. +The company/troop conducts emergency burials.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Placed personal effects in bags. b. Attached identification personal effects tags to remains. c. Forwarded casualty feeder reports and witness statements to S1. d. Buried remains in unmarked, mass grave. e. Placed casualty identification tags on a wire/chain in the same order the remains were buried. f. Included an index marker that showed the first or the last interred remains and the direction of succession through the gravesite, if identification tags are placed on a closed loop. g. Prepared strip map with grid coordinates and terrain features of burial site. <p>3. + The company/troop destroys supplies, equipment, and documents left behind.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Destroyed documents according to the unit SOP. b. Destroyed supplies according to the unit SOP. c. Rendered equipment inoperative according to the unit SOP. <p>4. The company/troop departs the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Loaded equipment according to commander's guidance. b. Exited area without confusion and excessive noise. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
c. Assembled at predesignated area. 5. +Stay-behind security force covers company displacement. a. Occupied fighting positions. b. Engaged threat with all available weapons to delay or disrupt advance. c. Performed disengagement under fire. d. Exited area by available means. * 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"**" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-0001	Locate a Geographic Coordinate on a Sectional, JOG-A or TPC
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0110	Direct Establishment of a Tactical Operations Center
STP 1-93P24-SM-TG	011-141-0112	Direct Relocation of a Tactical Operations Center
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0006	Employ Fire Support
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0023	Conduct Assembly Area Operations
No STP and No MOS	071-326-5505	Issue an Oral Operations Order
No STP and No MOS	301-371-1050	Implement Operational Security Measures

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
(4) Provided physical security. b. Operated a secure retransmission station. 5. +The communications section establishes and operates a tactical telephone network. 6. +The communications section implements electronic protection techniques as required. a. Recognized jamming and interference. b. Used appropriate countermeasures—continued to operate, increased power, rerouted radio traffic, relocated antenna, and changed frequency. c. Notified the supervisor of suspected jamming/interference. d. Submitted meaconing, intrusion, jamming, and interference report. * 7. +The commander/leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EP)
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1052	Operate Sincgars Equipment
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1054	Operate Sincgars Data Device
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1056	Operate the VRC-97 (Msrt)
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1057	Operate an AN/GRC-240 (Have Quick II Radio)
No STP and No MOS	011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment.
No STP and No MOS	113-305-1001	Communicate by a Tactical Radio
No STP and No MOS	113-571-1019	Establish, Enter, and Leave A Radiotelephone Net
No STP and No MOS	113-571-1020	Establish and Close an FM Radiotelephone Net
STP 21-1-SMCT	113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
STP 1-93C1-SM	113-573-6001	Recognize Electronic Countermeasures (ECM) And Implement Electronic Counter-Countermeasures (ECCM)
No STP and No MOS	113-573-7017	Prepare/Submit Mijifeeder Voice Template Message Report
STP 21-24-SMCT	113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)
STP 1-93C1-SM	113-573-8008	Use Signal Operating Instructions (SOI) Extract
No STP and No MOS	113-587-1064	Prepare Sincgars (Manpack) for Operation
STP 1-93P1-SM	113-587-2001	Operate Radio Set AN/PRC-77 or AN/PRC-25

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	113-587-2071	Operate Sincgars Frequency Hopping (FH) (Net Members)
No STP and No MOS	113-587-2072	Operate Sincgars Frequency Hopping (FH) Net Control Station (NCS)
STP 1-93P1-SM	113-596-1068	Install Antenna Group OE-254/GRC (Team Method)
No STP and No MOS	113-609-2013	Prepare/Operate Communications Security Equipment TSEC/KY-57 With AN/VRC-12 Series Radio Sets

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

ELEMENT: COMMUNICATIONS SECTION

TASK: PROVIDE TACTICAL COMMAND, CONTROL, COMMUNICATIONS, AND COMPUTERS (C⁴) SYSTEMS PLANNING (01-4-1414.01-0NRC)
FM 6-02(FM 24-1) FM 6-02.7(FM 24-7)

ITERATION: 1 2 3 4 5 M (Circle)

COMMANDER/LEADER ASSESSMENT: T P U (Circle)

CONDITIONS: The battalion/squadron is in simulated—live, virtual, or constructive—combat environment. The staff has received an OPORD/FRAGO and the commander's guidance. The main CP is operational and the staff sections are functioning. Reports are being received through normal channels. Some iterations of this task should be performed in MOPP4.

TASK STANDARDS: A properly configured TACLAN was continuously operated. TACLAN security was not compromised because of improper management and planning.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> * 1. +The signal officer develops a C⁴ support plan that, as a minimum, addresses the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Maintained operational C⁴ systems architecture at all times. b. Provided support to C⁴ system users. c. Monitored operation of C⁴ systems. d. Planned for maintenance, evacuation, and turn-in of C⁴ equipment. e. Integrated all C⁴ systems and communications systems used by battlefield elements to support unit C². f. Maintained configuration control of all software by ensuring that the software was current, compatible, and standardized. * 2. +The signal officer integrates C⁴ systems operations into OPORDs and unit standing operating procedures. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Established C⁴ policies and procedures and briefed unit on mission-specific variations. b. Established policies and procedures for coordination and integration between staff section C⁴ systems. * 3. +The signal officer provides a C⁴ architecture that allows the unit elements to acquire, distribute, and store timely, accurate, and reliable information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Planned, installed, operated, and maintained LANs. b. Planned, and coordinated with the next higher echelon signal unit for interface with wide area networks. c. Planned configuration of the TACLAN. 4. +The staff sections perform user functions for their C⁴ systems. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Coordinated the installation, operation, and maintenance of their respective C⁴ systems and LANs. b. Coordinated LAN interface with the signal officer. * 5. +The signal officer implements C² protect-network security management measures to maintain effective C² by reducing the enemy's potential to influence, degrade, or destroy friendly C² systems. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Implemented protect measures to provide system security. b. Implemented detect measures to detect system intrusion and abuse. c. Implemented react measures to report system intrusion, take appropriate actions, and restore system integrity. 		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
* 6. +Commander/Leader performs, or delegates performance of, the steps in the risk management process for each step in troop leading procedures (see Appendix C).		

TASK PERFORMANCE/EVALUATION SUMMARY BLOCK							
ITERATION	1	2	3	4	5	M	TOTAL
TOTAL TASK STEPS EVALUATED							
TOTAL TASK STEPS "GO"							
TRAINING STATUS "GO"/"NO-GO"							

"*" indicates a leader task step.

SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

References	Task Number	Task Title
No STP and No MOS	011-141-1051	Implement Electronic Protections (EP)
STP 1-93P1-SM	011-141-1052	Operate Sincgars Equipment
No STP and No MOS	011-500-2300	Operate Communications Security Equipment.
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0002	Employ IEW
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0301	Participate in the Military Decision Making Process
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0307	Perform IEW Staff Duties/Responsibilities
No STP and No MOS	011-510-0311	Conduct Military Briefings
No STP and No MOS	113-571-1019	Establish, Enter, and Leave a Radiotelephone Net
No STP and No MOS	113-571-1020	Establish and Close an FM Radiotelephone Net

OPFOR TASKS AND STANDARDS

(None)

CHAPTER 6

EXTERNAL EVALUATIONS

6-1. GENERAL

a. This chapter is a guide for preparing and conducting external evaluations. Major paragraphs detail how to prepare the evaluation, select and train OCs, conduct the evaluation, and conduct the AAR.

b. External evaluations are designed to give the battalion commander and his higher headquarters an assessment of the unit's ability to perform its critical wartime missions. Battalion evaluations are administered at the discretion of the chain of command. They usually are planned, administered, and evaluated at a level that is two headquarters higher than the unit being evaluated. For example, the division headquarters evaluates the battalion with input from the brigade headquarters. The unit should modify the evaluation based on METT-TC, contingency plans, and the battalion's METL. The METL, together with the T&EOs in Chapter 5 of this MTP, provides the primary basis and focus for an external evaluation.

6-2. PREPARING THE EVALUATION

a. **General Preparation Procedures.** To ensure the evaluation accurately measures the battalion's capabilities, the headquarters administering the evaluation must develop a plan to prepare, administer, evaluate, and report the examination results. This section outlines evaluation preparation procedures.

(1) The method used to prepare the evaluation depends on the intent of the commander administering the evaluation. If the intent is to determine the unit's ability to execute its wartime mission, the evaluation should mirror the missions required by their contingency plans. If the evaluation is to be a diagnostic tool to help the commander develop future training plans, the emphasis should be on devising an evaluation that allows him to see his unit perform as many tasks or subtasks as possible in the given time. This evaluation should have as little redundancy as possible.

(2) An evaluation developed to assess fighting abilities should use, as a start point, the battalion's wartime contingency plan and possible missions associated with the execution of that plan. The scenarios will reflect contingency plans; however, the preparer of the evaluation must realize that, because of the nature of missions being evaluated, there will be redundancy in the tasks that must be executed.

(3) In formulating a diagnostic evaluation to help develop future training plans, the initiating headquarters should look across the entire range of missions the battalion might be required to execute. It should select those with as little task and subtask redundancy as possible. This gives the battalion a more comprehensive evaluation in a given time period.

(4) The battalion evaluation often is a combination of evaluating fighting abilities and developing plans and orders. It includes some missions selected because of the battalion's wartime contingency mission. Other missions will be selected because of the value of the tasks and their contribution to a well-rounded evaluation. Despite the technique used, after the mission and tasks are identified, they should be arranged in a logical sequence. The sequence is based on the order in which they will occur in the scenario. The selected missions and tasks are then grouped into events. The end of each event represents a break point where the evaluation scenario can be interrupted, if required, for assessment, AARs, or a change in the scenario. After missions and tasks are grouped into events, they are listed on the unit evaluation worksheet (see Figure 6-1). The worksheet serves as the base document for the AAR.

UNIT EVALUATION WORKSHEET						
Unit: _____						Date: _____
No.	Mission/Task	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Company/ Platoon/ Section	Unit Overall Rating & Remarks
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	
		GO	GO	GO	GO	
		NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	NO-GO	

*If more space is required for remarks use the back side of this form

Page ___ of ___

Figure 6-1. Suggested format for a unit evaluation worksheet.

(5) Preparation includes development of enemy situations, friendly situations, WARNORDs, FRAGOs, OPORDs, overlays, milestones, and message input to support the scenario. Besides being a vital requirement for a well-coordinated evaluation, production of these materials and documents provides excellent staff training (see FM 7-10.2[FM 25-4]).

(6) OC organization and OC information packets must be developed. OC AARs and meeting requirements should be considered with the milestone schedule and key events list.

(7) To prepare the evaluation for a battalion, the higher headquarters should ensure that ample maneuver space is available and supporting forces—OPFOR and CS and CSS elements normally attached to the unit being evaluated—are identified and made available. They also should ensure that sufficient ammunition, POL, and spare parts are on hand.

b. Mission-Essential Task List. The battalion METL, together with the T&EOs in Chapter 5 of this MTP, provides the foundation and focus for external evaluations. It lists the collective tasks the unit must successfully perform to accomplish its wartime mission. It also serves as the start point for the development of the evaluation. All mission-essential tasks should be evaluated to obtain an accurate assessment of the battalion's capability to perform its mission. Additional collective tasks from Chapter 5 can be added to complement the mission-essential tasks. Since it is not possible to evaluate every task in this MTP, selective tailoring is required. The list of evaluated tasks can also be modified when the evaluation is used primarily as a diagnostic tool.

c. Evaluation Scenario Development. Once evaluation tasks are identified and listed, the evaluating headquarters develops a broad exercise scenario and supporting materials. The scenario (see Figure 6-2) shows the logical sequence in which tasks usually would be performed on the battlefield. It should depict general events and broad-time planning factors so it can be revised, refined, and expanded as needed. The materials in Chapter 4 of this MTP are valuable in developing the scenario. Development of the scenario requires manpower devoted to planning and scheduling activities. Many of these actions can be accomplished concurrently. Table 6-1 is a suggested format for an evaluation scenario.

(1) The scenario requires developing a variety of supporting materials. The friendly and enemy situations are developed in detail and prepared as intelligence summaries, OPORDs, map overlays, and related documents. These documents are used later during the evaluation. A master event or incident list is prepared. It depicts the cues or events that cause the battalion to perform the mission-essential tasks. Actual event drivers are developed along with the master event list. These drivers include FRAGOs, messages, OPFOR missions, controller tasks, role player assignments, and records and reports. Determinations of evaluation requirements and responsibilities and preparation of materials that will help the OCs conduct the evaluation are included in this process.

(2) To prepare the master event list, developers must ensure they incorporate the cues or events that will cause the battalion to perform all mission-essential tasks. Because mission-essential tasks are directly related to the collective tasks in Chapter 5, developers will find cues already identified in the condition statement of each T&EO. During planning and developing the exercise, the primary focus must be on structuring the evaluation. It must be structured in such a way to give the battalion a chance to perform its mission-essential tasks to the standards specified in this MTP.

(3) A method of ensuring that most, if not all, mission-essential tasks are included in the evaluation is to expand the general scenario. This is done by listing the mission-essential tasks that will be performed under each phase of the evaluation. Adding an evaluation column to the unit evaluation worksheet produces a chart that can be used to summarize results of the evaluation of each critical task.

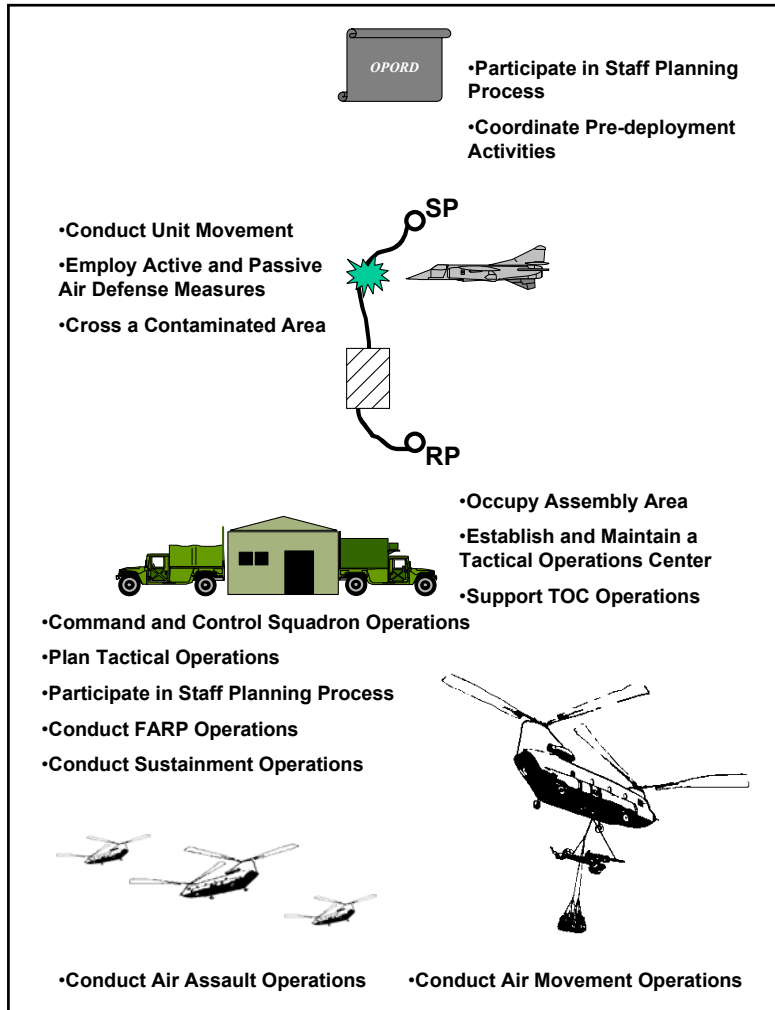


Figure 6-2. Graphic portrayal of an evaluation scenario.

Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario.

FTX: CONDUCT COMBAT/COMBAT SUPPORT OPERATIONS EVALUATION SCENARIO				
SEQUENCE	EVENT	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
1	Administrative Preparations.	Pre-FTX		
2	Battalion receives OPORD.	1 hour	Day 1	
3	Battalion initiates personnel recall and issues WARNORD to companies.	2 hours		
4*	Battalion prepares for tactical movement.	4 hours		
5	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and prepares OPORD.	(2 to) 4 hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)		
6*	Coordinate required assistance during movement.	6 hours		
7	Battalion issues OPORD to subordinate elements.	1 hour		
8*	Monitor movement of subordinate elements.	6 hours		
9*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
10	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours (Total en route time without training events, based on distance traveled)		
11*	Advance party secures AA and establishes hasty defense.	1 hour		
12	Main body crosses a contaminated area (decontamination is not performed; crossing is to train or evaluate crossing procedures only).	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
13	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	N/A		
14	Main body reacts to hostile aircraft.	0.5 hour (AAR if required)		
15	Main body continues tactical move to AA.	N/A		
16	Main body closes on and occupies AA.	1 hour (Unit SOP will vary on when AA occupation is complete)		
17*	Battalion establishes force protection measures.	1 hour		
18*	Aircraft arrive on site and conduct arming and refueling as necessary.	0.7 hour (Depending on distance)		
19	Battalion headquarters establishes TOC.	1 hour		
20*	Companies establish CPs.	1 hour		
21*	Battalion establishes communications with higher HQ (may be simulated).	0.5 hour		
22*	Battalion establishes internal communications.	0.5 hour		

Table 6-1. Suggested format for an evaluation scenario (concluded).

SEQUENCE	EVENT	MAXIMUM TIME ALLOTTED		PROPOSED TIME FRAME
23	Conduct AAR: company and battalion.	1.5		
24	Battalion conducts reconnaissance operations and tactical sustainment.	72.0 hours		
25*	Battalion executes STX-1: Conduct Air Assault Operations.	12 hours	Day 2	
26*	Battalion executes STX-2: Conduct Air Movement Operations.	12 hours	Day 3	
27	Battalion receives FRAGO to redeploy to home station.	1 hour	Day 4	
28*	Battalion prepares for redeployment.	3 hours		
29	Battalion staff conducts staff planning process and issues a FRAGO to the companies.	(2 to 4) hours (Depending on the complexity of the mission)		
30	Redeployment OPORD issued by Battalion.	1 hour		
31*	Conduct advance party operations.	1.5 hours		
32	Main body conducts tactical move.	1.5 hours		
33	Main body closes on and occupies AA Home Station.	3.0 hours. (May be extended for equipment servicing and storage)		
34	Conduct Final AAR: Company and Battalion.	1.5 hours		
		Total Time 96 hours		

* Indicates time is not added to the total time because tasks are performed simultaneously with other tasks.

NOTES:

- The prepared timing factors in this figure illustrate the process for evaluation of development only; therefore, they do not establish ARTEP standards for execution.
- Additional time is required if large portions of the exercise are conducted at night, under limited visibility, or under MOPP conditions.
- Events will be trained to standards, not time limitations. The time required to train an event will vary based on METT-TC factors and the proficiency of the staff.
- AARs are not time constrained.

6-3. RESOURCE REQUIREMENTS AND PLANNING CONSIDERATIONS

Resource requirements and other planning considerations become evident as the evaluation is expanded and developed. Even in the planning stages—when everything is subject to change—developers must begin scheduling, coordinating, and planning to ensure a successful evaluation. Table 6-2 is an example of consolidated support requirements. Requirements and considerations for the evaluation team or other staff agencies that have been designated specific responsibilities include the following:

- a. Scheduling training areas.
- b. Preparing a calendar of events and key milestones for the evaluation, including the final AAR and preparation of the after-action report.

- c. Identifying individual and battalion support requirements. Tasking applicable agencies, personnel, and units required to perform OC, safety, support, OPFOR, and other functions.
- d. Requisitioning training ammunition, training aids and other training materials and fuel, rations, and other required supplies.
- e. Coordinating unit movement and transportation support requirements.
- f. Identifying equipment requirements and coordinating support.
- g. Notifying supporting and supported units of the planned evaluation dates and coordinating adjustments, to include personnel and unit support required to perform the unit's mission while it is undergoing evaluation.
- h. Scheduling and conducting safety training.
- i. Scheduling OC training and orientation sessions.
- j. Identifying and scheduling OPFOR training.

Table 6-2. Example of consolidated support requirements.

AMMUNITION	QUANTITY
5.56-mm (blank)	134 rounds/rifleman
7.62-mm (blank)	400/M60 machine guns
Caliber .50 (blank)	200 rounds per M2 machine gun
Hand grenade (practice)	2 per soldier
Hand grenade fuse (practice)	2 per soldier
Simulator, artillery	8 per company/10 OPFOR
Simulator, booby trap	6 per company/3 OPFOR
OTHER ITEMS	QUANTITY
Diesel and MOGAS	500 gal.
JP8	10,000 gal.
Batteries – BA 200 (6-volt)	48 ea.
Batteries – BA 3090 (9-volt)	560 ea.
Chemlights	4 boxes per company
War Wound Mouflage Kit	1 ea.
MILES equipment for all weapons and personnel.	
MILES controller guns per OC.	

6-4. SELECTING AND TRAINING OBSERVERS-CONTROLLERS

An accurate evaluation depends heavily on selecting OCs with the proper experience. They must be trained to fulfill their responsibilities and supervised throughout the evaluation. Standard procedures are essential. They ensure the evaluation is administered fairly and correctly for all units commanded by the evaluating headquarters.

- a. At the battalion level, the number of OCs required varies. The number required depends on the technique of evaluation. If the intent is to conduct a multiechelon, simultaneous evaluation, the number of OCs can be high. If the intent is to stick to the two-echelons-above rule—that is, division evaluates battalions; battalions evaluate platoons; companies evaluate sections—the number of OCs can be

reduced. An OC team comprised of the following personnel is the minimum recommended to perform an external evaluation of a battalion:

- (1) Senior OC: aviation lieutenant colonel.
- (2) Staff OC: aviation major or captain.
- (3) Operations OC: aviation major.
- (4) Administrative OC: MOS 75Z sergeant first class.
- (5) Logistics OC: MOS 76Y sergeant first class.
- (6) NBC OC: MOS 54B sergeant first class.

b. OCs must be thoroughly familiar with the battalion missions, organization, equipment, and doctrine. They need to understand the overall operation of the battalion. They need to know how it is integrated into and supports Army operations. Team members must have a comprehensive working knowledge of common individual and collective tasks in areas such as attack, screens, covering force, security, communications, and NBC. At least one member of the evaluation team must have detailed expertise in the NBC and local defense common task areas. OCs should be at least equal in grade to the person in charge of the element of which they are making the primary evaluation. If possible, OCs should have had previous experience in the position being evaluated. All members of the team must be able to make objective assessments. They must function effectively as team members. They must be able to articulate their findings orally and in writing.

c. OC training focuses on providing OCs a general understanding of the overall evaluation. This training gives each OC a detailed understanding of his specific duties and responsibilities and builds a spirit of teamwork. OC training should include—

(1) The overall evaluation design, general scenario, master event list, and specific evaluation purposes and objectives. Each event is designed to evaluate specific critical missions or tasks within the overall scenario. The OCs must know the evaluation thoroughly and accurately to ensure that it is implemented correctly.

(2) The battalion METL, and the way it relates to T&EOs and other materials in this MTP. The OC must understand the task, the doctrine required to execute the task, the standards, and the methods used to measure mission and task accomplishment. The battalion TACSOP should be given to each OC. The evaluation validates this document.

(3) The OC team composition and general duties and responsibilities of each team member.

(4) The detailed duties and responsibilities of individual team members. Special emphasis should be placed on the master event list items for which the OCs will be responsible. Information is included on the evaluation control system. It is used to ensure the evaluation is administered in a consistent, standardized manner and correct data are collected for the final evaluation.

(5) A review of the written instructions and materials contained in the OC folders.

(6) A detailed reconnaissance of the area used for the evaluation.

(7) The OC and C² systems, to include a review of the OC organization apparatus. The organization is usually depicted on a flow chart showing evaluation coverage in depth. The C² system normally includes a separate radio net and SOI for OCs. The SOI should include call signs and frequencies for the evaluated unit, controllers, and OPFOR as well as for all OCs. OCs should never rely on the organic tactical radio nets of the unit being evaluated.

(8) Safety procedures.

(9) The evaluation data collection plan and procedures. The plan states how data are to be reported, collected, consolidated, and briefed. It covers times and locations of OC meetings and when OCs should debrief their counterparts.

(10) AAR procedures and techniques according to FM 7-10.2(FM 25-4).

d. A talk-through of the entire evaluation in which the evaluation team war-games all items of the master event list as they happen. The team reviews the objective of each event, individual team member responsibilities, and anticipated problems. OCs should be prepared to ride on aircraft and have in their possession necessary flight gear. FARP, LZ, and PZ locations must be observed. In some cases, it may be necessary for OCs to ride in designated chase aircraft. If so, they must not interfere with the evaluated battalion.

e. The senior OC supervises the operation of the team. He provides team leadership. He focuses his efforts on assuring evaluation personnel fulfill their responsibilities and adhere to the evaluation plan. He answers questions about the evaluation plan, resolves problems, synchronizes the efforts of team members, and ensures close coordination among team members. He holds periodic team coordination meetings, plans and orchestrates the battalion AAR, and conducts specific evaluation team AARs.

6-5. SELECTING AND TRAINING OPPOSING FORCES

Selection and training of the OPFOR are crucial to the success of a standardized evaluation. OPFOR support may be used in only a few tasks; therefore, proper training and employment of this force is important to assure a proper assessment of unit capabilities. OPFOR provide one of the control measures that influences the conditions under which the evaluation is administered. Since it is impossible to have the same OPFOR unit each time, the better trained the OPFOR is to a stated standard, the more standard the evaluation. During an external evaluation, OPFOR support should depict the most likely threat force the battalion will encounter. The force must be augmented with sufficient CS and CSS to accurately portray the expected threat.

a. The OPFOR commander should be well trained in OPFOR tactics and operations. The size of the OPFOR element he commands determines his grade. He can range from senior NCO to field grade officer. Besides duties and responsibilities leading various OPFOR elements, the OPFOR commander is a part-time member of the OC team. To fulfill these responsibilities, the OPFOR commander must participate in OC planning and training activities. He also must be present during AARs.

b. OPFOR elements must be trained, organized, equipped, and maneuvered to depict threat forces as realistically as possible. As a minimum, they must be distinguishable on the battlefield from friendly forces through use of visual modifications. The characteristics of OPFOR weapons—range of weapons, rounds on board, protection, and penetration—should be the same as the enemy force being depicted. Aircraft survivability equipment trainers should be employed to the maximum extent possible to simulate threat AD capability. Some characteristics can be portrayed using the MILES, while others must be represented by OC interaction. OPFOR training must include—

- Threat tactics.
- OPFOR missions and responsibilities.
- ROE.
- OPFOR tasks and standards for each mission.
- Threat weapons and equipment, if available.
- C².

- Safety.
- The evaluation scenario—who does what and when.
- Impact of personnel and equipment shortages in the evaluated unit.

c. Offensive Strength. If available, OPFOR should be armed with weapons organic to the force it is depicting. OPFOR must be able to move rapidly around the battlefield. They should be strong enough to offer the evaluated unit a realistic challenge.

d. Defensive Strength. As in the offense, OPFOR must have weapons organic to the force being depicted. Attack/defense ratios can be greatly reduced directly proportional to the amount of time available for the OPFOR to prepare the defense. The defense should be challenging. Like the offense, it also depends on METT-TC.

6-6. CONDUCTING THE EVALUATION

a. General. The senior OC conducts the evaluation. He also oversees support provided by the individuals and elements selected and trained to fulfill designated functions and responsibilities.

(1) OCs must be free to observe, report, and record the actions of the unit. This chapter covers their selection, training, and duties.

(2) The battalion's next higher headquarters, or a specialized cell drawn from that headquarters, should be selected and trained to serve as the control element for the evaluation. This element issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. This cell is commonly referred to as the *White Cell*.

(3) All exercise participants and supporting personnel should ensure every facet of the evaluation is conducted safely. Personnel observing unsafe conditions must promptly correct them and advise superiors of the situation.

b. Phases of the Evaluation. Conduct of the evaluation is divided into three phases—preevaluation, evaluation, and postevaluation.

(1) Preevaluation phase.

(a) **Reconnaissance of the evaluation area.** The senior OC and all other OCs must make a reconnaissance of the evaluation area. This ensures that all OCs understand the boundaries of the area and locations of key terrain and objectives.

(b) **Review of OC folders.** Under control of the senior OC, OCs should review their evaluation packets to ensure they contain all pertinent administrative and tactical directives. The senior OC must ensure all OCs understand the directives. He should review the milestone schedule. He also should answer any questions about the evaluation plan, control plan, or tactical scenario for the evaluated unit.

(2) Evaluation phase.

(a) **Controlling the exercise.** Normally, the next higher headquarters acts as the controlling unit in a battalion evaluation. As the White Cell, it issues orders, receives reports, provides feeder information, and controls the OPFOR. This frees the OCs to perform their principal duty of observing, reporting, and recording the actions of the evaluated unit. The higher headquarters may designate a separate control element to accompany the evaluated unit. This allows the OC maximum flexibility because he does not have to function as both a controller and evaluator.

(b) **Observer-controllers control.** A separate control element may be absent, or a problem in the control plan could be detrimental to the continuity of the scenario. If so, the OC must be

able to implement the controls required to salvage the operation. If the OC is forced to act, he must guard against overreacting and thus disrupting the initiative and momentum of the exercise.

(c) Ending the event. The senior OC should end an event when the evaluated unit has completed all tasks and missions in a particular event. He also should end the event when the unit has suffered such extensive casualties or damage that assigned missions or tasks cannot be executed. Coordination with the senior OC is crucial to ensure events are stopped and started in a timely fashion. The senior OC may decide he wants to run several events in sequence before halting the scenario to conduct a critique or gather evaluation data. While this decision is normally made before the exercise begins, adjustments can be made during the operation if coordinated with the control headquarters.

(d) Guidelines for observer-controllers. Critical events will be observed based on the milestone schedule. Any action that might have an effect on later performance or mission outcome will be recorded, be specific. Using T&EOs, events will be evaluated according to the unit evaluation worksheet, current doctrine, and unit SOPs. The control headquarters will be kept abreast of the unit's location and intent. This enables the headquarters to control OPFOR action according to the desired sequence of events. ROE will be enforced. Safety will be enforced.

(3) Postevaluation phase.

(a) Once the exercise ends, the senior OC should assemble his OCs and prepare the final AAR. He should then begin work on the final after-action report. The after-action report is a formal document the commander uses to develop future training plans. It addresses all combined arms functional tasks performed in the missions executed during the evaluation. The format and content for the after-action report may vary among commands. However, all after-action reports should have, as a foundation, the unit evaluation worksheet (see Figure 6-1) annotated with the proper rating criteria as demonstrated during the course of the evaluation. In addition, the AAR conducted at the end of the exercise aids in preparing the written after-action report. This gives the commander a precise evaluation of his unit's training status and serves as the bridge between evaluation and training. It also eliminates ambiguity resulting from use of generalized strength/weakness statements.

(b) Unit evaluation worksheets provide a consolidated roll-up of the unit's performance and of the battalion's overall mission rating—such as "Go", "No-Go"—for the missions and their supporting collective tasks. Composition of the worksheet may vary depending on the unit's location, contingency plans, and intent of the evaluation. For example, if the evaluation was designed to give an overall diagnostic assessment, the worksheet concentrates on underlying tasks. For an evaluation to test contingency plans, the worksheet focuses on specific missions.

(c) To aid in planning future training, the battalion's training status is recorded on the unit proficiency worksheet. The worksheet contains assessments of strong and weak areas noted during training and external evaluations. The battalion commander and S3 use this record of training status to develop and modify long- and short-range training plans to prepare the unit for success in combat.

6-7. RECORDING EXTERNAL EVALUATION INFORMATION

a. The senior OC will prepare and execute the evaluation scoring system. The commander makes the final evaluation assessment; the full team takes part in the process. Their report reflects the overall proficiency of the unit in accomplishing its wartime missions.

b. The evaluation system is based on assessment of the unit's performance on each mission-essential task and all other collective tasks in the overall evaluation plan. Evaluations use the following steps:

(1) Step 1. Identify each mission in the evaluation scenario. Prepare a Task Summary Worksheet for each mission (see Figure 6-3).

(2) **Step 2.** Identify the T&EOs in Chapter 5 that correspond to each mission of the evaluation scenario.

(3) **Step 3.** Use T&EO standards to evaluate the battalion's performance of the tasks. Do this for each evaluation task.

(4) **Step 4.** On the T&EO, record a "Go" for each task step performed to standard and a "No-Go" for each task step not performed to standard.

(5) **Step 5.** Record T&EO evaluation information on the task summary worksheet.

(6) **Step 6.** Determine the battalion's overall capability to perform the task using the information recorded on each task summary worksheet and the task standard information from the T&EOs. Use the following as guidance in making this determination:

(a) "Go" - The battalion successfully accomplished all critical task and task step standards.

(b) "No-Go" - The battalion did not accomplish the task to task step standards.

(7) **Step 7.** Record "Go", "No-Go" rating for each mission task on the unit evaluation worksheet (see Figure 6-1).

c. Other locally designed reports approved by the senior OC and prescribed in the evaluation plan may be used to collect evaluation information. These reports should help the team record the information concerning the battalion's capability to perform its wartime mission according to the established standards. This information also helps the senior OC determine the unit's overall final rating. The following reports may be used:

(1) **Unit data sheet.** This report records personnel and equipment status information as well as narrative strength and weakness data (see Figure 6-4).

(2) **Environmental data sheet.** This report records information concerning weather and terrain conditions present during task performance (see Figure 6-5).

(3) **Personnel and equipment loss report.** This report records information about battalion personnel and equipment losses in OPFOR engagements (see Figure 6-6).

(4) **Other reports.** These cover BOS, losses, equipment status, supply status, and weapons effects, as locally prescribed. (See examples in Figures 6-7 through 6-11.)

6-8. CONDUCTING THE AFTER-ACTION REVIEW

a. AARs expand the value of an evaluation. They provide direct feedback to battalion members. They involve them in the training diagnosis process and enable them to discover for themselves what happened during the evaluation and why. Participants identify errors and seek solutions that increase the value of the training and reinforce learning. The senior OC is responsible for the AAR process. He coordinates the entire AAR program from the initial planning of the evaluation through after-action phases.

TASK SUMMARY WORKSHEET			
MISSION: Air Assault			
T&EO NUMBER	TASK TITLE	EVALUATION	
		GO	NO-GO
01-1-1001	Command and Control (C ²) Battalion/Squadron Operations		
01-1-1002	Direct the Staff		
01-1-1016	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures		
01-1-1019	Integrate Aircraft Survivability Measures		
01-1-1020	Coordinate Downed Aircrew Recovery Operations		
01-1-1022	Coordinate Fire Support		
01-1-1024	Coordinate the Safety Program		
01-1-1028	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (ASO)		
01-1-1101	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S1)		
01-1-1120	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (CSM)		
01-1-1201	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S2)		
01-1-1203	Process Information into Intelligence		
01-1-1301	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S3)		
01-1-1303	Plan, Coordinate, and Control Tactical Operations		
01-1-1306	Establish and Maintain a Tactical Command Post (TAC CP)		
01-1-1308	Integrate Battalion/Squadron Operations Into The Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Plan		
01-1-1311	Perform Liaison Operations		
01-1-1401	Participate in the Staff Planning Process (S4)		
01-1-1403	Inform the Commander of Equipment Readiness Status		
01-2-0203	Camouflage Vehicles and Equipment		
01-2-0403	Comply with Established Army Airspace Command and Control (A ² C ²) Measures		
01-2-2035	Implement Fratricide Prevention Measures		
01-2-2036	Report Information		
01-2-2047	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures		
01-2-2051	Employ Passive Air Defense Measures		
01-2-5105	Conduct Air Assault Operations		
01-2-7105	Perform Aerial Passage of Lines		
01-3-7726	Conduct Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) Operations		
01-4-1352	Establish Communications		
01-4-1414	Provide Tactical Command, Control, Communications, and Computers (C ⁴) Systems Planning		
EVALUATOR'S COMMENTS			
EVALUATOR'S SIGNATURE		DATE	

Figure 6-3. Suggested format for a task summary worksheet.

UNIT DATA SHEET						
1. BATTALION DESIGNATION:				DATE:		
2. UNIT LEADERS (CIRCLE MOST CORRECT ANSWER)						
POSITION	RANK	TIME IN UNIT (MONTHS)				
BN CDR	LTC	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN XO	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN S3	MAJ	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
BN MAINT OFFICER	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
HHC CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
CO CDR	CPT	1-3	4-6	7-12	13-18	≥19
3. BATTALION STRENGTH (excluding leaders):						
4. EQUIPMENT SHORTAGES (Major items):						

5. COMMENTS:						

OBSERVER CONTROLLERS SIGNATURE: _____						

Figure 6-4. Suggested format for a unit data sheet.

ENVIRONMENTAL DATA SHEET						
EXERCISE NUMBER AND DESCRIPTION:						
DATE/TIME EXERCISE STARTED:						
DATE/TIME EXERCISE ENDED:						
1. WEATHER CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Clear	Partly Cloudy	Cloudy	Hazy	Rain	Snow	Fog
Other:						
Temperature:						
2. GROUND CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Dry	Wet	Ice	Snow			
Other:						
3. LIGHT CONDITIONS: (Circle appropriate description)						
Day	Night					
Moon Phase:	None	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	Full	
Average Range of Visibility Due to Light:						
4. TERRAIN: (Circle appropriate description)						
Flat	Rolling	Mountainous	Jungle	Desert	Urban	Artic
Other:						
Top Soil:	Sandy	Rocky	Clay	Other:		
Average Range of Visibility Due to Terrain:						
5. REMARKS:						

Figure 6-5. Suggested format for an environmental data sheet.

PERSONNEL AND EQUIPMENT LOSS REPORT					
UNIT IDENTIFICATION:					
Mission Title or Task Number	Date/Time of Enemy Contact	Friendly KIA/WIA	Enemy KIA/WIA	Friendly Vehicles Destroyed	Enemy Vehicles Destroyed
COMMENTS:					

Figure 6-6. Suggested format for a personnel and equipment loss report.

COMMAND AND CONTROL					
OBSERVABLE RESULTS:	BN	HHC	A CO	B CO	C CO
Mission OPORD received at					
Warning order issued at					
OPORD and graphics disseminated (one-third/two-third rule)					
Reconnaissance conducted					
Precombat checks					
Rehearsal conducted					
Coordination with adjacent/rearward supporting elements					
Plan refined					
Fire plans made—direct and indirect					
Combat status—Number and percentage of operationally ready aircraft/vehicles					
KEY EVENTS:					

Figure 6-7. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: command and control system.

NBC			
OBSERVABLE RESULTS:			
	LOSSES	ELEMENT	REMARKS
Friendly losses to chemical tasks			
	LOSSES	ELEMENT	REMARKS
Friendly losses persistent contamination (after attack)			
	MINUTES	ELEMENT/TYPE	REMARKS
Time after chemical strike mission continues			
KEY EVENTS			

Figure 6-8. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: NBC.

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT				
OBSERVABLE RESULTS:				
	HHC	A CO	B CO	C CO
Number/percentage of battalion vehicles/elements than ran out of Class III or Class V items				
Number/percentage of damaged vehicles recovered versus not recovered				
KEY EVENTS:				

Figure 6-9. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: combat service support.

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (VEHICLE STATUS)						
TYPE VEHICLE	BUMPER/TAIL NUMBER	DAMAGED/ DESTROYED/ MAINTENANCE	LOCATION	DATE NON-AVAILABLE	REMARKS	TOTAL DAYS
Combat Vehicles Listed						
Recovery Vehicles Listed						
Supply Vehicles Listed						
Command and Control Vehicles Listed						
KEY EVENTS:						

Figure 6-10. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: CSS-vehicle status.

COMBAT SERVICE SUPPORT (REQUISITION STATUS SUPPLY ITEMS)			
UNIT PRIORITIES	03	06	13
HHC			
A CO			
B CO			
C CO			
TOTAL			
REMARKS:			

Figure 6-11. Suggested format for an AAR collection chart: CSS-requisition status supply items.

b. Key steps in the AAR process include the following:

(1) After-action review planning. Planning for AARs is initiated during preparation activities long before the start of the actual evaluation. AARs are integrated into the general scenario at logical break points and into the detailed evaluation scenario that is developed later. Qualified OCs are selected and trained. This phase also includes identification of potential AAR sites and the requisition of equipment and supplies needed to conduct the AAR.

(2) After-action review preparation. Preparation for the AAR begins with the start of the actual evaluation. In addition to the OCs watching the battalion perform its combat critical tasks, this phase includes a review of training objectives, orders, and doctrine. Final AAR site selection is completed, and time and attendance requirements are established. AAR information is gathered from OCs and applicable battalion personnel. The AAR is organized and rehearsed.

(3) After-action review conduct. AARs are an ongoing process throughout the evaluation. They are conducted at logical break points in the exercise, at the end of each event or mission, at intervals directed by the senior OC, and at the end of the evaluation. In a multilevel evaluation, an oral AAR of the action to date takes place at every level between the OC and his counterpart in the evaluated unit. After AAR participants assemble, the senior OC opens the AAR with a statement of purpose. He also establishes the AAR ground rules and procedures and restates the training and evaluation objectives. The following are some guidelines for a successful AAR:

(a) AARs are not critiques. They are professional discussions of training events.

(b) The senior OC guides the discussion to ensure the participants openly discuss important lessons.

(c) Dialogue is encouraged among OCs and unit personnel. Discussion covers not only strengths and weaknesses, but also the rationale behind the decisions and actions that resulted in the demonstrated strengths or weaknesses.

(d) All individuals who participated in the evaluation are present for the AAR, if possible. As a minimum, every unit or element that participated in the exercise is represented.

(e) Participants discuss not only what happened but also how it happened and how it could have been done better.

(f) Events that were not directly related to the major training objectives are not examined.

(g) Participants do not offer self-serving excuses for inappropriate actions.

(h) The reason for success or failure of a unit is specifically tied to its performance on a task. Summations by the OC should focus on the demonstrated proficiency of the unit in executing T&EOs.

(i) Sequentially, the discussion will normally cover what was planned and what happened relative to the doctrine that applies to the action, followed by critiques from the OC and from the OPFOR view.

(j) Discussion should focus on training objectives as they relate to the BOS.

(k) The result should be that soldiers and leaders, through discovery learning, gain a better understanding of their individual and collective strengths and weaknesses and become more proficient in training for and performing their combat critical tasks.

APPENDIX A

COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

A-1. GENERAL

a. CATS is the Army's *over-arching training architecture*. CATS contains approved training and doctrinal strategy. It provides the framework for total Army structured training for both units and institutions. CATS functionally groups tasks to guide the integration of tasks into combined arms oriented training strategies. Current CATS provides doctrine-based training strategies. These strategies include events, gates, and training resource options for the institution or unit trainer. CATS integrates training horizontally among levels of a type unit and vertically across the combined arms and services team. Aviation CATS includes a crosswalk of individual, crew, and collective METL tasks that require flying hours. As such, CATS provides a basis for the preparation of a unit's flying-hour program.

b. Commanders are expected to become intimately familiar with CATS as a tool to determine who will be trained (units, individuals), what will be trained, when and where training will occur, and how collective and individual tasks will be trained. CATS also helps commanders identify, quantify, and acquire required training resources. CATS is long- and short-range individual and collective training strategy.

(1) Commanders are most concerned with a short-range CATS. CATS is the training plan to attain and sustain the desired level of performance proficiency on each critical warfighting task. CATS is prescriptive rather than descriptive for unit commanders. It provides the following:

(a) Identifies specifically who will be trained, what will be trained, when and where training will occur, and how each critical task is trained.

(b) Identifies training media/method/site options.

(c) Identifies initial and sustainment training requirements for individual and unit critical tasks.

(d) Estimates resource requirements.

(e) Provides a doctrinally based foundation for a unit's training plan.

(2) The long-range CATS looks to the future training requirements of the Army. It describes, in broad terms, how the Army will train its units and soldiers. CATS may not appear to be an immediate tool to support training; however, commanders and staffs should become familiar with ongoing training development initiatives. Future training processes, tools, and resources—such as TSPs, distance learning products, and TADSS—are often made available in a piecemeal approach. They may be useful to the commander who is aware of their availability.

(3) Self-development is the individual's responsibility. The self-development CATS, published as Part 2 of the Career Development Model, provides a guide for individuals to posture themselves for promotion, better job performance, or self-motivated improvement in personal performance. It is available to facilitate leader development.

A-2. AVIATION COMBINED ARMS TRAINING STRATEGY

Aviation training principles are not different from other combat arms branches; however, unique considerations are given to developing and maintaining currency and proficiency at the individual, crew,

and collective levels. Effective individual and crew training programs form the foundation for an aviation battle-focused training program. These programs produce combat-ready crews and become the basis for the unit's collective training program.

a. The aviation CATS includes a crosswalk among individual, crew, and collective tasks. These tasks require flying hours to determine the OPTEMPO needed to train to and sustain individual, crew, and collective proficiency.

b. The aviation CATS reflects multiechelon training to optimize training opportunities at all levels. As such, individual and crew sustainment training must be an integral part of a unit's ongoing collective training. About 75 percent of individual and crew aviator sustainment training can be done while performing collective tasks. It is important to note, however, that not all individual and crew training can be done while units are engaged in training a collective task. Some training resources must be allocated to individual and crew training as outlined in the appropriate ATMs.

c. The aviation CATS is crosswalked with the BLTM to ensure adequate OPTEMPO resourcing. The aviation CATS also is crosswalked with the readiness requirements in AR 220-1. TC 1-210 provides guidance on readiness reporting.

d. The aviation CATS is crosswalked with available simulators and simulations to provide guidance on tasks that can be accomplished in these devices. Commanders should set up structured simulation training exercises.

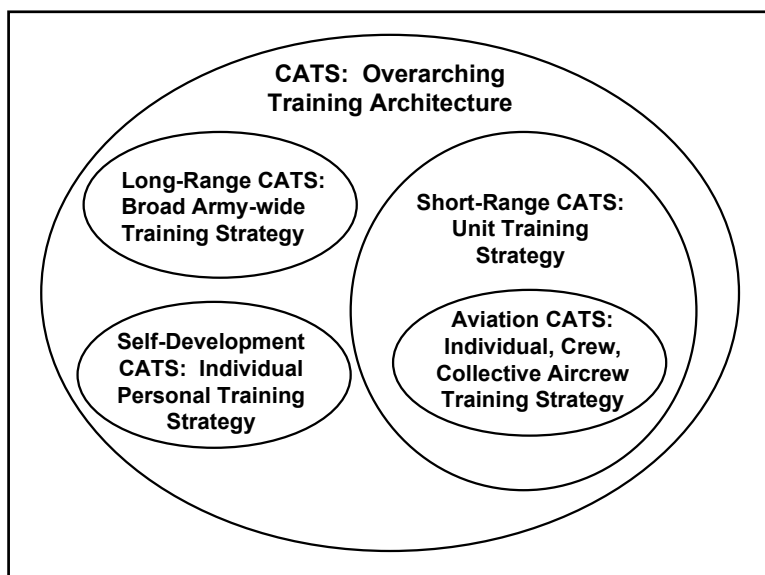


Figure A-1. Combined arms training strategy.

e. The aviation CATS is used by a commander and his staff to help prepare an aircrew training strategy. The model is flexible in that a commander may add or delete individual, crew, or collective tasks. Assumptions include—

- An assignment strength of 100 percent.
- A turnover rate of 33 percent.
- Requirements to train four brigade staff aviators and four AVIM aviators.
- AVCATT and flight simulators that are available—if not, an equivalent live OPTEMPO is required.

- No FAC 3 aviators.
- Thirty-three percent of newly assigned aviators are progressed to RL1(P) based on a records check.

f. TC 1-210 and the appropriate ATM include specific aviation CATS guidance. The aviation CATS is available to help commanders plan and develop a flying-hour program through the associated database.

APPENDIX B

EXERCISE OPERATION ORDERS

B-1. GENERAL

Exercise scenarios present a general situation. This situation gives the participants background information normally available in a combat situation. Exercise OPORDs issued from a higher headquarters are the primary instruments used to provide sufficient detail and guidance. This guidance helps the training unit prepare OPORDs, annexes, and overlays. Exercise OPORDs also ensure the training unit takes actions that lead to achieving the training objectives of the exercise. Exercise OPORDs may be identical to standard OPORD formats (see FM 5-0[FM 101-5]). They may use traits that facilitate modularity, retraining, administrative conditions, flexibility, and reusability. For example, the dates used in the exercise OPORD may be in terms of training days rather than actual dates. This especially applies for exercises that use simulations. This is true since battlefield conditions can be easily manipulated to allow a unit to repeat a particular day's training with little resource impact. Figure B-1 is a sample of an aviation brigade exercise OPORD that makes use of this feature. It portrays the general scenario. It includes the missions of higher and adjacent units—whether live, virtual, or constructive. It also includes the training that the battalion will conduct.

UNCLASSIFIED	Copy ___ of ___ copies 4 th BCT MOJAVIA Training Day 01 thru 09
OPORD 9-00 (DESERT FURY)	
Reference: Map information from the Close Combat Tactical Trainer terrain database known as Primary #2 (National Training Center/Desert Database). The map sheets are (SIMULATION ONLY): Sheet 2654 I, Series 1, Edition AF, CCTT Primary #2 Tiefert Mountains; Sheet 2754 IV, Series 1, Edition AF, CCTT Primary #2 Red Pass Lake; Sheet 2654 II, Series 1, Edition AF, CCTT Primary #2 Alvord Mountain; Sheet 2754 III, Series 1, Edition AF, CCTT Primary #2 Cave Mountain.	
Time zone used throughout the order: LIMA (L)	
Task Organization: Annex A (Task Organization).	
1. SITUATION	
a. Enemy Forces. Annex B.	
b. Friendly Forces:	
(1) III U.S. Corps Mission: Continue deployment to MOJAVIA; continue marshaling operations, and on order, conduct combat operations with ground, air, and naval forces to reestablish the International MOJAVIA/KRASNOVIA border.	
(a) Corps commander's Intent: Complete the deployment of forces to establish a defense with three divisions to prevent any further penetration of MOJAVIA's territory. Once the divisions are in place, we will counter attack, with an infantry division (mechanized) in the center sector (4 th ID [M]) as	

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order.

the main effort, to reestablish the international border. The divisions in the north and south sectors will conduct supporting attacks on 4th ID's flanks. Success is restoration of the international border and the Corps in a posture to conduct pursuit operations into KRASNOVIA's territory.

(2) Fourth ID (M) mission: Fourth ID (M) secures division airhead in OBJ STRIKE on TNG DAY 01 and conducts forward deployment of forces using ground assets and intra-theater airlift. Defend in sector along PL GRANT (LD) NLT TNG DAY 02, and complete the rearward passage of lines of MOJAVIA forces NLT TNG DAY 03. Attack enemy theater ballistic missile sites on TNG DAY 04 to protect the force during the III (U.S.) Corps buildup. Conduct a movement to contact from PL GRANT to PL IKE beginning TNG DAY 06. Conduct a guard along PL IKE beginning TNG DAY 08. O/O, attack in zone to restore the original MOJAVIA/KRASNOVIA border, and establish a defense in sector along the MOJAVIA/KRASNOVIA border (PL GEORGE to PL MARSHALL), to repel any follow-on attacks by KRASNOVIA forces.

(a) Division Commander's Intent. Restore the territorial integrity of MOJAVIA. I intend to use the 4th Brigade combat team as an aviation-heavy covering force to provide time and space for the rest of the division to deploy in sector. I see this covering force defeating at least a regimental-sized attack. I want to conduct air assault against an infantry task force under the C² of the aviation brigade to secure the division's airhead in OBJ STRIKE and complete the forward deployment of the rest of the division's assets using intra-theater airlift, air movement, and ground assets. Speed is the key to success in this operation. We must get the balance of the division's combat power forward as quickly as possible. Brigades must plan air loads to facilitate quick deployment and occupation of sectors. When the rest of the division closes in sector, we will attack to reestablish the border NLT TNG DAY 10. Success is defined as restoring the former international border, and establishing a defense along the border with at least 70 percent of our combat power retained.

(b) Concept of the Operation. The Division will accomplish this operation in three phases. Phase I - now through completion of the reception, staging, onward movement, and integration of the 4th ID in sector. This phase ends with the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Brigades in place and prepared to conduct offensive operations. Phase II - Attack to reestablish the international border. This Phase ends with the restoration of the former border and the preparation of our defense. Phase III - Defense on the international border (PL MARSHALL) through cessation of hostilities.

(c) Fourth BCT, initially the main effort, establishes a covering force from PL GRANT to PL IKE in sector. We will begin with the 4th BCT conducting an air assault to secure the Division airhead in OBJ STRIKE. Fourth BCT will then conduct attacks on enemy theater ballistic missile launchers and infrastructure while we build sufficient combat power in theater to conduct decisive operations. Upon deployment to the area of operations, 2nd BDE becomes the main effort, and attacks to seize OBJ BLUE and clears enemy from PL GEORGE to PL MARSHALL. First BDE conducts a supporting attack in the northern sector to seize OBJ RED and clears enemy from PL GEORGE to PL MARSHALL. Third BDE conducts a supporting attack in the southern sector to seize OBJ GOLD and clears enemy from PL GEORGE to PL MARSHALL. Fourth BCT supports the main effort by attacking KRASNOVIA reserve forces. First MOJAVIA INF DIV is the rear tactical combat force.

(3) First BDE, 4th ID (M) conducts forward deployment and defends in sector along PL GRANT in the northern sector.

(4) Second BDE, 4th ID (M) conducts forward deployment and defends in sector along PL GRANT in the center sector.

(5) Third BDE, 4th ID (M) conducts forward deployment and defends in sector along PL GRANT in the southern sector.

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order (continued).

(6) 1st MOJAVIA INF DIV (M), to 4th ID's front, established covering force areas in sector after halting KRASNOVIA forces west of PL IKE. The MOJAVIA Forces are currently at 50-percent strength. However, their morale is high and they are prepared to defend their homeland at all costs.

(7) 55th ID (M), on 4th ID's left flank, is currently building combat power to prepare for offensive operations.

(8) 25th AD, on 4th ID's right flank, is currently building combat power to prepare for offensive operations.

(9) 6th (U.S.) Air Force provides:

- (a) Counterair.
- (b) Air Interdiction.
- (c) Close Air Support.
- (d) Intra-theater airlift.

(10) (USN) Carrier TF 2-21 (USS Bracwell) provides:

- (a) Counterair.
- (b) Air Interdiction.
- (c) Close Air Support.
- (d) Naval Surface Weapons Support (USS Arleigh Burke)

c. Attachments and Detachments: See ANNEX A.

2. MISSION: 4th BCT conducts an air assault to seize the division airhead and secure OBJ STRIKE on TNG DAY 01. Conducts combat operations from TNG DAY 02 to TNG DAY 09 to support the forward deployment of the 4th ID (M) and set the conditions for 4th ID (M) counterattack beginning NLT TNG DAY 10.

3. EXECUTION

Commander's Intent: The Cavalry will screen forward of OBJ STRIKE to identify any mechanized or mobile threat to the air assault. The ATKHB will provide preassault fires, overwatch and conduct hasty attacks against any threat identified by the cavalry. The GSAB and HVY Lift Bn must maintain the ability to support division CS and CSS requirements with aerial resupply during all phases of the operation. Success is seizure of OBJ STRIKE and the brigade postured to support the division's defense, preparing to transition to the offense, and retaining 70 percent of our combat power.

a. Concept of the Operation. See Annex C.

(1) Maneuver. This operation will be conducted in three phases, synchronized with the 4th ID (M) concept of the operation.

(a) Phase I. 4th BCT conducts an air assault to seize the division airhead in OBJ STRIKE on TNG DAY 01 and completes the rearward passage of lines of MOJAVIA forces NLT TNG DAY 03. 4th BCT conducts air movement to support the forward deployment of the division beginning TNG DAY 02. The 4th BCT, initially the main division effort, will attack enemy tactical ballistic missile targets (launchers and infrastructure) beginning TNG DAY 04, while the division moves forward to

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order (continued).

brigade tactical assembly areas. 4th BCT will conduct a movement to contact from PL GRANT (LD) to PL IKE beginning TNG DAY 06. 4th BCT will conduct a Guard along PL IKE beginning TNG DAY 08.

(b) Phase II. 4th BCT and supporting artillery conduct deep battle operations against enemy artillery and other high payoff targets.

(c) Phase III. 4th BCT conduct deep battle operations on advancing KRASNOVIA forces and counterattacks with the division reserve to prevent any penetration of PL MARSHALL.

(2) Fires.

(a) Scheme. The purpose of fires is to support the air assault to suppress and attrit the enemy in zone with emphasis on OBJ STRIKE. Provide preassault fires for a task-force size air assault. Assist in suppression of enemy in all phases

(b) Priority of fires by phase: See Annex D.

(c) CAS. The BCT has 8 sorties per day.

(d) Restrictions. Target priority of engagement initially is ADA, reconnaissance assets, tanks, and APCs.

(3) Reconnaissance and Surveillance. Division and higher intelligence assets will provide reconnaissance.

(4) Intelligence. Priority of information collection is reconnaissance assets, air defense assets, first echelon regiment, artillery, second echelon regiments, and radars.

(5) Engineer.

(a) Engineer support will be centralized under the BCT to provide rapid situational obstacle emplacement capability. Engineers will be prepared to employ situational obstacles to support a transition to the hasty defense if necessary. Engineer reconnaissance will emphasize terrain and enemy obstacle information.

(b) Priority of engineer support by phase: see Annex F.

(6) Air Defense. Priority of protection by phase: see Annex G.

(7) Information Operations. Deception. The deception objective is to confuse the KRASNOVIA commander as to our true strength in sector. Maintain radio listening silence until crossing the LD.

b. Tasks to Maneuver Units.

(1) 1/10th Cavalry.

(a) Phase I:

1. Conduct a screen along PL GRANT beginning TNG DAY 01 until OBJ STRIKE is secure.
2. Assist the rearward passage of lines of MOJAVIA forces beginning TNG DAY 02 through TNG DAY 03.

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order (continued).

3. Conduct a guard along PL GRANT on TNG DAY 04 through TNG DAY 05.
4. Conduct a movement to contact in zone from PL GRANT to PL IKE on TNG DAY 06 through TNG DAY 07 to locate and defeat the advance guard of the 1st CAA's first echelon regiment.
5. Conduct a guard along PL IKE on TNG DAY 08 through TNG DAY 09.

(b) Phase II:

1. O/O released to Division control to support the 4th ID (M) counterattack to reestablish the international border.

(2) 1-4 ATKHB.

(a) Phase I:

1. O/O OPCON to 2-4 GSAB for the air assault of TF 1-22 IN.
2. O/O conduct air assault security to set the conditions for the successful air assault of TF 1-22 IN on TNG DAY 01
3. O/O conduct hasty attacks in support of the rearward passage of lines of the KRASNOVIA forces on TNG DAY 02 through TNG DAY 03.
4. O/O conduct a deliberate attack to destroy tactical ballistic missile sites on TNG DAY 04 through TNG DAY 05.
5. O/O conducts hasty attacks in support of the movement to contact from PL GRANT to PL IKE on TNG DAY 06 through TNG DAY 07.
6. O/O conduct hasty attacks in support of the guard along PL IKE on TNG DAY 08 through TNG DAY 09.

(b) Phase II: O/O conduct a deliberate attack of KRASNOVIA reserve forces.

(c) Phase III: O/O conduct hasty attacks in support of the division defense in sector.

(3) 2-4 GSAB.

(a) Phase I:

1. Conduct air assault TF 1-22 IN on TNG DAY 01 to seize the division airhead and secure OBJ STRIKE.
2. O/O conduct air movement operations to support the forward deployment of the division on beginning TNG DAY 02 through TNG DAY 09.
3. Provide one command and control aircraft in support of division operations.

(b) Phase II:

1. O/O conduct air movement operations for resupply in division AO.
2. Provide one command and control aircraft in support of division operations.

(c) Phase III:

1. O/O conduct aerial resupply in division AO.
2. Provide one command and control aircraft in support of division operations.

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order (continued).

- (4) 1-159 AVN BN (HVY).
 - (a) Phase I:
 - 1. O/O OPCON to 2-4 GSAB for the air assault of TF 1-22 IN.
 - 2. Conduct air assault TF 1-22 IN on TNG DAY 01 to seize the division airhead and secure OBJ STRIKE.
 - 3. O/O conduct air movement operations to support the forward deployment of the division on beginning TNG DAY 02 through TNG DAY 09.
 - (b) Phase II: O/O conduct air movement operations for resupply in division AO.
 - (c) Phase III: O/O conduct aerial resupply in division AO.
- (5) TF 1-22 IN. Phase I:
 - 1. O/O air assault to seize division airhead and secure OBJ STRIKE on TNG DAY 01.
 - 2. Maintain security of the division airhead until released to 1st BDE NET TNG DAY 09.
- c. Tasks to combat support units.
 - (1) Fire Support. See Annex D.
 - (2) 1/A/2-439 ADA.
 - Organization for combat:
 - 1/1/A/2-439 (MANPAD TM) (OPCON 1/10 CAV)
 - 2/1/A/2-439 (MANPAD TM) (DS 1/10 CAV)
 - 3/1/A/2-439 (MANPAD TM) (DS 1/10 - TEXAS FARP)
 - 4/1/A/2-439 (MANPAD TM) (DS 4th BCT - NEVADA FARP)
 - 5/1/A/2-439 (MANPAD TM) (DS 4th BCT - BDE CP)
 - 6/1/A/2-439 (MANPAD TM) (DS 4th BCT - BDE CP)
 - (3) 1/A/56th ATS BN.
 - (a) Establish division airfield in ISB (O/O in AA DOG) and conduct required coordination/liaison as per Annex D (A²C²).
 - (b) O/O provide NAVAID support at brigade FARPs.
 - (c) Provide flight following services during all phases.
 - (4) C/299 EN.
 - (a) Situational Obstacles. Coordinate situational obstacle location with ground assets.

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order (continued).

- (b) Obstacles.
 - 1. Report and mark all obstacles.
 - 2. O/O breach minefields.
- (c) O/O mark and maintain lanes to support bypass.
- d. Coordinating Instructions.
 - (1) CCIR.
 - (a) Which avenue of approach is the focus of enemy reconnaissance?
 - (b) Is the enemy deploying separate advance guard battalions on multiple regiment avenues of approach?
 - (c) Upon contact with CRPs, where are the FSE(s) in relation to the AGMB(s)?
 - (d) Upon contact with the FSE, where is the main body in relation to the advance guard battalion(s).
 - (e) Has the enemy deployed three row surface-laid or FASCAM minefields in support of the advance guard?
 - (f) Has any platoon lost of two or more tanks.
 - (g) Has any platoon lost three or more CFVs.
 - (h) Has any company lost more than two aircraft.
 - (2) Risk Reduction.
 - (a) Immediate action per SOP.
 - (b) Vehicle identification per SOP.
 - (3) Rules of Engagement. Units conducting reconnaissance engage aircraft only in self - defense.
 - (4) Force Protection. Troop safety: negligible risk to unwarned, exposed personnel.
 - (a) MOPP: Level 2. OEG: 50 CgY.
 - (b) Air defense posture is "Yellow" weapon control status is "Tight".
 - (5) Ground units make visual contact at all contact points on boundaries.
 - (6) Bypass authorized at company/troop level for dismounted OPs in restrictive terrain.
 - (7) Downed pilot pick-up points are CPs 2-10.
 - (8) Actions on contact: suppress, report, and bypass all enemy contact during the Phase I air assault on OBJ STRIKE.
- 4. SERVICE SUPPORT See Annex F.

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order (continued).

5. COMMAND AND SIGNAL

a. Command.

(1) TAC CP.

- a. Phase I: O/O, collocated with 1/10 CAV TOC, location TBD.
- b. Phase II: collocated with 1/10 CAV TOC. O/O, OBJ STRIKE.
- c. Phase III: AA DOG.

(2) Main CP.

- a. Phases I and II: At ISB
- b. Phase III: AA DOG.

(3) Rear CP at ISB; future location TBD.

(4) Alternate CP located at 2-4 GSAB TOC.

(5) Succession of Command: CDR 1/10 CAV, 2-4 GSAB, 1-4 ATKHB.

b. Signal.

(1) SOI index KTV 1600C in effect.

(2) Messenger schedule and routes TBP.

(3) Deception plan support with minimal radio traffic until crossing the LD.

(4) Emergency signals per TACSOP.

ACKNOWLEDGE:

JONES
COL

OFFICIAL:

PENNY
S3

ANNEXES: A - Task Organization
B - Intelligence
C - Operations Overlay
D - Fire Support
F - Engineer.
G - Air Defense.
H- Signal
I - Service Support.
O - Airspace Command and Control.

UNCLASSIFIED

Figure B-1. Sample exercise operations order (concluded).

B-2. TAILORING ORDERS

Subsequent higher headquarters' OPORDs/FRAGOs are developed that portray various factors that affect the difficulty of the missions. These orders give commander/exercise director options to tailor the exercise to the unit's level of proficiency. The commander/exercise director uses the *crawl-walk-run* training philosophy. For example, as portrayed in the upper half of Figure B-2, based on his assessment of the unit, the commander/exercise director used the crawl version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. Based on the unit's performance, this was followed by the walk version of the Mission 2 FRAGO and then the run version of the Mission 3 FRAGO. In the lower half of Figure B-2, the commander/exercise director also began with the crawl version of the Mission 1 FRAGO. However, based on the unit's performance and the commander/exercise director's judgment, the unit repeated Mission 1; but, this time the walk version of the Mission 1 FRAGO was issued. These are just two of the many options/combinations that are possible.

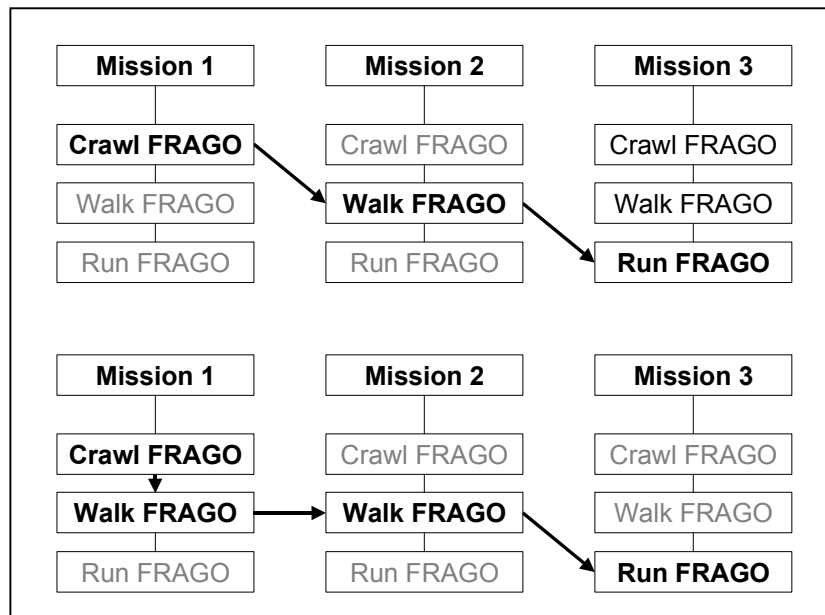


Figure B-2. Tailoring orders.

APPENDIX C

RISK MANAGEMENT

C-1. BACKGROUND

Risk management is the process of identifying and controlling hazards to protect the force. It is the Army's principal risk reduction process. The intuitive management of risk in conducting military training and operations is old but its systematic application, as part of Army doctrine, is relatively new. Therefore, this appendix presents a summary of how-to-do-it information based on FMs 5-0(FM 101-5) and 3-100.14(FM 100-14). **Note:** Key risk management terms are defined at the end of this appendix.

C-2. APPLICATION

Risk management is applied to reduce the risk of the full range of METT-TC hazards, including enemy action. It is integrated into the military decision-making process as indicated in Figure C-1.

*Military Decision-Making Process	Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls and Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise and Evaluate
1. Receipt of Mission	X				
2. Mission Analysis	X	X			
3. COA Development	X	X	X		
4. COA Analysis (War Game)	X	X	X		
5. COA Comparison			X		
6. COA Approval			X		
7. Orders Production				X	
8. Rehearsal	X	X	X	X	X
9. Execution and Assessment	X	X	X	X	X

*FM 5-0(FM 101-5)

Figure C-1. Risk management integrated into the military decision-making process.

C-3. RESPONSIBILITIES

a. General Responsibilities at Battalion/Squadron and Higher. Every staff officer must integrate risk management into the planning and execution of training and operational missions. Staff officers assist the commander in minimizing unnecessary risk by increasing certainty in all operations. He uses the risk management process to assess his functional area. He also uses it to make control measure recommendations to reduce or eliminate risk to support the combat power dynamic of force protection. Examples of this process include the following:

(1) Applying risk management during the MDMP to identify force protection shortcomings in the BOS functions.

(2) Developing and implementing controls for the commander that support the mission by avoiding unnecessary risk and loss of combat power.

(3) Providing support to operational requirements and establishing procedures and standards that are clear and practical for each specified and implied task.

b. Specific Responsibilities at Battalion/Squadron and Higher.

(1) Commander (overall).

- (a) Provide risk guidance.
- (b) Select hazard control options.
- (c) Make risk decision for COA.
- (d) Enforce and evaluate controls.

(2) Executive officer (staff supervision).

- (a) Supervise risk management integration across entire staff.
- (b) Ensure hazards and controls are integrated into plans and orders.
- (c) Ensure staff monitors and enforces controls during execution.

(3) Staff officers (functional area).

(a) Identify hazards most likely to result in loss of combat power, such as hazards that are not adequately controlled.

(b) Develop control options that address reasons for hazards.

(c) Integrate hazards and selected controls into functional area paragraphs, graphics, and annexes of OPORD.

(4) Safety officer/noncommissioned officer (coordination).

(a) Assist commander and staff with risk management integration during mission planning, execution, and assessment.

(b) Collect hazards and controls identified by staff; use to prepare risk assessment and control measures for all operations.

(c) Coordinate staff risk management and make recommendations to S3.

c. Responsibilities at Company/Troop and Lower. The commander/leader performs or delegates performance of the risk management process for each step in troop-leading procedures (see Figure C-2).

Troop-Leading Steps		Identify Hazards	Assess Hazards	Develop Controls and Make Risk Decision	Implement Controls	Supervise and Evaluate
1	Receive mission	X				
	-Perform initial METT-TC analysis	X				
2	Issue the WARNORD	X				
3	Make a tentative plan	X	X			
3A	Make an estimate of the situation	X	X			
3B	Detailed mission analysis	X	X			
3C	Develop situation and COA for:	X	X			
3C1	-Enemy situation (enemy COAs)	X	X			
3C2	-Terrain and weather (OCOKA)	X	X			
3C3	-Friendly situation (troops and time available)	X	X			
3C4	-COA (friendly)	X	X			
3D	Analyze COA—war-game	X	X			
3E	Compare COA			X		
3F	Make decisions			X		
3G	Expand selected COA into tentative plan			X		
4	Initiate movement				X	
5	Reconnoiter				X	
6	Complete the plan				X	
7	Issue the order				X	
8	Supervise and refine the plan					X

Figure C-2. Risk management integrated into troop-leading procedures.

C-4. RISK MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

The commander and staff perform the actions listed below. The safety officer collects the information generated during these actions and enters it on the risk management worksheet (see Figure C-3).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE 1 of 1	
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3 RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. REEVALUATE RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. C-OC/IX/OC/AC/TC/OM/PE
Adverse Environment - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout						
Continuous Operations - Fatigue						
Unfamiliar Terrain - Flight Plan - Landing Zone						
Inadequate Planning Time						
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW MODERATE HIGH EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION		

ID Hazards

Figure C-3. Risk management worksheet—ID hazards.

a. Identify Hazards.

(1) Collect METT-TC hazard facts for each COA for the mission or task (see Figure C-4). Sources include the following:

- (a) Mission order/task instructions.
- (b) Commander's critical information requirements.
- (c) Mission planning systems.
- (d) Tactical SOP.
- (e) Unit accident history.
- (f) Reconnaissance.
- (g) Experience.

<ul style="list-style-type: none">•MISSION:<ul style="list-style-type: none">-Air assault infantry personnel-Insert NLT 042100 Sep, Rover Beach LZ-Prepared to extract NLT 042200 Sep, same LZ•CONDITIONS:<ul style="list-style-type: none">-One company UH-60, 2 CH 47D, 2 AH-64-Load: 14 fully equipped soldiers, 540 lb special equipment-Blackout conditions-LZ: 114 mi. from departure point, 100 yd wide, sand/dirt/grass-WX: restricted visibility en route & LZ (illum, rain, fog, loose sand)•SITUATION:<ul style="list-style-type: none">-Crew: fully qualified, experienced, superb teamwork-Mission brief at 041530 Sep (crew & PAX)

Figure C-4. Example mission factors.

(2) Review the mission's METT-TC factors to identify those enemy and accident/fratricide hazards that are most likely to cause loss of combat power. That is, identify those hazards that are not adequately controlled at this or the next lower echelon of command. To do this, answer the questions in the matrix in Figure C-5 to determine if the hazard needs to be risk managed.

	Adequate	
	YES	NO
Support - Is type/amount/capability/condition of support adequate to control hazard? - Personnel - Equipment/materiel - Supplies - Services/facilities		
Standards - Is guidance/procedure adequately clear/practical/specific to control hazard?		
Training - Is training adequately thorough and recent enough to control hazard?		
Leader - Is leadership ready, willing and able to enforce standards required to control hazard?		
Unit Self-discipline - Is unit performance and conduct self-disciplined to control hazard?		

If all "yes", no further action.
If one or more "no", risk manage this hazard.
(Enter it on the risk management worksheet).

Figure C-5. Matrix for determining risk management of hazards.

(3) Hazards determined to require risk management are identified to the safety officer/NCO who enters them on the worksheet in Block 5 (see Figure C-3).

b. Assess Hazards.

(1) Determine the risk level of each hazard that is not adequately controlled. Figure C-6 and best judgement are the basis for selecting the risk level.

		HAZARD PROBABILITY				
		<i>Frequent</i>	<i>Likely</i>	<i>Occasional</i>	<i>Seldom</i>	<i>Unlikely</i>
s e v e r i t y	<i>Catastrophic</i>	E	E	H	H	M
	<i>Critical</i>	E	H	H	M	L
	<i>Marginal</i>	H	M	M	L	L
	<i>Negligible</i>	M	L	L	L	L

Risk Level:
E - Extremely High
H - High
M - Moderate
L - Low

Figure C-6. Risk assessment matrix—assess hazards.

(2) Provide the risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO. The safety officer/NCO enters this information in Block 6 of the risk management worksheet as the initial risk level for each hazard (see Figure C-7).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET			PAGE 1 of 1			
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: <u>MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3</u> RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. CONTROL EFFECTIVE
Adverse Environment - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH					
Continuous Operations - Fatigue	H					
Unfamiliar Terrain - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H					
Inadequate Planning Time	EH					
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW MODERATE HIGH EXTREMELY HIGH			10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION			

Figure C-7. Risk management worksheet—assess hazards.

c. Develop Controls.

(1) Develop one or more controls to eliminate each hazard or to reduce its level of risk. Controls should address the reasons the hazard needs to be risk managed (see C4a[2] above).

(2) Provide controls to the safety officer/NCO who enters them in Block 7 of the risk management worksheet (see Figure C-8).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET			PAGE 1 of 1			
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: <u>MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3</u> RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. CONTROL EFFECTIVE
Adverse Environment - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure Crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed				
Continuous Operations - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to				
Unfamiliar Terrain - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current photographs/maps of LZ				
Inadequate Planning Time	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted				
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW MODERATE HIGH EXTREMELY HIGH			10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION			

Figure C-8. Risk management worksheet—develop controls.

d. Determine Residual Risk.

(1) For each hazard, use the risk assessment matrix (see Figure C-9) and judgment to determine the level of risk remaining, assuming the controls are implemented.

		HAZARD PROBABILITY				
		<i>Frequent</i>	<i>Likely</i>	<i>Occasional</i>	<i>Seldom</i>	<i>Unlikely</i>
S e v e r e t y	<i>Catastrophic</i>	E	E	H	H	M
	<i>Critical</i>	E	H	H	M	L
	<i>Marginal</i>	H	M	M	L	L
	<i>Negligible</i>	M	L	L	L	L

Figure C-9. Risk assessment matrix—determine residual risk.

(2) Provide the residual risk level for each hazard to the safety officer/NCO who enters it in Block 8 of the risk management worksheet (see Figure C-10).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE 1 of 1	
1. MSN/TASK: Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3 <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. OPERATIONAL EFFECTS
Adverse Environment - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure Crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H			
Continuous Operations - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to	M			
Unfamiliar Terrain - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current Photographs/maps of LZ	M			
Inadequate Planning Time	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H			
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW MODERATE <u>HIGH</u> EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR <small>RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION</small>		

Figure C-10. Risk management worksheet—residual risk.

e. Determine Course of Action Risk.

(1) The safety officer/NCO determines the overall risk level for each COA assuming the commander selects the controls and they are implemented. He uses procedures in the unit's SOP to do this. If the unit has no such procedures, the COA's overall risk level is the same as the hazard with the highest residual risk. He circles the COA's risk level in Block 9 (see Figure C-10).

(2) The safety officer/NCO analyzes the feasibility and acceptability of each COA in terms of residual risk. He scores the residual risk criterion for each COA using weights determined by the XO and provides these scores for entry on the decision matrix.

(3) The safety officer/NCO presents hazards, controls and risks during the commander's decision briefing. Risk management worksheets may be used for this purpose.

f. Make Risk Decision.

(1) The commander selects the COA and decides whether to accept the COA's risk level. He decides what level of residual risk he will accept and approves control measures that will result in that level or a lower level of risk. He obtains the higher commander's approval to accept any level of residual risk that might imperil the higher commander's intent or is not consistent with his risk guidance. In Block 10, the safety officer/NCO enters the name, rank and duty position of the commander accepting the COA's risk level (see Figure C-10).

(2) The S3 develops and issues a WARNORD that contains the commander's refined risk guidance.

g. Implement Controls.

(1) Based on the commander's decision and risk guidance, staff determines how each control will be put into effect or communicated to the personnel who will make it happen. For example, FRAGO, OPORD, TACSOP, mission briefing, and rehearsals. The safety officer/NCO enters this information in Block 11 of the risk management worksheet (see Figure C-11).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET					PAGE 1 of 1	
1. MSNTASK: Insertion / Extraction		2. DTG BEGIN: 042100SEP97 END: 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97		
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3 RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. WPL/ Risk Level	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL Risk Level	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. PERSONNEL ASSIGNMENT
Adverse Environment - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure Crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals Mission Brief Rehearsals	←	IMPLEMENT
Continuous Operations - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to	M	TACSOP	←	
Unfamiliar Terrain - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current photos/maps of LZ	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals	←	
Inadequate Planning Time	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H	FRAGO	←	
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW MODERATE HIGH EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR RANK/LASTNAME/DUTY POSITION		

Figure C-11. Risk management worksheet—implement.

(2) The staff coordinates controls, integrates them into the FRAGO and/or appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD, and confirms understanding by subordinate units during the rehearsal.

h. Supervise.

(1) The staff determines how each control will be monitored and/or enforced to ensure it is effectively implemented. Examples of monitoring and enforcement methods are command presence, direct supervision, PCI, PCC, SITREP, spot check, radio net monitoring and crosstalk, and back-brief.

(2) The staff provides control supervision methods to the safety officer/NCO who enters them in Block 12 (see Figure C-12).

RISK MANAGEMENT WORKSHEET						PAGE 1 of 1
1. MSNTASK : Insertion / Extraction			2. DTG BEGIN : 042100SEP97 END : 042200SEP97		3. DATE PREPARED: 041300SEP97	
4. PREPARED BY: MAJ PARKER, ASSISTANT S-3 RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION						
5. HAZARDS	6. INITIAL RISK LEVEL	7. CONTROLS	8. RESIDUAL RISK LEVEL	11. HOW TO IMPLEMENT	12. HOW TO SUPERVISE	13. SUPERVISOR (Last Name/Initial)
Adverse Environment - 0% Illumination - Complete Blackout - Visibility during Flight - Brownout	EH	En route altitude greater than 500 ft AGL. Ensure Crew has current hazard map NVDs will be used PC/AC will brief brown-out procedures Aircraft ramp tongue and cargo door closed	H	Mission Brief Rehearsals Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supv Mission Updates	SUPERVISE
Continuous Operations - Fatigue	H	Ensure crew rest plan is adhered to	M	TACSOP	Direct Supv	
Unfamiliar Terrain - Flight Plan - Landing Zone	H	Ensure crew has current photographs/maps of LZ	M	Mission Brief Rehearsals	Direct Supv Mission Update	
Inadequate Planning Time	EH	Full rehearsal will be conducted	H	FRAGO	Direct Supv	
9. OVERALL RISK LEVEL AFTER CONTROLS ARE IMPLEMENTED (CIRCLE ONE): LOW MODERATE HIGH EXTREMELY HIGH				10. RISK DECISION AUTHORITY: COLONEL BATTISTE/BDE CDR RANK/LAST NAME/DUTY POSITION		

Figure C-12. Risk management worksheet—supervise.

i. Risk Management Assessment.

(1) The staff evaluates the effectiveness of each control in reducing the risk of the targeted hazard. They provide a "yes," if effective, or "no," if not, to the safety officer/NCO who enters this information in Block 13.

(2) For each control judged not effective, the staff determines why and what to do the next time the hazard is identified. Examples of these procedures are change the control, develop a different control, or change the method of implementation or supervision. They provide this information to the safety officer/NCO who reports it during the AAR.

(3) The safety officer/NCO evaluates the unit's risk management performance and reports it during the AAR. The matrix below (see Figure C-13) may be used for this report.

	GO	NO GO
Identified the most important hazards.		
• Available facts for each METT-TC factor gathered and considered?		
• Hazards (enemy and accident) most likely to result in loss of combat power identified?		
Assessed risk level of each hazard.		
• Valid method/tool used to assess initial risk levels?		
Developed appropriate control options and determined residual risk.		
• Each control addressed hazard reasons?		
• Residual risk level realistic for each hazard?		
• Valid method/tool used to determine the residual risk level for each COA?		
• Residual risk level for each COA entered on decision matrix?		
Made risk decision for selected COA.		
• Valid procedure/guidance used for determining risk decision authority?		
Hazards and controls clearly communicated to responsible unit/leadership.		
• Controls integrated into appropriate paragraphs and graphics of the OPORD/FRAGO and rehearsals?		
Implemented and enforced controls.		
• Effective methods used to supervise/enforce controls?		

Figure C-13. Risk management task standards and performance assessment.

C-5. DEFINITIONS

a. Hazard. Actual or potential condition that can cause injury, illness, or death of personnel; damage to or loss of equipment or property; or mission degradation.

b. Condition. The readiness status of personnel and equipment with respect to the operational environment during mission planning, preparation, and execution. Readiness that is below standard leads to human error, material failure, and inadequate precautions for environmental factors, which may cause accidents, fratricide, and mission degradation.

c. Risk. The probability of exposure to injury or loss from a hazard. Risk level is expressed in terms of hazard probability and severity.

d. Probability. The likelihood that an event will occur. Levels of probability are—

- Frequent. Occurs often, continuously experienced.
- Likely. Occurs several times.
- Occasional. Occurs sporadically.
- Seldom. Unlikely but could occur at some time.
- Unlikely. Can assume it will not occur.

e. Severity. The expected consequence of an event in terms of degree of injury, property damage, or other mission-impairing factors. Levels of severity are—

- Catastrophic. Death or permanent total disability, system loss, major damage, significant property damage, mission failure.
- Critical. Permanent partial disability, temporary total disability in excess of three months, major system damage, significant property damage, significant mission degradation.

- Marginal. Minor injury, lost workday accident, minor system damage, minor property damage, some mission degradation.
- Negligible. First aid or minor medical treatment, minor system impairment, little/no impact on mission accomplishment.

f. Controls. Actions taken to eliminate hazards or reduce their risk.

g. Risk Assessment. The identification and assessment of hazards—the first two steps of the risk management process.

h. Residual Risk. The level of risk remaining after controls have been selected for hazards. (Controls are identified and selected until residual risk is at an acceptable level or until it cannot be practically reduced further.)

APPENDIX D

AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY

SECTION I. FUNDAMENTALS AND THREAT CONSIDERATIONS

D-1. FUNDAMENTALS OF AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY

Tactical helicopters are protected with ASE while operating throughout the battlefield conducting their assigned missions. Aircraft survivability encompasses a vast array of disciplines. There is a tendency to equate ASE as the whole of aircraft survivability. ASE is a portion of EW, which is but one pillar that supports IO and/or IW. FM 3-13(FM 100-6) changed EW terminology to the following three functions:

a. Electronic Attack. EA (formerly ECM) is that division of EW involving the use of electromagnetic or directed energy. EA is used to attack personnel, facilities, and equipment. Its intent is to degrade, neutralize, or destroy enemy combat capability. EA includes actions taken to prevent or reduce the enemy's effective use of the electromagnetic spectrum. These actions include jamming, destruction, and electromagnetic deception. EA includes the employment of weapons using either electromagnetic or directed energy—such as lasers, radio frequency, and particle beams—as their primary destructive mechanism. EA also includes the employment of weapons using sources of electromagnetic energy as the primary means of terminal weapons guidance for the purpose of damaging or destroying personnel, facilities, or equipment. ASE systems include chaff, flares, radar jamming, and IR jamming.

b. Electronic Protection. EP (formerly ECCM) is part of EW. EP involves actions taken to protect personnel, facilities, and equipment from effects of friendly or enemy EW actions. These actions may degrade, neutralize, or destroy friendly combat capability. To minimize its vulnerability to EA, EP should be considered for all battlefield systems deriving operational capabilities through the use of the electromagnetic spectrum. Included are optical, electronic, IR, and radar target acquisition, NCTR systems, as well as smart weapons systems' sensors, fuses, guidance, and control components. ASE systems include antenna design, signature reduction, and IR absorbing paint.

c. Electronic Support. ES (formerly ESM) is the division of EW involving actions tasked by, or under the direct control of, an operational commander. The purpose of this division is to search for, intercept, identify, and locate sources of radiated electromagnetic energy for immediate threat recognition. This division supports EW operations and other tactical actions such as threat avoidance, homing, and targeting. ES focuses on surveillance of the electromagnetic spectrum to support the commander's immediate decision-making requirements for the employment of EW or other tactical actions. The other tactical actions include threat avoidance, targeting, or homing. ES normally is provided by organic intelligence and sensing devices based on EW technology integrated into other weapon systems. ES may also be provided by assets from other echelons capable of providing combat information to the supported command. The purpose of ES is to ensure EA and EP applications receive the input needed to operate effectively. Examples of ES actions are battlefield systems that execute direction-finding operations, detect and identify enemy missions or other electromagnetically-measured signatures for immediate exploitation. Other examples are battlefield systems that locate high value targets for electronic attack, and provide threat avoidance information. ASE systems include radar, laser, and IR missile detecting sets.

D-2. TENETS

The role of ASE is to reduce the vulnerability of our aircraft. This ASE support allows the aircrew to accomplish their immediate mission and to survive to fight another day. ASE tenets support the methodology to achieving survivability. ASE tenets are a five-fold approach to ensure that Army aircrews can accomplish their mission again and again. These five tenets are listed below *in the order of least cost and most effective to the greatest cost and least effective*.

a. Tactics (Electronic Protection). Proper tactics reduce exposure times to enemy weapons. NOE flight not only limits LOS exposure times, but also places the aircraft's radar, IR, and optical signature in a cluttered environment. NOE tactics combined with ASE protection and standoff ranges allow Army aviation to not only survive, but perform its mission on the battlefield. ASE protection is severely degraded when the aircraft is not flown tactically sound (blue-sky background).

b. Signature Reduction (Electronic Protection). These measures are taken into account by engineering or design changes such as flat canopies, exhaust suppressers, and coating the aircraft with low-IR reflective paint. Signature reduction alone greatly increases survivability. Without signature reduction, ASE effectiveness is degraded and, in some cases, erased. Signature control is also performed by the aviator choosing how much signature to expose to the threat.

c. Warning (Electronic Support). The next step in ASE protection is to provide warning to aircrews when they are about to be engaged, allowing them time to react. Examples of such warning devices are radar, laser detecting sets, and IR missile warning systems.

d. Jamming and Decoying (Electronic Attack). Aircrews must stay on station despite warnings. If a warning occurs, countermeasures capable of jamming and or decoying the fire control or guidance systems of threat weapons are required. Chaff, flares, and radar and IR jammers provide this type protection.

e. Aircraft Hardening (Vulnerability Reduction). Aircraft hardening provides for ballistic tolerance and redundant critical flight systems. It also provides crashworthy features to help minimize the damage to an aircraft once it has been hit.

f. Sequence. Sound tactical flight and signature reduction provide the baseline. Warning leads to jamming and each tenet is sequential starting from the most effective and least expensive to the least effective and most expensive.

D-3. THREAT CONSIDERATIONS

This section is not system specific in nature. It is designed to provide a general knowledge of threat systems that can be applied to specific threats on a case-by-case basis.

a. Threat Engagement Sequence. All weapon systems must complete a series of events, called an engagement sequence, to actually have effect on the target (aircraft). Any step in the engagement sequence that is missed forces the threat to start over again. Weapon systems sensors must—

- Detect.
- Acquire.
- Track.
- Launch and guide—or fire and ballistics.
- Assess damage.

b. Example Threat System. Five elements required to compute an AAA fire control solution are range, azimuth, elevation, velocity, and TOF. If one of the fire elements is incorrect, the AAA system will not hit the target.

c. Time and Space. The threat must detect, acquire, track—establish fire control solution—and fire at the aircraft. The TOF of the projectile must be determined. The threat must predict where the aircraft target will be—within a few meters—when its ordnance travels to a point in space and time.

d. Tools. Tactics, signature reduction, warning, jamming, and decoys are the tools available to preclude a successful threat engagement. If hit, the aviation may have to count on aircraft hardening.

e. Acquisition Versus Track. The difference between detection and acquisition versus tracking is very important. In detection and acquisition, the threat weapon system does not have refined data to fire at its target. The threat weapon system must track the aircraft long enough to determine range, azimuth, elevation, and velocity to predict when and where to fire to hit its target. Indications of search or acquisition activity may indicate, to the aircrew, time to increase its vigilance—such as change mode of flight and actively searching for masking terrain features. Tracking indications alert the aircrew to an immediate action requirement—masking, or when terrain is not readily available, ASE decoys and evasive maneuvers.

f. Engagement Envelope. All threat systems are confined by physics. Each system has a maximum altitude and range in which its projectile will travel. In addition, all threat systems have a minimum and maximum effective altitude and range. These numbers are computed against a cooperative engagement—nonmaneuvering aircraft, blue sky background, flat terrain, and steady velocity, if any. The effective envelope for a threat system is based upon a 50 percentile. That is, at the maximum (or minimum) effective range (or altitude), the weapon system is able to hit the target one out of two times. As the target gets further into the threat's envelope, the probability of a first shot kill increases. As the target gets further outside the threat envelope, the probability decreases until the target is outside the threats maximum range (or altitude) where it is physically impossible to be hit.

g. Decreasing the Probability of Hit. The aircrew has the ability to make the engagement more difficult for the threat. A stationary target, for example, allows the threat to adjust each shot off the last until it hits the aircraft. A more difficult engagement would be a moving, constant velocity shot. A prediction can be made and if a miss occurs, an adjustment can be made based from the last shot. The most difficult engagement is against a moving target that varies range, altitude, elevation, and velocity. Prediction is impossible because four factors are changing at differing rates.

D-4. THREAT WEAPON SENSORS

There are generally four major types of threat weapon sensors—radar, IR, laser and DEW, and optical and/or EO. These may be man portable or transported by land, sea, or aerial platforms. It is important to determine the actual sensor type and guidance package for each threat and understand their inherent capabilities and limitations. (For in-depth information concerning particular threat systems, contact your unit ASE, EWO, or TOO.)

a. Radar. Direct threat radar weapons require LOS to hit the target. Direct threat radar weapons are either fire controlled AAA or, for missile systems, command, SARH, active radar homing, TVM, or GAS. Radar weapons must detect, acquire, track, launch and guide (or fire a ballistic solution), and assess damage. Radar systems have trouble with ground clutter. To pick out targets from ground clutter, radar systems can detect movement through the use of MTI, Doppler (continuous wave radar), or pulse Doppler. Modern radar systems can, and do, track not only the movement of the aircraft itself, but some detect the movement of rotor blades. A few older radar systems had blind speeds (called a Doppler notch) where they could not detect an aircraft flying a specific speed toward or away from the radar. However, not only do modern radar systems cancel blind speeds, but even with older radar systems, an aircraft had difficulty maintaining constant speed and angle to, or from, the one radar. It also is impossible to be in the Doppler notch of more than one radar. Radar systems can be detected, avoided, decoyed, jammed, and destroyed by direct and indirect fires—self, artillery, and antiradiation missiles.

b. Infrared. All IR direct threat weapons require LOS to be set prior to launch, and the in-flight missile must maintain LOS with the target until impact or detonation of the proximity fuse. IR missiles

require the operator to visually detect the target and energize the seeker before the sensor acquires the target. The operator must track the target with the seeker caged to the LOS until it is determined the seeker is tracking the target and not any background objects—such as natural or man-made objects to include vehicles, the sun, or reflected energy of the sun off clouds. The IR sensor also is subject to atmospheric conditions (haze, humidity), the signature of the aircraft and its background, flares, decoys, and jamming. Generally IR systems are difficult to—

- Detect prior to launch (passive sensor).
- Predict where they may be located (portability).
- Respond to (short TOF after launched).
- Hard kill—requires shooting at an in-flight missile.

c. LASER and Directed Energy Weapons. Laser and/or DEW weapons really fit two distinct categories—laser-guided or -aided weapons and pure laser and/or DEW weapons. Laser-guided or -aided weapons are those who use the laser to perform ranging, tracking, or guiding functions for conventional explosive missiles or projectiles. Pure laser and/or DEW weapons use laser and other forms of DEW to inflict damage to the aircraft or its sensors—as a by-product, the aircrew's eyes may be damaged. Pure laser and/or DEW weapons are not required to burn a hole in the target to destroy it, although these weapons are reaching that capability. Simply igniting fuel vapor near vents or burning through fuel lines is effective as well as glazing the cockpit glass so the aircrew cannot see out. Inherently, laser and/or DEW weapons are short duration, hard to detect, extremely hard to decoy or jam, and hard to kill. Fortunately they must rely upon LOS and atmospheric conditions and are somewhat short ranged at present.

d. Optical/Electro-Optical. Optical and/or EO sensors are used as either the primary or the secondary sensor for all weapon systems. They rely upon LOS; however, they are with very few exceptions, completely passive. They are limited by human eyes, atmospheric conditions, distance, jitter, and in many cases by darkness. The optical and/or EO sensors are most difficult to detect, seldom can be decoyed, can be jammed in the sense of obscurants, but when located can be hard killed.

SECTION II. AIRCRAFT SURVIVABILITY EQUIPMENT

D-5. CATEGORIES

ASE systems can be categorized in three areas—aircraft signature reduction, situational awareness, and active countermeasures.

a. Aircraft Signature Reduction. All tactical helicopters are painted with nonreflective IR absorbing paint. This system directs exhaust gasses up and away from the horizontal view of the aircraft; therefore, IR missile lock-on ranges are reduced. Reducing the aircraft exhaust gas signature aids the effectiveness of the AN/ALQ-144A IR missile jammer. UH-60 and EH-60 aircraft are equipped with HIRSS that reduces the IR signature by suppressing hot exhaust gases. The radar and IR signatures of tactical helicopters are least when viewed from the front. The maximum IR signature is from the rear quadrants, while the maximum radar signature is from the side aspects. The aircrews have the ability to decrease the signature exposed to threats by changing the aircraft's aspect.

b. Situational Awareness. All tactical helicopters are equipped with PW RSDS—such as the AN/APR-39[V]1—that alerts the aircrew of radar activity. Aircrews use the cues from the RSDS to change modes of flight (contour to NOE) or increase vigilance—actively seek masking terrain features

c. Active Countermeasures. ASE countermeasures are required when masking terrain is not available to buy time until the aircraft can maneuver to masking terrain or outside of threat range. IR threats can be jammed by AN/ALQ-144(V)1. Radar threats can be decoyed by the M-130 with chaff (AH-64 aircraft only).

D-6. CH-47 SUITE

Each aircraft is equipped with a suite of ASE designed to protect each aircraft while performing its unique missions. The CH-47 ASE suite (see Figure D-1) provides for PW radar signal detection for radar directed threats. In addition, the ASE suite provides omnidirectional IR jamming and decoying for IR-directed threats. The aircraft signature reduction capabilities include both nonreflective IR absorbing paint and suppressors for hot exhaust gasses.

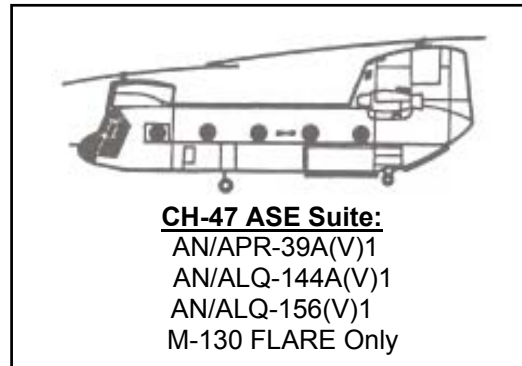


Figure D-1: CH-47 ASE Suite.

D-7. SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A brief description of each ASE system is provided as well as any configuration requirements that are available to optimize the ASE system.

a. AN/APR-39A(V)1. The AN/APR-39A(V)1 RSDS is an upgraded version of the AN/APR-39(V)1 that uses a digital processor, alphanumeric symbology display, and synthetic voice warning to provide the aircrew of radar directed AD threat systems. It provides coverage for C/D and E- through M-band PW radar. The theater specific EID software is reprogrammable.

c. AN/ALQ-144A(V)1/3. The AN/ALQ-144A(V)1/3 CMS (see Figure D-2) is an active, continuous operating omnidirectional, IR jammer systems for helicopters designed to confuse or decoy threat IR missile systems. The AN/ALQ-144A(V)1/3 CMS is designed to provide jamming of all known threat IR missile systems when operated on an aircraft that has been equipped with low reflective paint and engine exhaust suppressers. The system has specific JPN settings that must be set prior to flight.

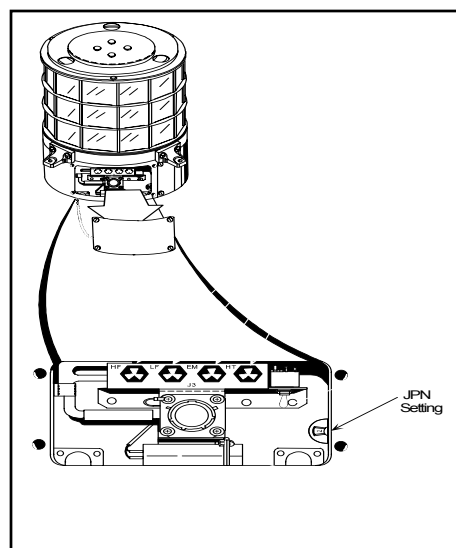


Figure D-2: AN/ALQ-144A setting.

d. M-130. The M-130 general purpose dispenser dispenses chaff and flares. The system is operated either manually or automatically through interface with other countermeasure systems. The chaff provides protection against radar directed anti-aircraft weapon systems, while the flares provide protection against IR directed missile systems. When dispensing chaff, the M-130 reduces or eliminates the enemy's ability to hit and destroy aircraft by use of radar-controlled, anti-aircraft weapons. When dispensing flares, the M-130 reduces or eliminates the enemy's ability to hit and destroy aircraft by using IR guided missiles. When the M-130 is set to dispense chaff, the electronic control module must be set with the program setting for the aircraft before flight.

e. AN/ALQ-162(V)2. The AN/ALQ-162(V)2 CMS provides warning and protection against surface-to-air missiles and airborne intercept missiles that use CW illuminator radar for guidance. The CW signals detected by the system will be validated and jamming will be initiated together with threat identification given to the aircrew. Warning and jamming thresholds programmed into the system determine the specific action taken by the system. The system has specific jam settings that must be set prior to flight.

f. AN/ALQ-156(V)2. The AN/ALQ-156(V)2 CMS is an airborne radar system that provides protection to the aircraft in which it is installed by detecting the approach of anti-aircraft missiles. Upon detection, the missile detector automatically initiates a signal that triggers the M-130 General Dispenser System. The dispenser system releases a flare to decoy an IR-seeking missile away from the aircraft.

D-8. CONFIGURATION SETTINGS

Configuration settings for ASE are located on the classified MSEC-BBS sponsored by the ARAT located at Eglin Air Force Base, Florida. Connection to the MSEC-BBS requires an accredited computer, communications software, null modem cable, and a STU-III. The MSEC-BBS must be contacted to ensure each unit has the most current ASE settings for each theater of operations.

D-9. TACTICAL OPERATIONS OFFICERS AND ASE/EW OFFICERS

For ASE to provide effective protection during a mission, configuration settings must be optimized for the threats encountered. The TOO at the brigade and the battalion staff assists the S3 in mission planning for aircraft survivability during the mission. TOE places the TOO in the aviation troop as a CW3, in the squadron operations as a CW4, and in the regiment and/or brigade as a CW5. The TOO is identified by the SQI I, such as 152DI. The ASE and/or EW officer is a CW2 in the aviation troop. ASE and/or EW officer is identified by the ASI H3, such as 152D0H3. ASE and/or EW officer ensures optimum ASE configuration settings are prepared for each flight. DA Pam 611-21 describes the TOO position as warrant officers that are qualified to—

- Plan, schedule, coordinate, and brief tactical and nontactical missions.
- Operate the aviation mission planning system.
- Develop, plan, coordinate, and brief EW operations.
- Manage flying hour programs and ALSE programs.

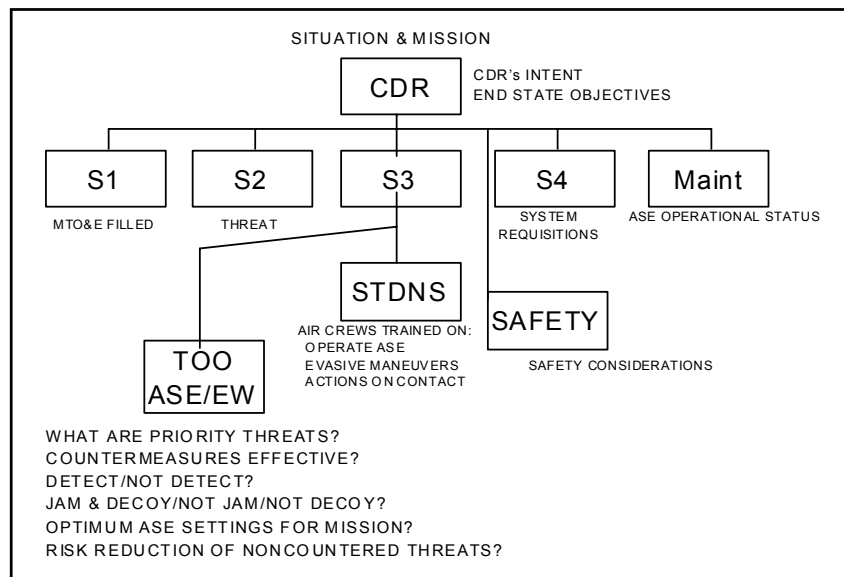
SECTION III. OPERATIONAL EMPLOYMENT CONSIDERATIONS

D-10. GENERAL

Aircraft survivability functions must be included throughout mission planning, rehearsal, execution, and recovery operations. Intelligence drives the operations. Mission planning begins with the receipt of the situation and mission; it continues through completion of mission execution and AAR. From the receipt of enemy situation and mission, it is important to plan and implement aircraft survivability functions.

D-11. MISSION PLANNING

ASE and EW must be considered in all phases of mission planning. The level of planning involved is always predicated on the time, information, and personnel available (see Figure D-3). OPORDs for military operations are extensive in scope and contain information that acts as a baseline for most unit operations.



D-3. Roles and functions.

a. Operation Order. The generation of the OPORD begins upon receipt of the enemy and friendly situation, the mission, and the commander's intent. The EW Annex is created to support the OPORD using this information (see Figure D-4). The enemy and friendly situations are further defined with the emphasis on the EW capabilities each have to find, fix, jam, deceive, disrupt, or destroy each other. Once the situation is clearly defined, the mission is analyzed to evaluate the risk to friendly forces while accomplishing the mission within the prescribed guidelines. After the risk assessment is complete, risk reduction techniques are specified in the execution instructions. These techniques require the commander's approval if the mission constraints need to be altered significantly from the original intent. The next step is to determine service support for EW and command and signal guidance necessary to accomplish the EW phase of the mission.

b. Fragmentary Order. Once the OPORD (and EW Annex [see Figure D-4]) is generated, it becomes the base document. For specific missions, complete OPORDs may not always be required. In these instances, FRAGOs outlining the changes from the basic OPORD are created and issued to affected units (see Figure D-5). Upon receipt of the FRAGO, the staff planners must evaluate the information available and re-validate the EW Annex. Any changes to the EW Annex must be detailed and disseminated to the aircrews as part of the mission briefing.

<p>SECURITY CLASSIFICATION</p> <p>ISSUING HEADQUARTERS LOCATION DAY, MONTH, YEAR, HOUR, ZONE</p> <p><u>ANNEX I (ELECTRONIC WARFARE) TO OPORD XXXX-XX (U)</u></p> <p>() References: List basic documents required.</p> <p>1. () <u>Situation</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. () <u>Enemy</u>. Refer to annex B. Provide an estimate of the enemy's communications, noncommunications, and EW systems capabilities, limitations, and vulnerabilities including the ability to interfere with the accomplishment of the EW mission stated herein. Determine the ability to detect radar altimeter, Doppler, FM, VHF, and UHF communications, and the ability to interrogate transponder for modes 1, 2, 3A, and 3C. Determine AD EW systems and analyze parameters (i.e., frequencies, PRF, PRI, scan type, wavelength) for use in risk analysis.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. () <u>Friendly</u>. Provide a list of friendly EW systems available for the mission—such as communications, noncommunications, navigation, sensors, countermeasures, Electro-optical systems. Include friendly EW assets that can exploit and disrupt the enemy's usage of the electromagnetic spectrum.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. () <u>Assumptions</u>. State any assumptions about friendly or enemy EW capabilities and possible COAs that may influence the planning or execution of EW operations.</p> <p>2. () <u>Mission</u>. State the mission to be accomplished by EW operations to support the mission in the basic plan.</p> <p>3. () <u>Execution</u></p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. () <u>Concept of Operations</u>. Summarize the scope of EW operations and the methods and resources to be used. Include TTP's for the threats that may be encountered.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. () <u>Tasks</u>. In separate subparagraphs, assign individual tasks to EWOs and crews including instructions and references.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. () <u>Coordinating Instructions</u>. Place instructions applicable to two or more subunits in the final subparagraph.</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">1. () <u>Guiding Principles</u>. State or refer to policies, doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures that provide guidance to be followed. Establish any additional guidance and authorized deviations from standardized practices. Describe any constraints that may apply to the mission.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>This sample EW appendix is unclassified, but when actually accomplished should show proper classification markings of each paragraph.</u></p>

Figure D-4. Suggested format for an electronic warfare annex to operation order.

2. () Special measures. Provide any special procedure to be used that is not provided elsewhere.

4. () Service Support. Specify support units to provide EW service support. Include verification of threat parameters and ASE settings through the ARAT.

5. () Command and Signal. Provide information on IFF mode settings and mode activation/deactivation line, ASE configuration settings, Have Quick settings, SINCGARS settings, A²C² frequencies, AWACS contact points, and brevity codes.

Acknowledge:

Name (Commander's last name)
Rank (Commander's rank)

OFFICIAL:
APPENDICES:
DISTRIBUTION:

(SECURITY CLASSIFICATION)

(This sample EW appendix is unclassified, but when actually accomplished should show proper classification markings of each paragraph.)

Figure D-4. Suggested format for an electronic warfare annex to operation order (concluded).

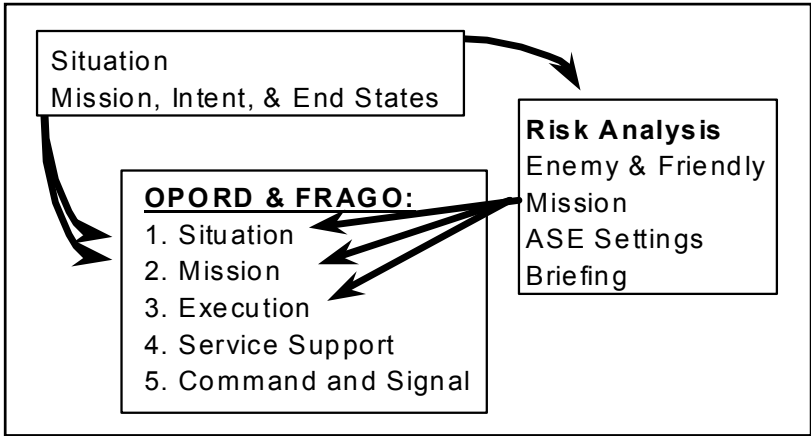


Figure D-5: Operations order and fragmentary order.

D-12. CONSIDERATIONS IN RISK MANAGEMENT

a. Identify the Risk. To perform a thorough risk assessment, detailed information about threat system operating procedures, tactics, system capabilities, and locations must be analyzed to determine the enemy's advantages or disadvantages in the use of EW. The capabilities and limitations of friendly EW systems must be compared to the threat's to assess the level of risk associated with the mission. The S2 and the TOO identify the following:

- Operating frequencies of radar threats.
- RF threats that can or cannot be detected.
- RF threats radar jamming equipment will affect.
- RF threats that can be decoyed.
- IR threats that may be encountered.
- IR threats that can be detected.
- IR threats that can be jammed or decoyed.
- Laser and/or DEW threats that can or cannot be detected.
- Optical and/or electro-optical threats.

b. Assess the Risk. The S2 and TOO will prioritize the threat systems and optimize ASE settings for the highest priority threats. The level of risk based on the threat's capabilities and limitations, the capabilities and limitations of the ASE, and the mission will be determined (see Figure D-6). The highest risk to determine the overall risk to the mission will be used. If the risk due to IR threats is high, then the overall mission risk would continue to be high. The risk assessment worksheet is used to determine what is causing the highest risks so that controls can be developed to reduce those risks.

c. Make Decisions and Develop Controls. The S2 and TOO will determine the optimum ASE configuration settings for each aircraft type. They also will determine the threats in the mission area.

(1) Threats that are highly lethal and not countered by ASE are identified. PIR can be developed and submitted by the S2 to HHQ (for example: The SA-X is very lethal and no organic countermeasures are present. This threat poses a high risk to mission accomplishment. Where is the SA-X located in the AO? The latest time of value for this information is XXXX hours.).

(2) Risk reduction techniques will be applied to minimize the risk and enhance the probability of survival. Risk reduction measures include the following:

- Plan mission time earlier or later to take advantage of night operations.
- Use only suppressed aircraft for the higher risk portions of the mission.
- Request escort aircraft to suppress threats.
- Plan SEAD at critical points to reduce vulnerability.
- Prepare the LZ/PZ with indirect fires.
- Alter flight routes to avoid known AD areas.
- Develop deception plan to include false insertion.
- Reduce electronic signature (EMCON).
- Reduce formation and/or sortie size.

(3) The ASE and/or EW mission briefing disseminates information and instructions to the aircrews prior to the mission (see Figure D-7). The briefing will alert aircrews to the risks associated with the threats and the optimum ASE settings and a review of the tactics specific to the mission. These tactics include evasive maneuvers, actions on contact, multiship breakup and reformation procedures, and ROE for countermeasures weapons employment. A sample ASE and/or EW mission briefing is contained herein to assist ASE and/or EWOs in completing this task.

<u>Survivability Risk Analysis</u>				
ACFT Type: _____		Mission: _____		Date: _____
Mission Profile:		<100' AGL	>100' AGL	Value: _____
	Night	Low	Medium	
	Day	Medium	High	
IR Threats:		Suppressed	Unsuppressed	Value: _____
	IRCM	Low	Medium	
	Non-IRCM	Medium	High	
RF Threat:		Warning	No-Warning	Value: _____
	RFCM	Low	Medium	
	Non-RFCM	Medium	High	
EO Threat:		Low Visibility & Contrast	High Visibility & Contrast	Value: _____
	Masking	Low	Medium	
	No-Masking	Medium	High	
Laser/DEW Threat:		Warning	No-Warning	Value: _____
	Masking	Low	Medium	
	No-Masking	Medium	High	
Overall Risk:				Highest Value: _____
				Low
Reevaluate mission profile, ASE, or flight routes.				Medium
Reevaluate mission profile, ASE, or flight routes.				High
Priority Threats:	A	B	C	D
IR:	_____	_____	_____	_____
RF:	_____	_____	_____	_____
EO:	_____	_____	_____	_____
Laser/DEW:	_____	_____	_____	_____
ASE Configuration Settings:				
ALQ-144A Suppressed: _____ Unsuppressed: _____				
ALQ-162 Jam Program: _____				
APR-39A(V)1 OFP: _____ EID: _____				
APR-39(V)2 Low/High: _____ Theater Position: _____				
M-130 Chaff Program: AH-64: __ UH-60: __ EH-60: _____				
ALQ-156: _____				
IFF: Mode1 _____ Mode2 _____ Mode3A _____ Mode3C _____ Mode 4 _____				
				R= Infrared IRCM= IR Countermeasures Suppressed= IR paint & Exhaust RF= Radio Frequency RFCM= RF Countermeasures EO= Electro-Optical

Figure D-6. ASE risk assessment worksheet.

OVERALL RISK:	Low	Medium	High
CAUSED BY:	Mission Profile ASE Suite Threat		
ASE and IFF configuration settings:			
ASE can detect:			
ASE cannot detect:			
ASE can jam:			
ASE cannot jam:			
Primary threats:	IR RF E/O Laser/DEW		
Risk reduction measures:			
Changes to standard TTPs:			
QUESTIONS:			

Figure D-7: Suggested format for ASE mission brief.

d. Implement Controls and Supervise. Commanders and aircrews must take an active role in reducing risks by implementing the following controls and supervising their implementation:

- Commanders ensure that ASE and/or EW considerations and configuration settings are considered and briefed to all aircrews and maintenance personnel.
- During preflight checks, aircrews ensure that ASE configuration settings are correct.
- During mission, aircrews ensure that IFF codes are activated and deactivated at proper times and locations during flight.
- During AAR, commander ensures that debriefings are collected from aircrews.
- Aircrews report ASE and/or EW problems to higher headquarters—ambiguities, false alarms, equipment failures, and short comings.

- Aircrews collect data and ensure that the data are put into AMPS for the next mission—such as threat data, countermeasure responses, locations of false alarms, and friendly systems reported as threat.

SECTION IV. MISSION EXECUTION

D-13. MISSION EXECUTION

During conduct of the mission, it is important for aircrews to be familiar with the ASE situational awareness displays and the expected threat indications. Some actions must be performed without delay. When the visual indications of a gun or missile is fired at the aircraft, or ASE indications of radar track or launch, the aircrew has only seconds to perform an action to prevent the aircraft from being engaged.

a. Reacting to Threat Engagements. Three distinct parts of reacting to threat engagements are indication (determine immediate actions), evasive maneuver (when masking terrain is not readily available), and actions on contact (decision to continue or abort mission).

b. Crew Coordination. Crew coordination must be rehearsed to perform evasive maneuvers. Standardized terminology such as *missile three o'clock*, *break right* and *breaking right* should be used to avoid confusion. At other times, indications do not require evasive maneuvering, such as radar search or acquisition.

c. Multiship Considerations. Formations and spacing intervals should be selected that provide all aircraft maneuver space to evade hostile fire. Standardized terminology—such as *chalk two breaking right missile* or *chalk three tracers three o'clock breaking left*—should be used to alert the flight to your actions. Briefings should include evasive formation break up procedures and how to reform the formation after breaking the engagement. It is important to communicate your ASE indications to other aircraft in the formation. This is important because your aircraft may be the only aircraft receiving it due to terrain, narrow radar beam, altitude, or maintenance problems.

D-14. CONCLUSION

Survivability for Army aviation on the modern battlefield and in stability operations and support operations requires extensive coordination with other staffs. Since Army aviation can cover broad spaces at high speeds, coordination for airspace and fire control measures is paramount. The TOO and ASE and/or EWO are trained to incorporate ASE and/or EW considerations into the mission planning and execution. ASE is only effective if configured properly and used with tactics to counter the threat's capabilities. Army aviation must plan to make maximum use of the electromagnetic spectrum and fully exploit the weaknesses of the threat's EW capabilities.

APPENDIX E

TRAINING AIDS, DEVICES, SIMULATORS, AND SIMULATIONS

E-1. GENERAL

Much of the success aviation units enjoyed in recent combat and SASO originated with the training accomplished in individual and crew mission simulators. Development of new simulation and simulator technology provides essential tools to train individual aviators and crews. It also allows air and ground units, and their staffs, to train for a myriad of operations under trying environmental conditions.

E-2. OVERVIEW.

M&S are vital tools for achieving combat readiness. The Army has a long history of using M&S worldwide in every facet of operations. Decision makers consider analytical results derived from M&S. M&S are used to improve the quality of the acquisition process and the products delivered to soldiers.

a. Definitions.

(1) Model. A model represents some or all of the properties of a device, system, or object. The three basic classes of models are mathematical, physical, and procedural.

(2) Simulation. A simulation is an operating representation of selected features of real-world or hypothetical events and processes. It represents activities and interactions over time. A simulation may be fully automated (that is, it executes without human intervention), or it may be interactive or interruptible (that is, the user may intervene during execution). The CBS is a simulation that integrates various models. The functionality of a simulation depends on the numerous models that serve as the building blocks. For example, an Apache-equipped attack helicopter unit within CBS requires a model of how an AH-64 fights under different conditions. Likewise, the simulation needs models of an M1 Abrams tank, M2 Bradley fighting vehicle and M3 cavalry fighting vehicle and other systems, operating under different conditions. These different models are then consolidated and processed to build the simulation.

(3) Models and simulations. M&S often are used as synonyms. They relate significantly to each other; however, they are not exactly the same in a technical sense. Models are the essential elements or characteristics of a simulation. (**Note:** the abbreviation M&S is used as both singular and plural for models and simulations.)

(4) Simulator. M&S are sometimes used as synonyms—both internal and external to DOD; however, the terms simulators and simulations should not be used in that manner. In the training context, simulators are most often associated with either individual or crew skill training. These simulators replicate either significant segments or the entire piece of equipment. An example of simulators that are associated with crew training is the AH-64A Apache CMS. Figure E-1 gives the relationship of simulations, simulators, and models.

(5) War-gaming. War-gaming is used in both training simulations and simulators. A war game is a simulation of a military operation that involves two or more OPFOR. Rules, data, and procedures designed to depict an actual or assumed real-life situation are used. War-gaming allows the participants to experiment with alternative tactics and operations against an OPFOR. This process forces participants to react to the OPFOR to develop plans and execute operations. The complexity and sophistication of current simulations bring a high degree of reality to war-game participants.

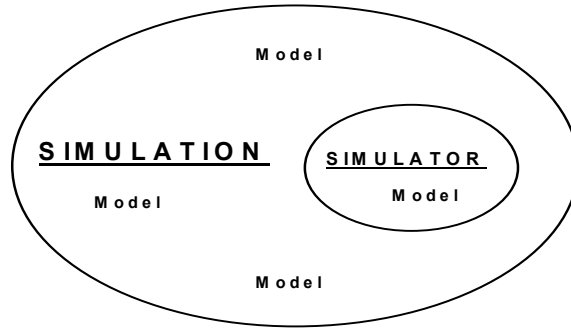


Figure E-1. Relationship of simulations, simulators, and models.

b. Types of Simulations. Simulations can be categorized as constructive, virtual, and live (see Figure E-2).

(1) Constructive simulation. A constructive simulation consists of war-games and models. Many of these rely heavily on mathematical methods. Examples include Janus (A), Spectrum, and Brigade/Battalion Battle Simulation.

(2) Virtual simulation. A virtual simulation focuses largely on manned simulators. It interacts within a synthetic environment and, in many cases, with other simulators. Well known examples are the SIMNET simulators in common use throughout the Army for both training and developmental work.

(3) Live simulation. The best description of live simulation is actual soldiers and equipment operating together, often on instrumented ranges. The Army's CTCs are highly instrumented, live simulation facilities.

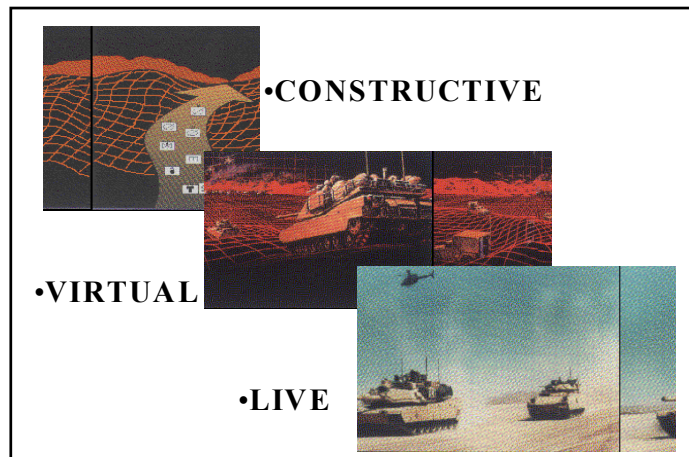


Figure E-2. Types of simulation.

E-3. UNIT-LEVEL TRAINING

An integrated use of live, virtual, and constructive training tools can give commanders the best trained Army aviators and units. Igor Sikorsky wrote that the use of the helicopter is limited only by the imagination of the user. This wisdom also holds true for the use of simulations and simulators.

a. How Simulations Support Training. Simulations support training in unique ways. Understanding how simulations support training benefits the commander. He incorporates the unique features listed below into an overall unit training strategy. Simulations—

- Portray large areas for conducting operations.
- Portray large, capable, and doctrinally correct OPFOR.
- Stress commanders and staffs and provide realistic conditions under which commanders make decisions.
- Allow different units to train under the same conditions and to the same standards.

b. Battalion/Squadron Training.

(1) In the constructive environment, simulations—such as BBS, Janus, or ModSAF—can give commanders, crews, and staff members some mission battlefield visualization skills. BBS and Janus enable the user to portray friendly and enemy forces on a two-dimensional map using high fidelity terrain information. ModSAF accomplishes the same objective, but in a three-dimensional world. Staffs can war-game various mission options and judge the effectiveness of their plans accordingly. Crews can gain an appreciation of terrain intervisibility or movement effect as the battle unfolds. In future developments, WARSIM will replace BBS/CBS and Janus; OneSAF will replace ModSAF. In an upgraded TADS TSTT, a gunner can integrate with the WARSIM or OneSAF simulation. The pilot flies from a control workstation. The pilot can execute various mission options—evasive actions, multiple target engagements, and actions on contact. Enhancements to the AH-64 CMS also allow WARSIM or OneSAF integration. The TSTT and the CMS can pair on missions and conduct limited engagements. Leaders develop battle drills and visually display those drills under the conditions the crews may expect to encounter. Maintenance personnel can observe the commander's desired operational tempo and determine appropriate support options. Increased portability of the WARSIM, OneSAF, or some other type of MPRT, allows the battalion to transport simulation equipment to the field. The battalion then conducts training using simulations while deployed. Digital terrain walks can be conducted, and crews can see the terrain over which they will operate.

(2) In the virtual environment, the AVCATT allows units to replicate the battlefield and conduct a full spectrum of aviation operations at a level not attainable in the live or constructive realm. It supports training of crew skill through company collective tasks. The battalion commander has near perfect vision of the training. He can tailor his teaching, coaching, and mentoring according to each of his commander's strengths and weaknesses. Crews can observe the full effect of their decisions. By linking WARSIM or OneSAF to the AVCATT, battle staffs can work large-scale operations in real time.

(3) Crews may conduct operations under various mission profiles; they examine potential branches and sequels. With appropriate HSI, live crews and virtual crews conduct operations when maintenance posture does not support actual aircraft flight. The situational experience gained from the constructive and virtual environment is value added. Crews are exposed to multiple challenges in realistic environments. These virtual and constructive situational experiences should be viewed as opportunities to enhance readiness and ensure mission success. Live missions are still conducted. The overall training tempo will increase without a corresponding increase in resource requirements.

c. Company/Troop Training. The company/troop commander and his crews benefit from the integration of simulators and simulations into their training. Without integrated use of simulators and

simulations, aircraft readiness and funding drives unit training tempo. In the past, units would slow the training tempo to have funding available for major events, such as the NTC. With an integrated training vision, the training does not slow down. The commander has more options available to support his plan while allowing his soldiers the opportunity to maintain complex aircraft systems. During a typical weekly training schedule, events like motor stables, rotor stables, sergeant's time, and RL training are included. Windows for simulator and simulations training to support the overall training plan are integrated throughout the week. WARSIM, OneSAF, TSTT, CMS, and AVCATT are used by platoon leaders, company/troop commanders, and IPs to prepare for live training. Crews work in the appropriate simulator or simulation to reinforce the live training conducted during the week or to prepare for the next week's training. While aircraft are being repaired and readied for the next mission, crews can train at nearly the same level of fidelity and stress. Units are able to train and maintain without compromising readiness.

d. Individual Training. TADSS will never replace live training events. Aviators require a baseline of hands-on experience. This experience can be gained only through realistic training on actual equipment in tough, demanding conditions. This baseline, called situational experience, is the basis for individual success. Once this solid foundation of situational experience is established, we can begin to exploit the tremendous potential of simulators and simulations. Consider Figure E-3 as an example. Aviators need time in the cockpit to fully develop air sense and understand the complexities of their particular airframe. The feel developed during this time is partially developed in a simulator—such as during initial aircraft qualifications. However, simulators cannot replace actual flight time. As the aviator's situational experience and understanding increase, other simulation tools can be used to supplement his baseline. If we can demonstrate certain mission profiles via a mission simulator or simulation, the overall situational experience of the aviator can grow. This is a key safety concept, especially considering the potential dangers that exist in most mission profiles. Those missions or events that cannot be realistically conducted in actual flight conditions—such as certain emergency procedures, selected weapons engagements, specific weather conditions—must be conducted in either virtual or constructive simulations. As the aviator matures, the complexities of modern mission profiles and drills require training that can be replicated to exacting standards or rehearsed to validate certain drills or missions. This is when simulations and simulators can assist units directly in increasing combat readiness. We also must develop those senior aviators who will lead aviation forces in future engagements and missions. The only way to hone their skills is by placing them in a training environment where they can experience the most demanding missions possible. Simulations are a means of doing so.

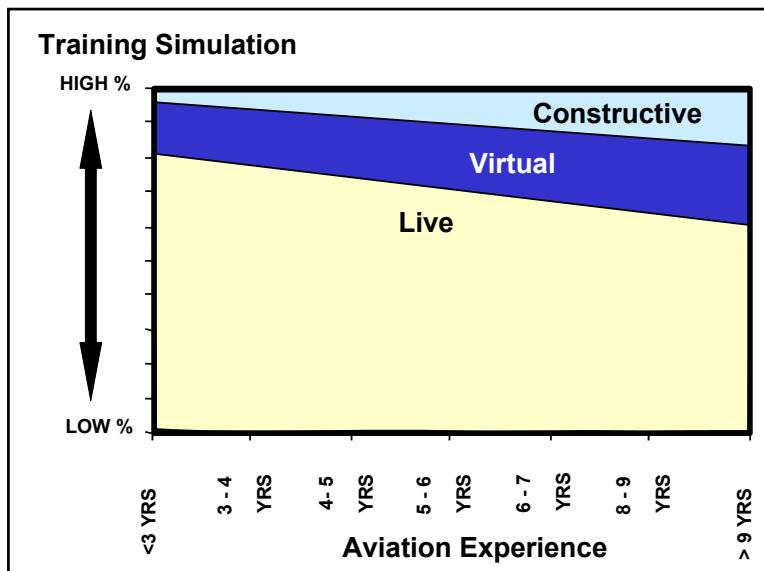


Figure E-3. Example of an aviator experience and simulation training.

E-4. SIMULATIONS IN COMMAND AND CONTROL TRAINING

The Army's C² training simulations are computer-driven simulations that help train commanders and their staffs. Most of these simulations place C² elements in a combat-like environment that stimulates decision making, command and staff interaction, and staff coordination. In a simulation-driven exercise, the participating commanders and staffs—the trainees or training audience—may operate in CPs or TOCs at field locations. Specifically, C² training simulations—

- Assist units in preparing for external evaluations while minimizing costs and resources.
- Exercise and evaluate internal staff training and unit SOPs.
- Aid units in developing an awareness of the lethality and complexity of the modern battlefield.
- Provide a forum to evaluate written material and verbal communication processes between units, vertically and horizontally.
- Provide feedback to measure situational responses and staff ability to develop alternative COA.

E-5. SIMULATIONS AND SIMULATORS AVAILABLE FOR BATTALION/SQUADRON AND BELOW TRAINING

a. The Family of Simulations.

(1) The Army FAMSIM consists of a proponent-approved group of simulations. These simulations are for training unit commanders and battle staffs in CPXs and leader development training simulations. The overall objective for FAMSIM is to continue evolutionary enhancements to ensure that the simulations remain relevant. Current objectives are to give commanders the ability to train subordinate commanders and staffs from platoon through corps. Subordinate commanders and staffs are trained to synchronize all the BOSs under conditions that closely replicate the battlefield. Each corps and division will be able to conduct home station CPXs for a variety of theaters and scenarios—integration of heavy, light, aviation, and SOFs. The six fielded simulations in FAMSIM are—

- Janus.
- Spectrum.
- Brigade/battalion battle simulation.
- Corps battle simulation.
- Tactical simulation.
- CSS training simulation system.

(2) The FAMSIM members are effective training tools when their capabilities are matched with the targeted echelons and trainees. FAMSIM members are normally used to support training as outlined in Figure E-4. Janus, Spectrum, and BBS—discussed below—are most appropriate for battalion/squadron and below training.

Simulation	Training Audience
TACSIM	Intelligence staffs at all echelons in the joint and combined communities, including analysts
Spectrum	Company/troop to division commanders, staffs, first sergeants, and platoon leaders
Janus	Platoon leaders to brigade/regiment commanders and staffs
BBS	Battalion/squadron and brigade/regiment commanders and staffs Company/troop commanders (secondary)
CBS	Division to EAC commanders and staffs Brigade commanders (secondary)

CSSTSS	CSS commanders and staffs from battalion/squadron to EAC
--------	--

Figure E-4. FAMSIM training audiences.

(a) Janus. Janus is a low-cost, flexible, interactive, event-driven war-gaming simulation used to train platoon and company/troop-level commanders. It also is used to train battalion/squadron and brigade/regiment staffs. As a staff trainer, Janus provides an environment requiring detailed interaction between the commander and S2/S3. During this detailed interaction, they develop and execute the tactical plan. Commanders must apply sound warfighting principles and achieve full synchronization of the BOS to fight a successful Janus battle.

(b) Spectrum. Spectrum was designed to address deficiencies in C² training in SASO. All other military simulations model force on force combat operations. Spectrum operates in the Microsoft Windows™ environment on personal computers.

(c) Brigade/battalion battle simulation.. BBS is designed as a low-cost training simulation. It gives maneuver brigade and battalion/squadron commanders and their battle staffs an opportunity to practice decision-making skills in a realistic, multithreat, time-stressed combat environment. They must be able to develop, correlate, and assess large quantities of tactical and logistics data. They must be able to formulate situational estimates and make immediate decisions in C² and synchronize combat, CS, and CSS assets. BBS supports training of combat maneuver commanders and the staffs at brigade/regiment and battalion/squadron levels. Company/troop commanders, CS, and CSS units also receive valuable secondary training as part of any BBS-driven CPX.

(3) Future developments. The major development effort for FAMSIM is WARSIM 2000. WARSIM 2000 will exploit new technology to enable CPs at all echelons to train in a realistic, DIS compliant environment. The increased realism of WARSIM 2000 over existing models will allow units to synchronize across each operating system in-depth. WARSIM 2000's design allows warfighting CPs to interact with the simulation using TOE equipment to train in the field, not in simulation centers. WARSIM 2000 also will be capable of depicting a joint and combined environment across the operational continuum.

b. Other Army Simulations/Simulators.

(1) Simulation networking-trainer. SIMNET was a joint Army/Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency project. It exploited the ability of computer technology to transfer data streams across networks containing large numbers of simulators with real-time update of all simulators in the network. SIMNET-T trains combat units at the crew through battalion/squadron echelons. Existing simulators are in the form of reconfigurable helicopter simulators, M-1 tanks, and infantry fighting vehicles. Emulation of artillery, engineer, dismounted infantry, AD, and CSS also exists. The follow-on system is CCTT.

(2) The combined arms tactical trainer concept. This is a simulation concept that links the training requirements of several functional areas to form a combined arms virtual battlefield. The CCTT is the first component in this concept. The training audience for this concept consists of crew, company/troop, and battalion/squadron elements. CATT supports units as they work on fundamentals that directly or indirectly support their METLs. These fundamentals include battle drills, tactical maneuvers, combat engagements, communications, SOPs, synchronization of unit and supporting elements' activities and interface, and fire support coordination. Used in a preexercise situation, the CATT can help units gain higher levels of proficiency prior to field training. As a postexercise medium, CATT can hone skills from the field and limit skill degradation between field training opportunities. When this concept is totally operational, the combat trainers that will be part of CATT are—

- Close Combat Tactical Trainer.
- Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer.
- Fire Support Combined Arms Tactical Trainer.
- Air Defense Combined Arms Tactical Trainer.
- Engineer Combined Arms Tactical trainer.

When networked, the CATT family of simulators will permit units to conduct combined arms training. When the systems are used separately with the workstations representing other BOS, units will be able to train in a combined arms environment. As each follow-on CATT manned simulator is fielded, a SAF component is replaced by that manned simulator. The components of most significance to aviation training are the CCTT and the AVCATT.

(a) Close combat tactical trainer. CCTT is a collective training system. In this system, armor and mechanized infantry units man full-crew simulators to conduct unit training in a combined arms environment. CCTT has a great deal of flexibility to support the commander's training intent and exercise design. It can stretch to accommodate a battalion/squadron or task force training exercise when leaders are in the trainers and subordinate vehicles are represented by computer generated forces that report and shoot. Commanders must exercise normal C² of these forces. CCTT consists of networked vehicle simulator manned-modules, SAF, combat support workstations, computer networks and protocols, and AAR systems. CCTT manned-modules consist of the M1A1, M1A2, M2/3A2, FIST-V, M113A3, HMMVV, and dismounted soldier. These manned-modules are high fidelity simulators. These simulators require individuals and crews to perform their respective tasks correctly to accomplish their collective missions. SAF have the capacity to create a variety of OPFOR and BLUFOR vehicles and units with which units can train. SAF entities exhibit highly realistic behaviors. They can be tailored to varying levels of competence. The components of this system combine to create a highly complex synthetic battlefield on which soldiers can conduct training in a combined arms environment. The system allows unit commanders to train collective tasks in a variety of virtual environments—day, night, and varying limitations on visibility. The AVCATT can be integrated with the CCTT to provide combined arms training for aviators with their ground counterparts manning the virtual simulators of the CCTT.

(b) Aviation combined arms tactical trainer . The AVCATT is a modular suite of reconfigurable aviation warfighting platforms, which is driven by software that creates a virtual battlefield. It provides a realistic, high-intensity, task-loaded combat environment. This combat environment is composed of attack, reconnaissance, and lift aircraft platforms; SAF work stations; AMPS; AAR capability; and battalion/squadron-level staff work stations. AVCATT can be tailored to specific unit needs—such as mission planning and rehearsal and collective task training—through use of DIS protocols and TSIUs. AVCATT is an aviation-specific system. It is designed to complement and function together with the CATT family of virtual-reality simulators. It provides the third dimension of maneuver on the virtual battlefield. AVCATT supports institutional, organizational, and sustainment training for aviation units worldwide.

E-6. UNIT SIMULATIONS TRAINING STRATEGY

a. Incorporating Simulations Into the Training Plan. The commander and staff determine how simulations are incorporated into a unit's training strategy. Chapter 3 of this MTP outlines the training planning process. It links the organization's METL with subsequent execution and evaluation of training. A relatively centralized process, planning develops mutually supporting METL-based training at all levels within an organization. Thus, higher and lower command echelons may train simultaneously in the same exercise at different levels of realism based on participation. The commander and staff must determine who is to be trained, the specific tasks on which they need training, which simulation can provide that training, and the availability of the simulation and resources necessary to provide the required training. Guidance on simulation uses and capabilities can be found in *Training with Simulations: A Handbook for Commanders and Trainers* (National Simulation Center, January 1999). Guidance also can be found in simulation users' guides and from the experienced staff at simulation facilities. Simulation users' guides specify the actions necessary to plan and conduct simulation exercises by addressing most of the following items:

- Exercise organization.
- Key personnel resources and their primary responsibilities.
- Planning time lines.
- Development of the commander's training objectives.

- Assigned responsibilities for planning.
- Conduct of the exercise.

b. Selecting the Proper Command and Control Training Simulation to Meet Training Needs.

When simulations are selected, they should be selected because they can assist the commander in achieving or maintaining task performance. They should not be selected if a more appropriate training vehicle is available.

(1) The commander should not get caught in a trap by thinking that simulations use equals training or that simulations can train everything well 100 percent of the time. Simulations do not train. They are merely training aids that allow the commander to practice certain tasks and skills in a scenario specifically developed to test them. In addition, simulations do not give a 100-percent replication of the real world. They can simulate a number of battlefield and operational conditions very well. However, most simulations are limited in imposing psychological stresses, a major factor on the battlefield and in the success of military operations.

(2) The assistance that simulations provide the commander is invaluable as long as the commander places the simulation experience into the overall development of the unit and its individual members. Tactical success in a C² simulation exercise will not necessarily equate to tactical success on the battlefield.

(3) Simulations use can be broken down into leader development training and collective task training.

(a) The primary purpose of the leader development training is to develop the skills of an individual. Often this is accomplished in a formal educational setting designed to train and test individual skills. Some of the characteristics of this area of training are the following:

- Development of specific skills, knowledge, and attitudes.
- Some built-in flexibility for individual experimentation.
- Focused interaction between the trainer and trainee.
- Immediate individual feedback.

(b) The second area of simulation use, collective task training, is best incorporated in a unit setting where team-building is desired so collective task effectiveness can be improved. This is not to say that individual training does not occur here. However, by design the focus is on collective tasks rather than on individual leadership development or skills performance. Selecting the C² simulation that provides the level of resolution needed is based primarily on the specific end use and focus of the simulations. Figure E-5 shows the level, type, and echelon of trainee for each of the C² simulations in the family of simulations.

(4) The following items should be taken into consideration when developing the unit simulation training strategy:

(a) Integrate into the overall training strategy during the training plan process.

(b) Determine which simulations would be beneficial to units with upcoming training events, such as external evaluation. The trainer must determine the echelon to train, the upcoming event requirements, and the simulation most likely to benefit this echelon when used as a train-up device. In developing a training strategy, one must answer the following questions:

- Who am I trying to train?
- What tasks am I trying to train?
- What conditions must be presented against which tasks are to be trained?
- What are the training objectives?

- What training tool will assist in meeting the training objectives?

Leader Development Training* (Individual Skill Development)	
Trainees	Simulation
Squad Leaders Crew Chiefs Platoon Leaders Company, Troop, Battery and Battalion/Squadron Commanders	Janus (excellent for S2 and S3 skill development, weak in CSS)
Collective Task Training* (Team Building)	
Trainees	Simulation
Company/Troop (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, for all BOSSs), Janus
Battalion/Squadron (Combat or CS)	BBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion/Squadron (CSS)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Battalion/Squadron and Brigade/Regiment (Combat or CS)	Janus (Command and Staff Trainer, but weak on CSS)
Brigade/Regiment (CSS)	BBS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
DISCOM, COSCOM, TAACOM Groups (CSS) (Corps and EAC)	CSSTSS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Division Corps Echelons Above Corps Joint and Multinational	CSSTSS/CBS (Command and Staff Trainer, CPX, Seminar Trainer)
Notes: *SPECTRUM can be used in all the above.	

Figure E-5. Command and control simulation training applications.

(c) Determine which leaders and staff members must be trained. It is possible that they can receive training with other units, as well as specific opportunities for their unit.

(d) Review the higher commander's guidance to assure that his intent is met. List each training activity and determine how sister units can assist and support training activities and receive secondary reinforcement in their skills in the process.

(e) Use simulation to complement live training. When a live training event cannot be conducted, simulations should be considered as an alternate.

E-7. TRAINING IN PRACTICE

An attack helicopter unit is used in this conceptual example; however, this discussion is applicable to all types of aviation units. At the weekly company/troop training meeting, the commander decides to plan a training session on the METL item *Conduct an Attack*. As part of the analysis, the commander identifies battle tasks that must be conducted to support the training. These battle tasks are—

- Prepare for operations.
- Move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position.
- Engage targets.
- Call for indirect fires.
- Employ CAS.
- Provide spot and status reports.
- Depart from a battle position/attack by fire position.
- Conduct rearming and refueling operations.

The commander realizes that the training plan must be supportable by qualified crews and a responsive maintenance flow. With this focus identified, he begins the training process as outlined in Chapter 3 of this MTP. This process is discussed below as it relates to simulation training.

a. Plan the Training. The commander conducts an initial assessment of the battle tasks to be trained and the tools available. This assessment is presented in Figure E-6. The simulation/simulator tools rated with a 1 provide a high level of task replication and fidelity. Tools in this range also provide excellent visualization properties. A 2 rating indicates an adequate level of value, while a 3 rating indicates a low end support tool with several shortcomings that may detract from training efforts.

Task	Janus	BBS	ModSAF	TSTT	CMS	AVCATT
Prepare for operations	1	3	1	2	2	1
Move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position	2	3	1	3	2	1
Engage targets	3	3	3	2	2	1
Call for indirect fires	1	2	1	3	3	1
Employ CAS	1	3	1	3	3	1
Provide spot and status reports	2	3	2	2	2	1
Depart from a battle position/attack by fire position	2	3	1	3	2	1
Conduct rearming and refueling operations	2	2	2	3	2	1

Figure E-6. Simulation/simulator training assessment.

(1) Task analysis.

(a) Prepare for operations. Janus and ModSAF provide excellent constructive simulations to review company/troop SOPs and battle drills. Depending upon location, high-fidelity terrain databases of the home station may be acquired and used to portray the operation from start to finish. By using ModSAF, 3D fly-through reviews can be conducted. In some cases, terrain databases can be modified to replicate local landmarks, further heightening sensory cues. The terrain analysis capability of Janus and ModSAF provides graphical presentation of LOS, intervisibility conditions, and maneuver corridors. Threat forces can be portrayed and alternative scenarios, based upon unit battle drills, can be conducted. Other combined arms tasks that can be trained include call for fire, CAS, and air-ground maneuver coordination. AVCATT's virtual training environment encompasses all of the functionality specified for Janus and ModSAF; however, it is superior in its integrated approach to replicating a specific training environment. The key point concerning the use of simulations and simulators with this battle task is that they are tools that set the stage for the remaining tasks. Every aspect of how to prepare and conduct a mission can be viewed; a common understanding of the battlespace can be gained.

(b) Move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position. Simulators and simulations give the commander a tool to verify the common understanding of procedures the unit will follow during the execution of this task. By rehearsing this task in the constructive or virtual environment, the commander allows subordinate leaders the opportunity to plan and execute their portion of the mission before live execution. With minimal costs and resources, a short STX can be conducted. Platoon leaders and their crews can work at operator stations and conduct dry runs of the upcoming live mission. The commander can observe, validate, and lead the mission from a master control station that lets him observe the entire situation. Since this task involves the mechanics of flying, the CMS and AVCATT are the best tools to use for route orientation and visualization. The CMS uses a geotypical terrain database in contrast to a geospecific database; therefore, the unit will not be able to train on the same route it will fly in the live environment. In addition, the CMS is a stand-alone system that does not currently link with other training systems. AVCATT allows the integration of multiple cockpits on a common database. ModSAF also provides a 3D view; however, it does not allow a crew to operate the full array of systems they normally would use in flight. Janus' terrain database is excellent but does not allow 3D viewing.

(c) Engage targets. Rapid and efficient execution of target engagements is vital to a successful mission. Simulation flight missions cannot replicate completely the engagement of targets in a full fidelity tactical scenario. Factors like accurate OPFOR targets, comprehensive electronic warfare conditions, and battlefield clutter can be achieved only in a virtual simulator. CMS and AVCATT are the primary tools for training this task. AVCATT is interconnected with other cockpits and the OPFOR can be dynamically adjusted to meet the needs of the commander's training. TSTT permits gunners to conduct limited crew engagements; however, it cannot be linked for platoon or company/troop operations. Constructive simulations—such as Janus and ModSAF—can be used to demonstrate target engagement priorities and procedures. They cannot, however, replicate individual aircraft engagement procedures.

(d) Call for indirect fires. The skills needed to integrate indirect fires during a mission are best supported using AVCATT or ModSAF. Janus also replicates indirect fires; it is an excellent tool to evaluate the current level of unit training. CMS and TSTT can be used to a limited extent but require numerous work-arounds. If crews execute calls for fire and subsequent adjustments to standard, the commander can tailor upcoming training to match that level of expertise.

(e) Employ close air support. The tools used for *call for indirect fires* also can be used with this task. In addition, airspace management issues can be fully replicated in the virtual environment and, to a lesser extent, in the constructive realm.

(f) Provide spot and status reports. Any of the simulators or simulations can support this task, but virtual systems are better suited for this training. Janus provides intelligence that normally would not be available to a crew. To add realism, crews could filter this information to the commander. While this may be an acceptable training tradeoff, crews are not provided the opportunity to track battle engagements and results accurately. Other factors like fuel and ammunition status are not simulated to the same fidelity in Janus as they are in AVCATT or CMS.

(g) Depart from a battle position/attack by fire position. The same tools used for *move to and occupy a battle position/attack by fire position* can be used to train this battle task.

(h) Conduct rearm and refuel operations. CSS operations are not replicated to a high fidelity in any current simulation or simulator designed for battalion/squadron training. BBS provides the best logistics play of any of the systems; however, it does not allow a crew to fly to a FARP to rearm and refuel. The system tracks an icon moving to a CSS unit's location; however, it does not provide the fidelity to address specific issues normally found in a unit's SOP.

(2) Training guidance. The commander weighs the OPTEMPO of the unit and the availability of selected simulators and simulations. The identification and lock-in of resources several weeks before execution gives the commander training tools—AVCATT, Janus, ModSAF, and TSTT. Armed with this

analysis, the commander issues the training guidance to the unit as shown in Figure E-7. The plan outlined illustrates a crawl-walk-run approach to training the task *Conduct an Attack*. Janus and ModSAF will be used to demonstrate how the mission should be executed. On Monday, the company/troop conducts a complete review of the upcoming training. The digital playback capability of both constructive simulations allows training at a pace that supports unit needs. All aspects of the mission, as addressed in SOPs, can be accommodated. On Tuesday, the company/troop conducts a rehearsal of the mission in the AVCATT. The commander reviews all missions and corrects any problem areas before expending live resources later that day. Particular focus during the AVCATT mission is on engaging targets with direct, indirect, and CAS fires. The afternoon mission is the walk portion of the training. Since the unit does not have home station instrumentation and a live OPFOR to conduct their training against, it performs as many aspects of the mission as possible with emphasis on moving to and leaving from battle positions. Wednesday is an in-depth review of training to date and retraining of selected tasks, if necessary. Emphasis is on preparing for the mission on Thursday night. The run portion of training starts on Thursday afternoon. Again, the unit conducts a full mission rehearsal in the AVCATT. On Thursday night, the commander leads the unit on the night execution of the mission. As mentioned earlier, the commander balances the execution of the mission with the tools available. During the night phase, emphasis is again placed on moving to and leaving from battle positions. Use of the AVCATT is stressed, since it provides a robust and dynamic threat environment. Friday is used to review the week's training and to retrain crews as required.

DAY	TIME	EVENT	TOOL
Monday	1300-1700	Prepare for operations	Janus, ModSAF
Tuesday	0800-1200	Move to and depart from BP, engage targets, call for fire, employ CAS, provide reports	AVCATT, ModSAF
	1300-1700	Move to and depart from BP, engage targets, call for fire, employ CAS, provide reports	Aircraft
Wednesday	0800-1200	Review previous training, retrain tasks	Janus, ModSAF
	1300-1700	Prepare for operations	Janus, ModSAF
Thursday	1300-1700	Full-dress rehearsal for night mission	AVCATT, ModSAF
	2000-2400	Move to and depart from BP, engage targets, call for fire, employ CAS, provide reports	Aircraft
Friday	1300-1700	Review previous mission, retrain tasks	Janus, ModSAF

Figure E-7. Example simulation training.

b. Train and Certify Leaders. Training with simulations and simulators requires all participants to have a solid working knowledge of how the systems operate. Platoon leaders and IPs must understand how each tool can be used to support their training needs. One of the aviators in the unit may be assigned the mission to become versed fully on the use of simulations and simulators for training; however, it is critical that all members work to achieve a comfortable level of familiarity with these systems. IPs cannot be the sole source of knowledge concerning these systems. If the unit does not commit itself to understanding these tools, the full benefit of using simulators and simulations will not be realized.

c. Reconnoiter the Training Sites. This is an important step that applies to the virtual and constructive realms. It is critical that the leadership of the unit visit the BSC to verify the availability of the systems and the terrain database. The BSC personnel can be an asset to support training as long as they are aware of requirements.

d. Issue the Training Plan. Issuing the training plan early allows the aviators to review it and prepare for the upcoming mission. It is critical that the commander fully explains the upcoming training and his expectations.

e. Conduct Rehearsals. The commander and platoon leaders must review the training for the week and validate the plan by reviewing all aspects with key personnel. The 1SG and IPs must understand their respective roles in the training. The 1SG ensures that all aircraft are ready for training, and the IPs validate individual training levels for all members and provide the commander recommendations concerning crew mix. Failure to rehearse and review the upcoming mission sets the stage for less than satisfactory training.

f. Execute Training. Units train to achieve and maintain readiness. The amount and quality of work expended before this event will become evident as the training is conducted. Failure to plan adequately reduces the effectiveness of the training for the unit and expends resources needlessly.

g. Conduct an After-Action Review. The commander's plan has AAR periods embedded. The use of AVCATT, Janus, and ModSAF allows high-fidelity reviews of the mission using digital playbacks.

h. Retrain (Time Permitting). Retraining is often neglected. Time and resources must be allocated to correct deficiencies identified during training events. The use of virtual simulators minimizes the expenditure of critical, high cost resources.

GLOSSARY

A ² C ²	Army airspace command and control
A ² C ² S	Army Airspace Command and Control System
AA	assembly area
AAA	antiaircraft artillery
AAR	after-action review
AATF	air assault task force
AATFC	air assault task force commander
ABF	attack by fire
ABFTP	Aviation Battle–Focused Training Program
AC	Active component
ACA	airspace coordination area; airspace control authority
ACC	Army correspondence course
ACE	analysis and control element
ACL	allowable cargo load
ACO	air control order
ACP	allied communication publication; air control point
Acq	acquisition
ACT	air cavalry troop
ACTD	advanced concepts and technologies demonstration
ACTM	air cavalry team
ACU	area common user
AD	air defense
ADA	air defense artillery
ADC	area damage control
ADCATT	Air Defense Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
ADE	assistant division engineer
Admin	administrative
AF	Air Force
AFTP	additional flight training periods
AG	adjutant general
AGCF	air–ground correlation factor
AGES	Air–Ground Engagement System
AGL	above ground level
AGMB	advanced guard maneuver battalion
AH	attack helicopter
AHB	assault helicopter battalion
AI	area of interest; air interdiction
AIMI-X	aviation intensively managed items–expanded
ALO	administrative–logistics officer; air liaison officer
ALOC	administrative and logistics operations center
ALSE	aviation life support equipment
AM	amplitude modulation
AMC	Army Materiel Command; air mission commander
AMO	aircraft maintenance officer
AMPS	Aviation Mission Planning System
AMTP	ARTEP Mission Training
ANCD	automated net control device
ANT	antenna
AO	area of operations
AOAP	Army oil analysis program
AP	antipersonnel

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

APC	armored personnel carrier
App	appendix
AQC	aviator qualification course
AR	Army regulation; Army Reserve
ARAT	Army Reprogramming Analysis Team
ARI	Army Research Institute
ARMS	Aviation Resource Management Survey
ARP	acquisition requirements package
ARTBASS	Army Training Battle Simulation System
ARTEP	Army Training and Evaluation Program
Arty	artillery
ASAMS	Aviation Safety Action Message
ASAT	Automated Systems Approach to Training
ASE	aircraft survivability equipment
ASET	Aircraft Survivability Equipment Trainer
ASI	additional skill indicator
ASIMS	Aviation Selected Item Management System
ASL	authorized stockage level (or list)
Aslt	assault
ASO	aviation safety officer
AT	Army training
ATAF	allied tactical air force
ATB	aircrew training brief (RC units only)
ATC	air traffic control
Atch	attached
ATD	Advanced Technology Demonstration
ATDDL	Army Training and Doctrine Digital Library
Atk	attack
ATKHB	attack helicopter battalion
ATM	aircrew training manual
ATO	air tasking order
ATP	aircrew training program
ATS	air traffic services
ATSC	Army Training Support Center
Auth	authorize(ed)
AUTL	Army Universal Task List
AV	audiovisual; aviation
AVCATT	Aviation Combined Arms Tactical Trainer Simulator
AVIM	aviation intermediate maintenance
Avn	aviation
AVUM	aviation unit maintenance
AWACS	Airborne Warning And Control System
AWE	Advanced Warfighting Experiment
AWOL	absent without leave
AZ	azimuth
B/P	be prepared
BAE	battlefield area evaluation
BAS	battlefield air support
BBS	Battalion/Brigade Battle Simulation
BCBST	Brigade Command and Battle Staff Training
BCT	Brigade Combat Team
BCTP	Battle Command Training Program
BD	battle damage
BDA	battle damage assessment
BDAR	battle damage assessment and repair

Bde	brigade
BHL	battle handover line
BIO	biological
BIT	built-in test
BITE	built-in test equipment
BLTM	Battalion Level Training Model
BLUFOR	Blue Force
BM	base maintenance
Bn	battalion
BO	blackout
BOS	Battlefield Operating System(s)
BP	battle position
BSC	Battle Simulation Center
BSX	battle simulation exercise
C	Centigrade or Celsius (temperature)
C ²	command and control
C ³	command, control, and communications
C ⁴	command, control, communications, and computers
CA	counterair
CAB	command aviation battalion
CAC	contamination-avoidance cover; Combined Arms Center
CAI	computer-assisted instruction
CAL	Center of Army Leadership; caliber
CALFEX	combined arms live fire exercise
CALL	Center for Army Lessons Learned
CAM	chemical agent monitor
CAS	close air support
CATS	combined arms training strategy
CATT	Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
Cav	cavalry
CAX	computer-assisted exercise
CCAD	Corpus Christi Army Depot
CBS	Corps Battle Simulation
CCI	controlled cryptographic item
CCIR	commander's critical information requirements
CCP	communication checkpoint; civilian collection point
CCTT	Close Combat Tactical Trainer
Cdr	commander
CD-ROM	Compact Disk-Read Only Memory
CE	communications-electronics
CECOM	Communications-Electronics Command
CED	captured enemy documents
CEM	captured enemy material
CEMS	Communication-Electronics Management System
CEOI	communications-electronics operation instructions
CEWI	combat electronic warfare and intelligence
CF	correlation factor; covering force
CFV	cavalry fighting vehicle
CFX	command field exercise
CG	commanding general; center of gravity
CGA	color graphics adapter
Cgy	centigray(s)
Ch	cargo helicopter
Chap	chapter

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

CHOICE	collective helicopter operations interactive combat environment
CI	counterintelligence; combat information
CIP	command inspection program
Cir	circular
CIS	command information system
CJCS	Chairman, Joint Chiefs of Staff
CKT	circuit
Cm	centimeter
CMO	Civil–Military Operations
CMOC	Civil–Military Operations Center
CMS	countermeasure set
CMTC	Combat Maneuver Training Center
CO	commanding officer
COA	course of action
COFT	Conduct of Fire Trainer
COL	colonel
COMARFOR	Commander of the Army Force
COMEX	communications exercise
COMM	communication
COMMZ	communications zone
COMSEC	communications security
CONPLAN	contingency plan
Cont	continued
COP	combat outposts
COSCOM	corps support command
CP	command post
CPG	co-pilot/gunner
CPT	captain
CPX	command post exercise
CRP	combat reconnaissance patrol
CS	combat support
CSA	corps storage area
CSAR	combat search and rescue
CSM	command sergeant major
CSR	controlled supply rate
CSS	combat service support
CSSTSS	Combat Service Support Training Simulation System
CST	Classroom Systems Trainer
CTA	common table of allowances
CTC	combat training center
CTCP	combat training command post
CTG	command training guidance
CTT	common task test
CTX	combined training exercise
CW	continuous wave
DA	Department of the Army
DARPA	Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency
DART	downed aircraft/aircrew recovery team
DASB	division aviation support battalion
DC	direct current
DCFA	Directorate of Community and Family Activities
DD	Department of Defense
DE	directed energy
Decon	decontaminate
DEL	deployment equipment list

Demo	demonstrate
DEPEX	deployment exercise
DEW	direct energy weapon (or warfare)
DF	direction finding
DIS	Distributed Interactive Simulation
DISCOM	division support command
Div	division
DIVARTY	division artillery
DL	delay line
DMX	decision-making exercise
DO	delivery order
DOD	Department of Defense
DODAC	Department of Defense ammunition code
DODD	Department of Defense directive
DOTDS	Directorate of Training, Doctrine, and Simulation
DP	decision point; departure point
DPICM	dual-purpose improved conventional munitions
DR	data repository
DS	direct support
DS1	decontaminating solution #1
DS2	decontaminating solution #2
DSN	Defense Switchboard Network
DTG	date-time group
DTLOMS	Doctrine, Training, Leader Development, Organizations, Materiel, and Soldiers
DTX	digital training exercise
DZ	drop zone
EA	electronic attack
EAC	echelons above corps
EAD	echelons above division
EC	electronic countermeasure
ECCM	electronic counter-countermeasures
ECM	electronic countermeasures
EDRE	emergency deployment readiness exercise
EEFI	essential elements of friendly information
EENT	end of evening nautical twilight
EH	electronic helicopter
EID	Emitter Identification Database
EMCON	emission control
EMP	electromagnetic pulse
EN	Corps of Engineers
ENCATT	Engineer Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
EO	electro-optical
EOC	emergency operations center
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EP	electronic protection
EPA	evasion plans of action
EPW	enemy prisoner of war
ERFS	extended range fuel system
ES	electronic support
ESM	electronic support measures
ET	embedded training
ETA	estimated time of arrival
ETE	estimated time en route
ETS	expiration term of service
EW	electronic warfare

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

EWI	electronic warfare and intelligence
EWO	electronic warfare officer
1SG	first sergeant
F	Fahrenheit (temperature)
FA	functional area; field artillery
FAA	functional area assessment
FAAD	forward area air defense
FAC	forward air controller
FAMSIM	family of simulators
FARE	forward area refueling equipment
FARP	forward arming and refueling point
FASCAM	family of scatterable mines
FCC	flight coordination center; fire control computer
FCX	fire coordination exercise
FDC	fire direction center
FDL	fire direction line
FER	final exercise report
FIST	fire support team
FH	frequency hopping
FL	flight level
FLIR	forward looking infrared
FLOT	forward line of own troops
FM	field manual; frequency modulation (radio)
FMC	fully mission capable
FO	forward observer
FOC	flight operations center
FORSCOM	forces command
FPL	final protective line
FRAGO	fragmentary order
Freq	frequency
FS	fire support
FSB	forward support battalion
FSCATT	Fire Support Combined Arms Tactical Trainer
FSCCL	fire support coordination line
FSCM	fire support coordination measures
FSCOORD	fire support coordinator
FSE	fire support element
FSO	fire support officer
FST	field sanitation team
Ft	foot (feet)
FTS	Flight Training Simulator
FTX	field training exercise
FUE	first unit equipped
G/VLLD	Ground/Vehicular Laser Locator Designator
G1	Assistant Chief of Staff, Personnel
G2	Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence
G3	Assistant Chief of Staff, Operations
G4	Assistant Chief of Staff, Logistics
G5	Assistant Chief of Staff, Civil Affairs
G6	Assistant Chief of Staff, Communications
GAS	ground aided seeker
GEN	general
GI	government issue

GP	general purpose
GPS	gunner's primary sight; Global Positioning System
GRREG	graves registration
GS	general support
GSAB	general support aviation battalion
GTA	graphic training aid; ground to air
Gy	Grays
HA	holding area
HACC	Humanitarian Assistance Coordination Center
HB	heavy barrel
HE	high explosive
HF	high frequency
HGSS	Hellfire Ground Support System
HHC	Headquarters and Headquarters Company
HHQ	higher headquarters
HHT	Headquarters and Headquarters Troop
HICHS	helicopter internal cargo handling system
HIMAD	high-altitude missile air defense
HIRSS	hover infrared suppression system
HQ	headquarters
HQDA	Headquarters, Department of the Army
Hr	hour
HSI	home station instrumentation
HVT	high-value targets
IAW	in accordance with
IBBS	Integrated Brigade/Battalion Simulation
IC	installation commander
ICAC2	Multi-Service Procedures for Combat Airspace Command and Control
ICM	improved conventional munitions
ICS	information control systems
ID	identification
ID(M)	infantry division (mechanized)
IDP	initial delay position
IDT	inactive duty training
IE	instrument flight examiner
IEW	intelligence and electronic warfare
IFF	identification, friend or foe
IFR	instrument flight rules
IHADSS	Integrated Helmet and Display Sighting System
IG	Inspector General
IMA	individual mobilization augmentee
IMC	instrument meteorological conditions
IMI	interactive multi-media instruction
In	inch
IND	improvised nuclear devices
Inf	infantry
INFO	information addressee
INT	intercommunication system (panel nomenclature)
INTSUM	intelligence summary
IO/IW	information operations/ information warfare
IP	instructor pilot
IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlefield
IR	infrared; intelligence requirements
IRCM	IR countermeasures

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

ISA	International Standardization Agreement; instruction set architecture
ISB	initial staging base
ISOPREP	Isolated Personnel Report
ISR	individual school requirement; Individual Soldier Report; Installation Status Report
ITEP	individual training evaluation plan
ITS	individual training strategy
IV	intravenous
IW	information warfare
JAAT	joint air attack team
Janus	name of a computer-driven battle simulation
JCS	Joint Chiefs of Staff
JOIN	Joint Optical Information Network
JP	jet petroleum; joint publication
JPN	jam program number
JRTC	Joint Readiness Training Center
J-SEAD	joint suppression of enemy air defense
JSRC	joint search and rescue center
JTX	joint training exercise
KIA	killed in action
LAN	local area network
LC	line of contact
LCX	logistics coordination exercise
LD	line of departure
LD/LC	line of departure is line of contact
LFX	live fire exercise
LIN	line item number
LNO	liaison officer
LOA	limit of advance
LOC	line of communication
LOE	limited objective experiment
log	Logistics
LOGEX	logistics exercise
LOGPAC	logistics package
LOI	letter of instruction
LOS	line of sight
LP	listening post
LRP	logistic release point
LRSD	long-range surveillance detachment
LTC	lieutenant colonel
LTX	lane training exercise
LZ	landing zone
m	meter
M&S	modeling and simulation
MA	marshaling area
MACOM	Major Army Command
MAG	military advisory group
maint	maintenance
MAJ	major
MANPAD TM	manportable air defense team
MAPEX	map exercise
MARKS	Modern Army RecordKeeping System

MASH	Mobile Army Surgical Hospital
max	maximum
MBA	main battle area
MC	mobility corridor
MCO	movement control officer
MCOO	modified combined obstacle overlay
MCRP	Marine Corps Report
MCS	maneuver control system
MDMP	military decision-making process
ME	maintenance test flight evaluator
mech	mechanize
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time, and civilian considerations
MI	military intelligence
MIA	missing in action
MIC	mission identification code
MIJI	meaconing, interference, jamming, and intrusion
mil	military
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
min	minute
mm	millimeter
MO	medical officer; movement order
MOBEX	mobilization exercise
MODSAF	Modular Semiautomatic Forces
MOGAS	motor gas
MOPP	mission oriented protective posture
MOS	military occupational specialty
MOU	memorandum of understanding
MOUT	military operations on urbanized terrain
MP	military police
mph	miles per hour
MPRT	military planning rehearsal tool
MQS	military qualification standard
MRE	meals, ready to eat
MSE	mobile subscriber equipment
MSEC-BBS	Multi-Service Electronic Combat-Bulletin Board System
MST	maintenance support team
MTC	movement to contact
MTI	moving target indicator
MTOE	modified table of organization and equipment
MTP	mission training plan
MTS	multi-media training system
MWO	modification work order
NA	not applicable
NAI	named area of interest
NATO	North Atlantic Treaty Organization
NAVAID	navigational aid
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NBCC	nuclear, biological, and chemical center
NCO	noncommissioned officer
NCOIC	noncommissioned officer in charge
NCOPD	noncommissioned officer professional development
NCS	net control station
NCTR	non-cooperative target recognition

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

NDI	non-developmental items
NET	new equipment training
NETT	new equipment training team
NG	National Guard
NGF	naval gunfire
NGO	non-government organization
NLT	no later than
NOE	nap of the earth
NS	night system
NSN	National stock number
NTC	National Training Center
NTL	net trainload
NVD	night vision device
O/O	on order
OB	order of battle
OBJ	objective
OC	observer-controller
OCOKA	observation, concealment, obstacles, key terrain, and avenues of approach
ODSS	offensive, defensive, stability, or support
OEG	operational exposure guidance
OF	observed fire
OFS	officer foundation standard
OH	observation helicopter
OI	operations and intelligence
OIC	officer-in-charge
ONESAF	one semiautomatic forces
OP	observation post
OPCON	operational control
OPD	officer professional development
OPFOR	opposing force
OPLAN	operation plan
OPORD	operation order
ops	operations
OPSEC	operations security
OPTEMPO	operations tempo
OR	operational readiness
ORD	operational requirements document
org	organization
ORT	optical relay tube
OT	observer-target
P	(needs practice)
PA	pressure altitude
PAC	Personnel Administration Center
PAO	public affairs officer
PAR	precision approach radar
PAX	passenger
PB	property book
PC	pilot-in-command; production control
PC/AC	pilot-in-command of aircraft
PCC	pre-combat checks
PCI	pre-combat inspection
PD	program directive
PDF	principal direction of fire

PE	practical exercise
PEG	program evaluation group
PERSTEMPO	personnel tempo
PFPX	partnership for peace exercise
PIR	priority intelligence requirements
PL	phase line
PLL	prescribed load list
PM	program manager
PMCS	preventive maintenance checks and services
PME	performance management and evaluation; professional military education
PMOS	primary military occupational specialty
PNVS	pilot night vision system
POC	point of contact
POI	program of instruction
POL	petroleum, oils, and lubricants
POM	program objective memorandum; preparation for overseas movement
POR	preparation of overseas replacements
POV	privately owned vehicle
PP	passage point; present position
PPR	periodic personnel report
PRI	primary review authority
PSC	personnel service company
PSNCO	personnel service noncommissioned officer
PSRC	partial selective reserve call-ups
PSS	personnel service support
PT	physical training
PVO	private volunteer organization
PW	pulsed wave
PX	post exchange
PZ	pickup zone
PZCO	pickup zone control officer
QRF	quick reaction force
QTB	quarterly training briefing
QTG	quarterly training guidance
R&R	rest and relaxation
R&S	reconnaissance and surveillance
RA	Regular Army
RAA	redeployment assembly area
RACO	rear area combat operations
RAD	radiation absorbed dose
RAG	regimental artillery group
RC	Reserve component
RCC	rescue coordination center
RCE	regional coordinating element
RCU	radio control unit
rd	round
RDL	Reimer Digital Library
RDA	research, development, and acquisition
RDS	requirements data sheet
rearm	rearmament
REC	radio-electronic combat
recon	reconnaissance
REF	reference

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

Reg	regiment
REGT	regiment
RES	radiation exposure status
retrans	retransmission (or retransmit)
RF	radio frequency
RFA	restrictive fire area
RII	request for intelligence information
RM	requirements management; resource management
ROE	rules of engagement
ROM	refuel on the move; read only memory
ROZ	restricted operations zone
RP	release point
RS	radiation status
RSA	regimental support area
RSDS	radar signal detecting sets
RSO&I	reception, staging, onward movement, and integration
RSR	required supply rate
RSS	regimental support squadron
RT	receiver–transmitter
RTS	regional training sites
RW	rotary wing
S1	adjutant
S2	intelligence officer
S3	operations, plans, and training officer
S4	supply officer
S5	civil affairs officer
SA	situational awareness
SA–X	(future or non-specific) surface–to–air missile
SAC	support aviation company
SAEDA	Subversion and Espionage Directed Against the US Army
SAF	semiautomatic forces
SAL	semi–active laser
SALUTE	size, activity, location, unit identification, time, and equipment (format for reporting enemy information)
SAM	surface–to–air missile
SAMS	Standard Army Maintenance System
SARH	semi–active radar homing
SARSS	Standard Army Retail Supply System
SASO	stability and support operations
SAT	Systems Approach to Training
SATS	Standard Army Training System
SBF	support by fire
SC	Signal Corps; single channel
SCATMIN	scatterable mine
SCATMINWARN	scatterable mine warning
SDT	self–development test
SE	synthetic environment
SEAD	suppression of enemy air defense
sec/plt	section/platoon
SEDRE	sea emergency deployment readiness exercise
SEMA	special electronic mission aircraft
SEN	small extension node
SF	Special Forces
SFTS	Synthetic Flight Trainer System

SHELREP	shelling report
SI	set indicator (panel nomenclature); skill identifier
SID	standard instrument departure
SIDPERS	Standard Installation/Division Personnel System
SIF	selective identification feature
SIG	signal
SIGINT/EW	Signals Intelligence/Electronic Warfare
SIGSEC	signal security
SIMNET	Simulation Network
SIMNET-T	Simulation Network–Trainer
SINCGARS	single channel ground and air radio system
SIP	standardization instructor pilot
SITREP	situation report
SJA	staff judge advocate
SM	soldier's manual; service member
SMCT	soldier's manual of common tasks
SME	subject matter expert
SMOS	secondary military occupational specialty
SNCO	senior noncommissioned officer
SO	safety officer, signal officer
SOF	Special Operations Forces
SOFA	Status of Forces Agreement
SOI	signal operations instructions
SOP	standing operating procedures
SORTS	Status of Resource and Training System
SP	start point
SPBS	Standard Property Book System
SPINS	special instructions
SPOTREP	spot report
SQDN	squadron
SQI	skill qualification identifier
SR	supply route
SSI	special skill identifier
SSM	surface–to–surface missile
ST	student text
STAARS	Standard Army After Action Review System
STAB	Standby Advisory Board
STAFFEX	staff exercise
STARTEX	start of exercise
STND	standard
STP	soldier training publication
STU III	secure telephone unit III
STX	situational training exercise
SUPPL	supplement
T	trained
T&EO	training and evaluation outline
TAA	tactical assembly area
TAACOM	Theater Army Area Command
TAC	Tactical Air Command; tactical air coordinator
TAC CP	tactical command post
TACAIR	tactical air
TACCS	Tactical Army Combat Service Support Computer System
TACLAN	tactical local area network
TACSAT	tactical satellite

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

TACSIM	tactical simulation
TACSOP	tactical standing operating procedures
TADS	Target Acquisition and Designation System
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
TAI	TRADOC Acquisition Instruction, target area(s) of interest
TAM	Training Assessment Module
TAMMS	The Army Maintenance Management System
TAMMS-A	The Army Maintenance Management System-A
TAR	tactical air request
TAS	Target Acquisition System
TAT	to accompany troops
TB	technical bulletin
TBD	to be determined
TBP	to be published
TC	training circular
TCF	tactical combat force
TD	training development
TDY	temporary duty
TE	task evaluation; test equipment
TEC	training extension course
TEMP	test and evaluation master plan
TEP	training evaluation package
TES	Tactical Engagement System
TEWT	tactical exercise without troops
TF	task force
TG	trainer's guide
TM	technical manual
TMDE	test, measurement, and diagnostic equipment
TOC	tactical operations center
TOCEX	tactical operations center exercise
TOE	table of organization and equipment
TOF	time of flight
TOO	tactical operations officer
T-P-U	rating for each collective task and task step standard: T-trained, P-needs practice, U-untrained
TR	TRADOC regulation
TRADMOD	training module
TRADOC	US Army Training and Doctrine Command
TRP	target reference point
TRTG	tactical radar threat generator
TSBN	training support battalion
TSIU	Tactical Simulation Interface Unit
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedures
TSP	training support package
TST	tactical support team
TSTT	TADS Selected Task Trainer
TT	technical testing; threat transmitter; training text; troop test
TTP	tactics, techniques, and procedures
TUFMIS	Tactical Unit Financial Management Information System
TVM	track-via-missile
U	untrained
UAV	unmanned aerial vehicle
UCMJ	Uniform Code of Military Justice
UH	utility helicopter
UHF	ultra high frequency

ULLS	Unit Level Logistics System
ULLS–A	Unit Level Logistics System–Aviation
UMC	unit movement center
UMCP	unit maintenance collection point
UN	United Nations
U.S.	United States
USA	United States Army
USAAVNC	United States Army Aviation Center
USAF	United States Air Force
USAPA	United States Army Publishing Agency
USN	United States Navy
USO	United Services Organization
USR	unit status report
USS	unit supply system
veh	vehicle
VHF	very high frequency
VI	visual information
vic	vicinity
VISMOD	visual modification
VMC	visual meteorological conditions
vol	volume
WAN	wide area network
WARNORD	warning order
WarMod	WarMod XXI synchronizes training acquisition with force modernization. WarMod's focus is to enforce DoD and Army policy for the development and procurement of system TSPs concurrently with the acquisition of the materiel system.
WARSIM	Warfighters' Simulation
WIA	wounded in action
WO	warrant officer
WSRO	weapon systems replacement operations
WX	weather
XO	executive officer
Z	Zulu time (Greenwich Mean Time)

REFERENCES

SOURCES USED/NEEDED

These sources have been quoted, paraphrased, or referred to in the publication of this manual. These documents must be available to the intended user of this publication.

Army Regulations

- AR 25-400-2. The Modern Army Recordkeeping System (MARKS). 26 February 1993.
- AR 27-10. Legal Services: Military Justice. 24 June 1996.
- AR 34-4. Army Standardization Policy. 15 March 1984.
- AR 40-5. Preventive Medicine. 15 October 1990.
- AR 40-8. Temporary Flying Restrictions due to Exogenous Factors. 17 August 1976.
- AR 50-5. Nuclear and Chemical Weapons and Material - Nuclear Surety. 1 August 2000.
- AR 50-6. Nuclear and Chemical Weapons and Material, Chemical Surety. 1 February 1995.
- AR 95-1. Flight Regulations. 1 September 1997.
- AR 95-27. Operational Procedures for Aircraft Carrying Hazardous materials. 11 November 1994.
- AR 220-1. Unit Status Reporting. 1 September 1997.
- AR 220-10. Preparation for Oversea Movement of Units (POM). 15 June 1973.
- AR 380-5. Department of the Army Information Security Program. 31 October 2000.
- AR 380-19-1. (C) Control of Compromising Emanations (U). September 1990.
- AR 381-10. US Army Intelligence Activities. 1 July 1984.
- AR 381-12. Subversion and Espionage Directed Against the U.S. Army (SAEDA). 15 January 1993.
- AR 385-10. The Army Safety Program. 23 May 1988.
- AR 385-95. Army Aviation Accident Prevention. 10 December 1999.
- AR 600-105. Aviation Service of Rated Army Officers. 15 December 1994.
- AR 710-2. Inventory Management Supply Policy Below the Wholesale Level. 31 October 1997.

Army Training and Evaluation Program

- ARTEP 1-111-MTP. Mission Training Plan for the Aviation Brigades. 23 September 1998.

Department of the Army Forms

- DA Form 31. Request and Authority for Leave. September 1993.
- DA Form 638. Recommendation for Award. November 1994.
- DA Form 647. Personnel Register. 1 August 1978.
- DA Form 1155. Witness Statement on Individual. 1 June 1966.
- DA Form 1156. Casualty Feeder Report. 1 June 1966.
- DA Form 1352. Army Aircraft Inventory, Status and Flying Time. April 1993.
- DA Form 1352-1. Daily Aircraft Status Record. April 1993.
- DA Form 1594. Daily Staff Journal or Duty Officer's Log. 1 November 1962.
- DA Form 2028. Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms. 1 February 1974.
- DA Form 2765-1. Request for Issue or Turn-In. April 1976.
- DA Form 3955. Change of Address and Directory Card. 1 February 1979.
- DA Form 4179-R. Leave Control Log. September 1993.
- DA Form 4186. Medical Recommendation for Flying Duty. January 1985.

Department of the Army Pamphlets

DA Pam 350-38. Standards in Weapons Training. 3 July 1997.
DA Pam 385-1. Small Unit Safety Officer/NCO Guide. 22 September 1993.
DA Pam 600-8. Management and Administrative Procedures. 25 February 1986.
DA Pam 600-8-20. SIDPERS Handbook for Commanders. 1 April 1986.
DA Pam 600-41. Military Personnel Managers Mobilization Handbook. 1 January 1987.
DA Pam 600-67. Effective Writing for Army Leaders. 2 June 1986.
DA Pam 611-21. Military Occupational Classification and Structure. 31 March 1999.
DA Pam 710-2-1. Using Unit Supply System (Manual Procedures). 31 December 1997.
DA Pam 738-750. Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System (TAMMS).
1 August 1994.
DA Pam 738-751. Functional Users Manual for the Army Maintenance Management System—Aviation
(TAMMS-A). 15 March 1999.

Department of Defense Forms

DD Form 551. Record of Interment (LRA). August 1984.
DD Form 565. Statement of Recognition of Deceased (EGA). July 1998.
DD Form 567. Record of Search and Recovery (EGA). July 1998.
DD Form 1380. US Field Medical Card. December 1991.
DD Form 1833. Isolated Personnel Report (LRA). February 1984.

Department of Defense Publication

DOD 4500.9-R Part III. Defense Transportation Regulation (Mobility). April 1997.

Field Manuals

FM numbering is in transition to a new system. The first number shown below is the new or future number. The second number, shown in parentheses, is the old or current number. If no new number appears, that publication is slated to be superseded by a new publication or to be rescinded.

FM 1-0 (FM 12-6). Personnel Doctrine. 9 September 1994.
FM 1-02 (FM 101-5-1). Operational Terms and Graphics. 30 September 1997.
FM 1-05 (FM 16-1). Religious Support. 26 May 1995.
FM 2-0 (FM 34-1). Intelligence and Electronic Warfare Operations. 27 September 1994.
FM 2-00.7 (FM 34-10-7). QUICKFIX Operations. 30 September 1991.
FM 2-00.21 (FM 34-2-1). Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Reconnaissance and Surveillance and Intelligence Support to Counterreconnaissance. 19 June 1991.
FM 2-01.3 (FM 34-130). Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield. 8 July 1994.
FM 2-19.202 (FM 34-25-6). (S) Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for the Electronic Processing and Dissemination System (U). 15 June 1992.
FM 2-33.4 (FM 34-3). Intelligence Analysis. 15 March 1990.
FM 2-50.3 (FM 34-25-3). All-Source Analysis System and the Analysis and Control Element. 3 October 1995.
FM 3-0 (FM 100-5). Operations. 14 June 1993.
FM 3-01.8 (FM 44-8). Combined Arms for the Air Defense. 1 June 1999.
FM 3-04.100 (FM 1-100). Army Aviation Operations. 21 February 1997.
FM 3-04.111 (FM 1-111). Aviation Brigades. 27 October 1997.
FM 3-04.112 (FM 1-112). Attack Helicopter Operations. 2 April 1997.

- FM 3-04.113 (FM 1-113). Utility and Cargo Helicopter Operations. 12 September 1997.
- FM 3-04.114 (FM 1-114). Air Cavalry Squadron and Troop Operations. 1 February 2000.
- FM 3-04.120 (FM 1-120). Army Air Traffic Services Contingency and Combat Zone Operations. 22 May 1995.
- FM 3-04.140 (FM 1-140). Helicopter Gunnery. 29 March 1996.
- FM 3-04.300 (FM 1-300). Flight Operations Procedures. 15 July 1998.
- FM 3-04.500 (FM 1-500). Army Aviation Maintenance. 27 January 1995.
- FM 3-04.513 (FM 1-513). Battlefield Recovery and Evacuation of Aircraft. 27 September 2000.
- FM 3-06.1 (FM 1-130). Aviation Urban Operations. To be published.
- FM 3-06.11 (FM 90-10-1). An Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas. 12 May 1993.
- FM 3-07 (FM 100-20). Military Operations in Low Intensity Conflict (AFP 3-20). 5 December 1990.
- FM 3-07.5 (FM 90-29). Noncombatant Evacuation Operations. 17 October 1994.
- FM 3-07.7 (FM 100-19). Domestic Support Operations (FMFM 7-10). 1 July 1993.
- FM 3-09 (FM 6-20). Fire Support in the Airland Battle. 17 May 1988.
- FM 3-09.31 (FM 6-71). Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Fire Support for the Combined Arms Commander. 29 September 1994.
- FM 3-11 (FM 3-100). Chemical Operations, Principles and Fundamentals. 8 May 1996.
- FM 3-11.3 (FM 3-3). Chemical and Biological Contamination Avoidance. 16 November 1992.
- FM 3-11.4 (FM 3-4). NBC Protection. 29 May 1992.
- FM 3-11.5 (FM 3-5). NBC Decontamination. 28 July 2000.
- FM 3-11.7 (FM 3-7). NBC Field Handbook. 29 September 1994.
- FM 3-13 (FM 100-6). Information Operations. 27 August 1996.
- FM 3-19.30 (FM 19-30). Physical Security. 8 January 2001.
- FM 3-19.40 (FM 19-40). Enemy Prisoners of War, Civilian Internees and Detained Persons. 27 February 1976.
- FM 3-20.15 (FM 17-15). Tank Platoon. 3 April 1996.
- FM 3-20.95 (FM 17-95). Cavalry Operations. 24 December 1996.
- FM 3-21.7 (FM 7-7). The Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad (APC). 15 March 1985.
- FM 3-21.10 (FM 7-10). The Infantry Rifle Company. 14 December 1990.
- FM 3-21.20 (FM 7-20). The Infantry Battalion. 6 April 1992.
- FM 3-21.38 (FM 57-38). Pathfinder Operations. 9 April 1993.
- FM 3-22.6 (FM 22-6). Guard Duty. 17 September 1971.
- FM 3-24.3 (FM 20-3). Camouflage, Concealment, and Decoys. 30 August 1999.
- FM 3-24.32 (FM 20-32). Mine/Countermine Operations. 29 May 1998.
- FM 3-25.60 (FM 21-60). Visual Signals. 30 September 1987.
- FM 3-25.75 (FM 21-75). Combat Skills of the Soldier. 3 August 1984.
- FM 3-34.112 (FM 5-103). Survivability. 10 June 1985.
- FM 3-35 (FM 100-17). Mobilization, Deployment, Redeployment, Demobilization. 28 October 1992.
- FM 3-52 (FM 100-103). Army Airspace Command and Control in a Combat Zone. 7 October 1987.
- FM 3-57 (FM 41-10). Civil Affairs Operations. 14 February 2000.
- FM 3-91.1 (FM 71-1). Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team. 26 January 1998.
- FM 3-97.4 (FM 90-4). Air Assault Operations, 16 March 1987.
- FM 3-97.50 (FM 3-50). Smoke Operations. 4 December 1990.
- FM 3-100.14 (FM 100-14). Risk Management. 23 April 1998.
- FM 3-100.15 (FM 100-15). Corps Operations. 29 October 1996.
- FM 3-100.2. ICAC2 Multiservice Procedures for Integrated Combat Airspace Command and Control. 30 June 2000.
- FM 3-100.71 (FM 71-100). Division Operations. 28 August 1996.

- FM 4-0 (FM 100-10). Combat Service Support. 3 October 1995.
- FM 4-01.9** (FM 55-9). Unit Air Movement Planning. 5 April 1993.
- FM 4-01.40 (FM 55-30). Army Motor Transport Units and Operations. 27 June 1997.
- FM 4-01.41 (FM 55-20). Rail Transport in a Theater of Operations. 1 June 2000.
- FM 4-02.2 (FM 8-10-6). Medical Evacuation in a Theater of Operations Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 14 April 2000.
- FM 4-02.4 (FM 8-10-4). Medical Platoon Leaders' Handbook—Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures. 16 November 1990.
- FM 4-02.55 (FM 8-55). Planning for Health Service Support. 9 September 1994.
- FM 4-02.285 (FM 8-285). Treatment of Chemical Agent Casualties and Conventional Military Chemical Injuries. 22 December 1995.
- FM 4-20.05 (FM 10-27-4). Organizational Supply and Services for Unit Leaders. 14 April 2000.
- FM 4-20.2 (FM 10-23). Basic Doctrine for Army Field Feeding and Class I Operations Management. 18 April 1996.
- FM 4-20.12 (FM 10-67-1). Concepts and Equipment of Petroleum Operations. 2 April 1998.
- FM 4-20.51 (FM 10-23-1). Commander's Guide to Food Service Operations. 17 March 1992.
- FM 4-20.197 (FM 10-450-3). Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Basic Operations and Equipment. 10 April 1997.
- FM 4-20.198 (FM 10-450-4). Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Single-Point Load Rigging Procedures. 30 May 1998.
- FM 4-20.199 (FM 10-450-5). Multiservice Helicopter Sling Load: Dual-Point Load Rigging Procedures. 30 August 1999.
- FM 4-25.10 (FM 21-10). Field Hygiene and Sanitation. 21 June 2000.
- FM 4-25.11 (FM 21-11). First Aid for Soldiers. 27 October 1988.
- FM 4-25.12 (FM 21-10-1). Unit Field Sanitation Team. 11 October 1989.
- FM 4-30.3. Maintenance Operations and Procedures. 1 September 2000.
- FM 5-0 (FM 101-5). Staff Organization and Operations. 31 May 1997.
- FM 6-02 (FM 24-1). Signal Support in the Airland Battle. 15 October 1990.
- FM 6-02.7 (FM 24-7). Tactical Local Area Network (LAN) Management. 8 October 1999.
- FM 6-02.11 (FM 24-11). Tactical Satellite Communications. 20 September 1990.
- FM 6-02.16 (FM 24-16). Communications-Electronics Operations, Orders, Records and Reports. 7 April 1978.
- FM 6-02.18 (FM 24-18). Tactical Single-Channel Radio Communications Techniques. 30 September 1987.
- FM 6-02.19 (FM 24-19). Radio Operator's Handbook. 24 May 1991.
- FM 6-02.22 (FM 24-22). Communications-Electronics Management System (CEMS). 30 June 1977.
- FM 6-02.33 (FM 24-33). Communications Techniques: Electronic Counter-Countermeasures. 17 July 1990.
- FM 6-02.35 (FM 24-35). (O) Signal Operation Instructions "The SOI." 26 October 1990.
- FM 6-22 (22-100). Army Leadership. 31 August 1999.
- FM 7-0 (FM 25-100). Training the Force. 15 November 1988.
- FM 7-10 (FM 25-101). Battle Focused Training. 30 September 1990.
- FM 7-10.2 (FM 25-4). How to Conduct Training Exercises. 10 September 1984.
- FM 55-220. Air Transport Procedures: Transport of M753 Nuclear Projectile by U.S. Army Helicopter Transport of M753 Nuclear Projectile Complete Mission Loads by U.S. Army CH-47 Helicopters. 28 February 1990.

Joint Publications

- JP 3-50.2. Doctrine for Joint Combat Search and Rescue (CSAR). 26 January 1996.
 JP 3-50.21. Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Combat Search and Rescue. 23 March 1998.

Soldier Training Publications

- STP 1-15II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Aviation Branch (15), Company Grade Officer's and Aviation Commissioned Warrant Officer's Manual. 23 March 1992.
 STP 1-67N13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 67N, UH-1 Helicopter Repairer. 18 December 1991.
 STP 1-67T13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 67T, UH-60 Helicopter Repairer. 17 December 1991.
 STP 1-68B13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 68B, Aircraft Power Plant Repairer. 3 December 1991.
 STP 1-68D13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide MOS 68D Aircraft Power Train Repairer. 3 December 1991.
 STP 1-68F13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 68F, Aircraft Electrician. 3 December 1991.
 STP 1-68G13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide MOS 68G, Aircraft Structural Repairer. 3 December 1991.
 STP 1-68H13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 68H, aircraft Pneudraulics Repairer. 3 December 1991.
 STP 1-68J13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 68J, Aircraft Armament/Missile System Repairer. 28 January 1994.
 STP 1-68N13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 68N, Avionic Mechanic Skill Levels 1/2/3. 12 August 1993.
 STP 1-93C1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 93C, Air Traffic Control Operator Skill Level 1. 28 December 1994.
 STP 1-93C24-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 93C, Air Traffic Control Operator. 28 December 1994.
 STP 1-93P1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 93P, Aviation Operations Specialist Skill Level 1. 31 July 1996.
 STP 1-93P24-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual Skill Levels 2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 93P, Aviation Operations Specialist. 31 July 1996.
 STP 1-AMMS4-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Level 4 Trainer's Guide, MOS 67G, 67H, 67R, 67T, 67U, 67Y, 68K, 68J, 68X, Aircraft Maintenance Manager/Supervisor. 3 December 1991.
 STP 21-I-MQS. Military Qualification Standards I Manual of Common Tasks (Precommissioning Requirements). 31 May 1990.
 STP 21-II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II Manual of Common Tasks for (Lieutenants and Captains). 31 January 1991.
 STP 21-1-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks Skill Level 1. 1 October 1994.
 STP 21-24-SMCT. Soldier's Manual of Common Tasks (SMCT) Skill Levels 2-4. 1 October 1992.

Technical Bulletins

- TB 43-180. Calibration and Repair Requirements for the Maintenance of Army Materiel. 1 December 2000.
 TB 43-0106. Aeronautical Equipment Army Oil Analysis Program (AOAP). 10 April 1987.

Training and Doctrine Pamphlet

11-9. Blueprint of the Battlefield. 27 April 1990.

Training Circulars

- TC 1-210. Aircrew Training Program Commander's Guide to Individual and Crew Standardization. 3 October 1995.
- TC 1-212. Aircrew Training Manual for Utility Helicopter, UH-60/EH-60. 8 March 1996.
- TC 1-214. Aircrew Training Manual for Attack Helicopter, AH-64. 20 May 1992.
- TC 1-216. Aircrew Training Manual for Cargo Helicopter, CH-47. 8 October 1992.
- TC 12-16. PAC Noncommissioned Officer's Guide. 27 June 1991.
- TC 24-20. Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques. 3 October 1988.
- TC 25-30. A Leader's Guide to Company Training Meetings. 27 April 1994.

Technical Manuals

- TM 1-1500-204-23-1. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (General Maintenance and Practices) Volume I. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-2. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Pneudraulics Maintenance and Practices) Volume 2. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-3. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Maintenance Practices for Fuel and Oil Systems) Volume 3. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-4. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Electrical and Instrument Maintenance Procedures and Practices) Volume 4. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-5. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Propeller, Rotor, and Powertrain Maintenance Practices) Volume 5. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-6. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Hardware and Consumable Materials) Volume 6. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-7. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Nondestructive Testing and Flaw Detection Procedures and Practices) Volume 7. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-8. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Machine and Welding Shop Practices) Volume 8. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-9. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Tools and Ground Support Equipment) Volume 9. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-204-23-10. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual for General Aircraft Maintenance (Sheet Metal Shop Practices) Volume 10. 31 July 1992.
- TM 1-1500-250-23. Aviation Unit and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance for General Tie-Down and Mooring on All Series Army Models, AH-64, UH-60, CH-47, UH-1, AH-1, OH-58 Helicopters. 24 August 1990.

- TM 1-1500-328-23. Aeronautical Equipment Maintenance Management Policies and Procedures. 30 July 1999.
- TM 1-1500-335-23. Nondestructive Inspection Methods. 1 October 1997.
- TM 1-1500-344-23. Aircraft Weapons Systems Cleaning and Corrosion Control. 1 October 1997.
- TM 1-1520-237-10. Operator's Manual for UH-60A Helicopters , UH-60L Helicopters, and EH-60A Helicopters. 31 October 1996.
- TM 1-1520-238-BD. Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair for Helicopter, Attack, AH-64A Apache (NSN 1520-01-106-9519). 15 March 1996.
- TM 1-1520-253-23. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual Nondestructive Inspection Procedures for CH/MH-47 Helicopter Series. 30 November 1996.
- TM 1-1520-254-23. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual Nondestructive Inspection Procedures for OH-58A/C Helicopters Series. 30 May 1997.
- TM 1-1520-255-23. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual Nondestructive Inspection Procedures for AH-1 Helicopter Series. 30 November 1996.
- TM 1-1520-256-23. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual Nondestructive Inspection Procedures for UH-1 Helicopter Series. 30 November 1996.
- TM 1-1520-264-23. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual Nondestructive Inspection Procedures for AH-64A Helicopter. 30 November 1996.
- TM 1-1520-265-23. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual Nondestructive Inspection Procedures for UH-60 Helicopter Series. 30 November 1996.
- TM 1-1520-266-23. Aviation Unit Maintenance (AVUM) and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance (AVIM) Manual Nondestructive Inspection Procedures for OH-58D Helicopter Series. 30 May 1997.
- TM 38-250. Preparing Hazardous Materials for Military Air Shipments. 1 March 1997.
- TM 55-1500-323-24. Installation Practices for Aircraft Electric and Electronic Wiring. 15 February 1982.
- TM 55-1500-345-23. Painting and Marking of Army Aircraft. 12 June 1986.
- TM 55-1520-210-BD. Operators, Aviation Unit, and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair for Helicopter, Utility, UH-1H (NSN 1520-00-087-7637) and UH-1V (1520-01-043-4949). 19 February 1991.
- TM 55-1520-228-BD. Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair for Helicopter, Observation OH-58A and OH-58C (NSN 1520-00-169-7137) and (1520-01-020-4216). 4 January 1991.
- TM 55-1520-240-23-9. Aviation Unit and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance Manual for CH-47D Helicopter. 10 may 1983.
- TM 55-1520-244-BD. Operators, Aviation Unit, and Aviation Intermediate Maintenance Battlefield Damage Assessment and Repair for Helicopter, Attack, AH-641E (NSN 1520-01-192-2478) AH-1F (1520-01-168-4260) AH-1P (NSN 1520-01-168-4259). 26 November 1990.

RECOMMENDED READINGS

These readings contain relevant supplemental information.

Soldier Training Publications

- STP 1-67R13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 67R, AH-64 Attack Helicopter Repairer. 3 December 1991.
- STP 1-67S13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 67S, OH-58D Scout Helicopter Repairer. 3 December 1991.
- STP 1-67Y13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 67Y, AH-1 Attack Helicopter Repairer. 3 December 1991.
- STP 1-68X13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for MOS 68X AH-64 Armament/Electrical Systems Repairer Skill Levels 1/2/3. 7 December 1992.

- STP 3-54B1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist, Skill Level 1. 16 June 1995.
- STP 3-54B2-SM. Soldier's Manual, Chemical Operations Specialist, MOS 54B Skill Level 2. 3 October 1995.
- STP 3-54B34-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 54B, Chemical Operations Specialist. 26 January 1996.
- STP 3-74II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II, Chemical Branch (74) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 29 March 1991.
- STP 6-13II-MQS. Military Qualifications Standards II Manual for Field Artillery Branch (13) (Company Grade Officer's Manual). 25 March 1991.
- STP 6-13F14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4, and Trainer's Guide, MOS 13F Fire Support Specialist. 24 September 1993.
- STP 7-11II-MQS. Military Qualifications Standards II, Infantry Branch (11), Company Grade Officer's Manual. 16 July 1991.
- STP 8-91B15-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4/5 and Trainer's Guide for MOS 91B, Medical Specialist. 3 October 1995.
- STP 9-52C12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 52C, Utilities Equipment Repairer, Skill Levels 1/2. 30 October 1989.
- STP 9-52D12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 52D, Power Generation Equipment Repairer, Skill Levels 1/2. 30 October 1989.
- STP 9-55B12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 55B, Ammunition Specialist Skill Levels 1/2. 1 March 1995.
- STP 9-55B34-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for MOS 55B, Ammunition Specialist, Skill Levels 3 and 4. 1 March 1995.
- STP 9-63B12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 63B, Light Wheel Vehicle Mechanic Skill Level 1/2. 17 September 1990.
- STP 9-63B35-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 63B, Light Wheel Vehicle Mechanic, Skill Level 3/4/5. 3 October 1990.
- STP 9-63J12-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Level(s) 1/2 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 63J, Quartermaster and Chemical Equipment Repairer. 22 June 1992.
- STP 9-63Z5-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide: MOS 63Z, Mechanical Maintenance Supervisor Skill Level 5. 30 October 1989.
- STP 10-77F15-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 77F, Petroleum Supply Specialist, Skill Levels 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5. 8 May 1996.
- STP 10-92A12-SM. Soldier's Manual for Automated Logistical Specialist MOS 92A Skill Levels 1 and 2. 19 November 1993.
- STP 10-92A35-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 3/4/5 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 92A, Automated Logistical Specialist. 25 November 1993.
- STP 10-92Y1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 92Y, Unit Supply Specialist, Skill Level 1. 23 February 1994.
- STP 10-92Y24-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide for Unit Supply Specialist MOS 92Y Skill Levels 2, 3, and 4. 23 February 1994.
- STP 11-25II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II Signal Corps (25) Company Grade, Officer's Manual. 9 August 1991.
- STP 11-31C13-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 31C, Radio Operator-Maintainer Skill Levels 1/2/3. 29 August 1997.
- STP 11-31U14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1, 2, 3, and 4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 31U, Signal Support Systems Specialist. 14 June 1996.
- STP 12-71D15-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 71D, Legal Specialist Skill Levels 1/2/3/4/5. 8 January 1996.
- STP 12-71L12-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 71L, Administrative Specialist, Skill Levels 1/2. 5 July 1995.
- STP 12-75H12-SM. Soldier's Manual for MOS 75H Personnel Services Specialist Skill Levels 1/2. 19 October 1997.

- STP 16-56II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II Chaplain Branch (56) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 5 February 1992.
- STP 16-71M1-SM. Soldier's Manual, MOS 71M, Chaplain Assistant, Skill Level 1. 2 July 1990.
- STP 16-71M25-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual and Trainer's Guide, MOS 71M, Chaplain Assistant Skill Levels 2/3/4/5. 2 July 1990.
- STP 21-III-MQS. Military Qualification Standards III, Leader Development Manual for Majors and Lieutenant Colonels. 30 June 1993.
- STP 34-35II-MQS. Military Qualification Standards II Manual, for Military Intelligence Branch (35) Company Grade Officer's Manual. 30 September 1991.
- STP 34-96B14-SM-TG. Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4 and Trainer's Guide, MOS 96B, Intelligence Analyst. 7 September 1994.
- STP 34-98G14-SM-TG. (C) Soldier's Manual, Skill Levels 1/2/3/4, and Trainer's Guide, MOS 98G, Voice Interceptor (U). 1 February 1993.

Training Support Packages

- 011-82-3340. Tactical Communication.
- 011-420-0006. Conduct Fire Support Planning and Coordination.
- 011-420-0015. Employ Attack Helicopter.
- 011-420-0016. Employ Air Cavalry Units.
- 011-420-0018. Implement Army Airspace Command and Control (A²C²).
- 011-420-0025. Integrate Aircraft Survivability Equipment (ASE) in Mission Planning.
- 011-4G-3135. Fire Support.
- 011-4G-3210. Attack Helicopter Operations.

MISSION TRAINING PLAN**USER FEEDBACK**

MTP NUMBER _____ DATE _____

MTP TITLE _____

User feedback is an important link in the improvement of training publications. To make it easier for you to make recommendations, this standard questionnaire is provided. Please answer each question frankly, and mail the questionnaire to Commander, US Army Aviation Center, ATTN: ATZQ-TDS-D, Fort Rucker, AL 36362-5000.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO YOU:

1. What is your position (company commander, platoon sergeant, other)?

2. How long have you served in this position? _____

3. How long have you served in this unit? _____

4. What is your component?

- a. Active
- b. Reserve

5. Where is your unit?

- a. CONUS
- b. Eighth US Army
- c. US Army, Europe
- d. US Army Western Command
- e. Other (specify) _____

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS ARE ABOUT THE MTP IN GENERAL:

6. How do you feel this MTP has affected training in your unit compared to other training products?

- a. It has made training better.
- b. It has had no effect on training.
- c. It has made training worse (If so, explain why.)

7. How easy is this MTP to use compared to other training products?

- a. Easier
 - b. About the same
 - c. More difficult (If so, explain why.)_____
-
-

8. What part of the MTP was most useful? Why?

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training_____
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes_____
- c. Chapter 3, Mission Outline_____
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises_____
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines_____
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations_____

9. What part of the MTP was least useful? Why?

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training_____
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrix_____
- c. Chapter 3, Training Plans_____
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises_____
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines_____
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations_____

10. What part of the MTP was the easiest to understand?

- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training_____
- b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes_____
- c. Chapter 3, Training Plans_____
- d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises_____
- e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines_____
- f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations_____

11. What part of the MTP was the most difficult to understand?
- a. Chapter 1, Unit Training_____
 - b. Chapter 2, Training Matrixes_____
 - c. Chapter 3, Training Plans_____
 - d. Chapter 4, Training Exercises_____
 - e. Chapter 5, Training and Evaluation Outlines_____
 - f. Chapter 6, External Evaluations_____
12. What do you like best about this ARTEP?
- a. Format
 - b. Content
 - c. Graphics
 - d. Readability
 - e. Organization
13. What would you like to see added to this MTP?_____
14. What would you like to see deleted from this MTP?_____
15. Would you like to have added to this MTP a training matrix that contains an alphabetical listing of all tasks?
- a. Yes.
 - b. No.
16. Would you like to have added to this MTP a training matrix that contains a separate crosswalk between each collective task and its individual tasks?
- a. Yes.
 - b. No.

THE FOLLOWING QUESTIONS PERTAIN TO THE TRAINING EXERCISES (FTX AND STXs):

17. The exercises are designed to prepare the unit to accomplish its wartime missions. In your opinion, how well do they fulfill this purpose?
- a. They provide 100 percent of my unit's training requirements.
 - b. They provide 75 percent or more of my unit's training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on separate sheet.)

ARTEP 1-245-MTP

c. They provide 50 percent or less of my unit's training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on a separate sheet.)

d. They provide 25 percent or less of my units training requirements. (Identify deficiencies on a separate sheet.)

18. Would you recommend that any STX or FTX be added to or deleted from this MTP?

a. No.

b. Yes (specify). _____

19. What was the greatest problem you experienced with the exercises? (If more than one problem, please rank in order of importance; that is, 1, 2, 3, and so on.)

a. Too many pages.

b. Need more illustrations.

c. Hard to read and understand.

d. Need more information on leader training.

e. Need more information on support and resources.

f. Need more information on normally attached elements.

g. Need more information on how to set up the exercises.

h. Need more information on how to conduct the exercises.

i. Do not interface well with other training products, such as crew drills.

20. How many STXs or FTXs have you trained on or participated in personally?

21. Additional comments: _____

**ARTEP 1-245-MTP
31 AUGUST 2001**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

Official:

ERIC K. SHINSEKI
*General, United States Army
Chief of Staff*


JOEL B. HUDSON
*Administrative Assistant to the
Secretary of the Army
0122626*

DISTRIBUTION:

Active Army, Army National Guard, and U. S. Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number 121557, requirements for ARTEP 1-245-MTP.

PIN: 074761-000